

THE REVISED  
LATIN PRIMER

California  
National  
Library



UCSB LIBRARY  
X-22340

Eric W. Bligh,  
October 12<sup>th</sup>, 1908.

276



Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2007 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation



THE REVISED  
LATIN PRIMER

BY  
BENJAMIN HALL KENNEDY, D.D.

FORMERLY FELLOW OF ST. JOHN'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE  
REGIUS PROFESSOR OF GREEK  
AND CANON OF ELY

*TWELFTH IMPRESSION*

LONGMANS, GREEN, AND CO.  
39 PATERNOSTER ROW, LONDON  
NEW YORK AND BOMBAY

1906

*All rights reserved*

*By the same Author.*

## THE SHORTER LATIN PRIMER.

Fcp. 8vo. price ONE SHILLING.

### AUTHOR'S PREFACE.

THIS little book is published in compliance with a wish expressed to me by a large number of Masters, including many teachers in Preparatory Schools, and in the lower forms of Public Schools.

It is intended to be a simple manual for beginners in Latin, preparatory to the use of the Revised Latin Primer.

In order to facilitate the passage of the learner from one book to the other, and also to make it possible for them to be used side by side if necessary, this Shorter Primer has been made, as far as it goes, in the main identical with the Revised Primer, and arranged on the same plan.

It contains the memorial portion of the Accidence, with a few of the most important notes and explanations, and the more elementary parts of the Syntax of the Simple Sentence.

A short outline of the Compound Sentence, which did not form part of my original plan, has been added in accordance with the desire of several experienced teachers. In this part it has been necessary, for the sake of brevity, to make the arrangement and wording somewhat different from that of the Revised Primer,

In this book, as in the Revised Primer, I have endeavoured to simplify the marking of quantity by placing the mark of quantity, as a rule, only on the long vowels. It must therefore be noted that vowels not marked are generally to be taken as short, short quantity being only marked where it has seemed necessary to guard against mistake.

---

## EXERCISES ON THE SHORTER LATIN PRIMER.

By M. G. and J. E. KENNEDY, and H. WILKINSON, M.A.

Crown 8vo. 1s. 6d.

---

LONGMANS, GREEN, & CO.

39 Paternoster Row, London, New York, and Bombay.

## PREFACE

THIS BOOK is a complete revision of the Public School Latin Primer.

The report of the Public School Commission of 1862 having recommended the use of a common Latin Grammar in Public Schools, the Head Masters of the Schools included in that Commission resolved to adopt my Elementary Latin Grammar, which had for some years been widely used, as the basis of such a common Grammar, and the Public School Latin Primer, prepared in accordance with that resolution, was published with their sanction in the year 1866.

During the period which has since elapsed, various improvements have from time to time occurred to me or been suggested by others. But, looking at the joint authority under which the Primer was issued, I did not feel myself free to introduce into it the alterations which under other circumstances I should have made. When, however, I found that a revision of the Primer was generally desired, and when, after communication with the Conference of Head Masters, I found myself in a position to act in the matter of revision upon my own responsibility, I gladly entered upon the work of which the present Revised Primer is the result. My first step was to collect as widely as

possible from Masters of Public and Private Schools opinions with regard to the objections to the Primer as it stood, and the nature and extent of the changes which teachers of experience deemed to be desirable. With the kind and generous aid of my old pupils and friends Mr. Hallam, of Harrow, and Mr. Page, of Charterhouse, and by the courtesy of many teachers who have communicated with me either directly or through them, I have been enabled to obtain a number of valuable suggestions on these points.

The aim which I have kept steadily in view in this revision of the Primer has been that the book should be suitable both for beginners and for all boys up to the Fifth Form in Public Schools.

The greatest care has been taken to make the arrangement in respect of form as clear and plain as possible. For this purpose I have (1) brought into the text under the appropriate headings the matter which in the original Primer is contained in Appendix I.; (2) omitted such technical terms as seemed to be reasonably open to objection.

The Declension of Substantives and Adjectives has been arranged upon the 'Stem' principle, and the words are classed as far as possible in accordance with the latest results of the comparative study of Latin and the related languages, especially the ancient Italian dialects. The old order of the Declensions has, after careful consideration, been retained. In a text-book of this kind there is an obvious advantage in keeping, wherever it is possible, a popular and well-understood system, and I believe that the old order of Declension is, from a purely philological point of view, wholly unobjectionable. With regard to Verbs, I

have adhered in the Paradigms to the arrangement of the four Conjugations, as I am satisfied that an alteration would involve such inconvenience to teacher and learner as would far outweigh any possible gain in scientific accuracy.

To meet a general wish, I have prefixed to the *Accidence* a chapter on Letters and Laws of Sound. I desire it to be understood that this chapter is placed at the beginning of the book because that seemed to me to be the most natural and, for purposes of reference, the most convenient position for it—and not from any intention that it should necessarily be learnt as a whole at the outset.

I have purposely refrained from any attempt to give fixed rules for the pronunciation of Latin, because in the present stage of the investigation of that subject, such rules could be only of a provisional kind. For the results which have so far been reached I would refer to the small pamphlet lately issued by the Cambridge Philological Society.

In order to simplify as far as possible the marking of quantity, I have marked the quantity as a rule only on the long vowels. In this book vowels which have no mark of quantity are generally to be taken as short, and the short quantity is marked only where it seems especially necessary to guard against mistake.

The memorial lines on Gender are placed in an appendix instead of being, as in the original Primer, included in the text.

Throughout the book—except in a few cases in the chapter on Letters and Laws of Sound, where Word-formation, not Grammar or meaning, is being dealt with—Latin words are immediately followed by their translation in English.

Some of these improvements of course involve additional printed matter, but the addition is rather in the apparent size of the book than in the actual matter to be learnt.

In conclusion I offer my cordial thanks to many teachers, Head Masters and Assistant Masters in Public Schools, and also Masters of Private Schools (among whom I must mention especially the Rev. E. D. Stone and Mr. C. S. Jerram) for the assistance which they have directly and indirectly rendered to me by communication and correspondence.

Of the special co-operation which has been given throughout by Mr. Page and Mr. Hallam I have already spoken. For many reasons their constant help has been to me invaluable.

During the progress of the work I have received criticisms on many points of philology and grammar from my friends Dr. Peile, Master of Christ's College, and Professor J. E. B. Mayor, which, last, but not least, I desire gratefully to acknowledge.

B. H. KENNEDY.

THE ELMS, CAMBRIDGE:  
May 1888.

---

## PREFACE TO THE SEVENTH EDITION.

IN bringing out the present edition the Editors have taken the opportunity to make some improvements in points of detail which have been suggested to them by various Teachers. They desire in particular to thank Mr. Frank Ritchie for several criticisms and suggestions.



# CONTENTS

SECTION	PAGE
1. THE LATIN LANGUAGE . . . . .	1
2. LETTERS AND LAWS OF SOUND . . . . .	2
24. FLEXION . . . . .	11
25. PARTS OF SPEECH . . . . .	12
26. DECLENSION AND GENDER . . . . .	13
32. DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES . . . . .	16
67. DECLENSION OF GREEK NOUNS . . . . .	34
70. DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES . . . . .	37
76. COMPARISON . . . . .	41
88. NUMERALS . . . . .	45
91. PRONOUNS . . . . .	48
102. TABLE OF CORRELATIVES . . . . .	54
103. VERBS . . . . .	56
115. VERB PARADIGMS . . . . .	62
134. IRREGULAR VERBS . . . . .	85
142. DEFECTIVE VERBS . . . . .	90
143. IMPERSONAL VERBS . . . . .	92
147. FORMATION OF VERB STEMS . . . . .	93
152. TABLE OF VERB PERFECTS AND SUPINES . . . . .	98
163. ADVERBS . . . . .	107
171. PREPOSITIONS . . . . .	109
176. CONJUNCTIONS . . . . .	110
180. INTERJECTIONS . . . . .	111

## SYNTAX.

181. INTRODUCTION TO THE SIMPLE SENTENCE . . . . .	113
192. AGREEMENT . . . . .	116
200. CASES—	
201. THE NOMINATIVE AND VOCATIVE CASES . . . . .	119
203. THE ACCUSATIVE CASE . . . . .	119
214. THE DATIVE CASE . . . . .	123
228. THE ABLATIVE CASE . . . . .	127
247. THE GENITIVE CASE . . . . .	133



SECTION	PAGE
268. PLACE, TIME, AND SPACE . . . . .	140
284. PREPOSITIONS . . . . .	143
288. IMPERSONAL VERBS (CASE CONSTRUCTION) . . . . .	146
296. PASSIVE CONSTRUCTION . . . . .	147
304. ADJECTIVES . . . . .	149
315. PRONOUNS . . . . .	151
336. TENSES . . . . .	157
344. MOODS . . . . .	159
364. THE VERB INFINITE—	
365. THE INFINITIVE . . . . .	162
374. GERUND AND GERUNDIVE . . . . .	164
385. SUPINES . . . . .	166
389. PARTICIPLES . . . . .	167
395. ADVERBS . . . . .	168
399. CONJUNCTIONS . . . . .	170
404. INTERJECTIONS . . . . .	171
405. QUESTION AND ANSWER . . . . .	172
THE COMPOUND SENTENCE—	
410. INTRODUCTION . . . . .	174
411. SEQUENCE OF TENSES . . . . .	175
413. SUBSTANTIVAL CLAUSES . . . . .	176
421. ADVERBIAL CLAUSES . . . . .	180
450. ADJECTIVAL CLAUSES . . . . .	192
458. ORATIO OBLIQUA . . . . .	194
470. NARRATIVE IN ORATIO OBLIQUA . . . . .	198
471. PROSODY . . . . .	201
APPENDIX I.—DERIVED AND COMPOUNDED WORDS . . . . .	209
APPENDIX II.—ROMAN MONEY, WEIGHTS, MEASURES, AND TIME . . . . .	214
APPENDIX III.—FIGURES OF SPEECH . . . . .	218
APPENDIX IV.—MEMORIAL LINES ON GENDER . . . . .	221
INDEX I.: SUBJECTS . . . . .	227
INDEX II.: LATIN WORDS . . . . .	233

# LATIN PRIMER.

---

## THE LATIN LANGUAGE.

1. LATIN was the dialect of the Latini, or people of Latium in Italy. It was spoken by the ancient Romans, and, as their poets and prose-writers all used this dialect, the language was called Latin, not Roman.

Latin belongs to the family of languages known as Indo-European, or Aryan; the other languages of this family are, in Asia, the Indian, which includes Sanskrit, and the Iranian; in Europe, the Keltic, the Teutonic, the Greek, the Slavonic, and the Lettic. The imperial power of Rome made Latin the general speech of Western Europe, and from it are derived the modern Italian, French, Spanish, Portuguese, and Wallachian, hence called Romance languages.

*Note.*—In England, after its conquest by the Angles and Saxons, a branch of the Teutonic language, called Anglo-Saxon, or old English, was spoken. From about the tenth century, and especially after the Norman Conquest (1066 A.D.), this became mixed with Norman French, a Romance dialect, an offshoot of Latin. After the revival of learning in the sixteenth century, a large number of words were brought into English direct from Latin, and more have been added since, so that to understand the English language thoroughly it is necessary to have a knowledge of Latin.

The influence of Greek civilisation on Latin was very great; it was chiefly exerted at two distinct eras. The first of these began about 550 B.C., through the commerce of the Romans with the Greek colonies in Southern Italy. The second may be

dated from the third century B.C., when literary activity began at Rome. This influence was further developed through the conquest of Greece by Rome, which was completed 146 B.C.

All Latin literature, except the satiric writings of Horace, Persius, and Juvenal, is formed on Greek models. The earliest specimens of Latin we possess are inscriptions, laws, annals, and fragments of songs.

The credit of authorship is first ascribed to Livius Andronicus, who is said to have exhibited plays at Rome 240 B.C. The works of the poets who followed soon after this date have mostly perished, except the comedies of Plautus and Terence, about 200 to 140 B.C., and a prose fragment of the elder Cato.

The ages regarded as classical may be said to begin about 80 B.C., lasting about 200 years.

The so-called Golden Age ended with the death of Augustus, A.D. 14, when the Silver Age began, ending about 120 A.D. The authors most studied are—in prose, Cicero, Caesar, Livy, Tacitus; in poetry, Lucretius, Vergil, Horace, Ovid, and Juvenal.

## LETTERS AND LAWS OF SOUND.

**2 The Latin Alphabet.**—The Latin Alphabet contains twenty-three letters, with the following signs:—

A B C D E F G H I (J) K L M N O P Q R S T U (V) X Y Z  
a b c d e f g h i (j) k l m n o p q r s t u (v) x y z

*Note.*—In early times C was written to represent the sounds of both C and G, which were probably not clearly distinguished in speaking. Afterwards G was made out of C, and K becoming superfluous went out of use. Y and Z were added in Cicero's time, being borrowed direct from the Greek alphabet, but they are only found in words taken from the Greek.

The letters are divided into:

1. **Vowels** or Sonants (sounding by themselves);
2. **Consonants** (sounding with a vowel).

## VOWELS.

- 3** The pure vowels are **a**, **e**, **o**; **i** and **u** are classed as vowels and also as semi-consonants, because they have both vowel and consonant sound.

The most open sound is **a**; the closest sharp sound is **i**; and the closest flat sound is **u**; **e** is intermediate between **a** and **i**, and **o** is intermediate between **a** and **u**.

a  
e      o  
i      u

**y** is always a vowel, as in *lyra*, and was sounded as French *u*

- 4 Quantity of Vowels.**—Each of the five vowels can be either short or long: short when pronounced quickly, like English **a** in *man*; long when the voice dwells on the sound, as in *far*. A short vowel is distinguished by the sign  $\sim$ , a long one by the sign  $-$ : *āmō*. Thus the five vowels stand for ten different sounds:

ă, ā, ě, ē, ĭ, ī, ǫ, ō, ŭ, ū.

There were no doubt many finer shades of sound for each vowel, which cannot be exactly ascertained, but the following five words may give an approximate idea of their pronunciation.

*quīnīne, dēmēsne, pāpā, prōpōse, Zūlū.*

*Note.*—A vowel before two consonants is said to be long ‘by position.’ A vowel before another vowel, or before *h* followed by a vowel, is nearly always short.

- 5 Diphthongs.**—A Diphthong (double sound) is formed by two vowels meeting in one syllable. The diphthongs commonly found in Latin are **ae**, **oe**, **au**; more rarely **eu**: *Caesar, moenia, laus, heu*.

In the oldest Latin there were six diphthongs: *ai, au, ei, eu, oi, ou*. Of these, *ai* passes in classical Latin into *ae*,

mensae for mensai; au remains unchanged; ei is found in old inscriptions, but in the literary language its place is taken by ē or by ī, as in dico, except in the exclamation ei; eu is found in ceu, heu, neu, seu, and in many words of Greek origin; oi passes into oe, and sometimes into later u: poena, punio; ou becomes ū, as in dūco.

The diphthongs are always long.

### CONSONANTS.

- 6** I. **MUTES** (closed sounds), formed by complete closure of the mouth passage; the sound being the explosion heard when the stoppage is removed. They are:

- |                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| (i.) <b>Gutturals</b> (throat sounds) | { Hard, <b>c</b> , ( <b>k</b> ), <b>qu</b> .<br>Soft, <b>g</b> . |
| (ii.) <b>Dentals</b> (teeth sounds)   | { Hard, <b>t</b> .<br>Soft, <b>d</b> .                           |
| (iii.) <b>Labials</b> (lip sounds)    | { Hard, <b>p</b> .<br>Soft, <b>b</b> .                           |

- II. **SPIRANTS** (open sounds), formed by the friction of the breath in the mouth passage when partially closed:

- (i.) **The Palatal Spirant, j** (sounded as y).
- (ii.) **The Dental Spirant or Sibilant, s**.
- (iii.) **The Labio-Dental Spirant, f**.
- (iv.) **The Labial Spirant, v** (sounded as w)
- (v.) **The Spirant, h**.

### III. SEMI-CONSONANTS:

- (i.) **Consonant i** (written j), **consonant u** (written v).
- (ii.) **Nasals, n, m**.
- (iii.) **Liquids, l, r**.

**x** is really a double letter, standing for **cs, gs**.

**y, z** and the three Greek aspirates, **ch, ph, th**, are only found in Greek words, as *zōna, chlamys, phalanx, theātrum*.

*Note.*—The spirants **j** and **v**, though distinct in the parent language, cannot be separated in Latin from consonant **i** and **u**.

**7 Pronunciation of Consonants.**—The guttural mutes, **c, g**, are sounded before all vowels, as in English, *can, go*; never as in *cease, gem*; **k** is only found in a few words, and is sounded as in English: *kalendae*.

The dental mutes, **t, d**, are sounded nearly as in English, but **t** must never be pronounced as *sh*; *natio* is not like English *nation* (*nashun*).

The labial mutes, **p, b**, as in English.

**s** always hard, as in English *sing*, but in the oldest Latin, **s** between two vowels was soft as in *rise*. This soft **s** or **z** afterwards became **r**, as in *arbores* for *arboses*.

Consonant **i** and **u** have the sound of *y, w*, in *ye, we*.

**h** is a strong breathing at the beginning of a word, but between two vowels very faintly sounded.

**l** as in English; **r** more strongly trilled than English *r*.

**n** and **m** as in English; the guttural nasal **ng**, though written **n**, was sounded like *ng* in *sing* or *n* in *sink*: *inquam* was sounded *ing-quam*.

**Table of Consonants.**

	Mutes.		Spirants.		Semi-Consonants.	
	Hard (tenues).	Soft (mediae).	Hard (tenues).	Soft (mediae).	Nasal.	Liquid.
Guttural	c, (k), qu	g	h		ng	
Palatal				j (y)		
Lingual						r, l
Dental	t	d	s		n	
Labio-dental			f			
Labial	p	b		v (w)	m	



**8 Syllables.**—A syllable consists of one or more letters which can be sounded with a single accent or tone of the voice: *ī-lex*.

When a consonant comes between two vowels, it belongs to the same syllable as the vowel which follows it: *pā-ter*.

When two or more consonants come between two vowels, they belong to the vowel which follows them if they are letters which can come together at the beginning of a word: *pa-tres*, *a-stra*. In *an-nus* one *n* belongs to each syllable, because double *n* cannot begin a word. So *men-sa*, *vic-trix*.

A syllable ending in a vowel is an open syllable.

A syllable ending in a consonant is a closed syllable.

A syllable is long or short according as its vowel is long or short, either by nature or position.

*Note.*—The last syllable of a word is called ultimate; the last but one penultimate; the last but two ante-penultimate.

**9 Accent.**—The accent or tone falls on some one syllable in every word. The accented syllable was pronounced with greater force and also in a higher key than the other syllables. In Latin the rule is to throw the accent back; therefore in words of two or more syllables, the last syllable is never accented.

In words of more than two syllables the accent always falls on the last but one (penultimate), if it is long.

If the penultimate is short, the accent falls on the last but two (ante-penultimate).

The accents are not usually printed in Latin.

## 10

### VOWEL CHANGE.

#### I. Change in Accented Syllables.

1. Original *e* may become *i*: *simul* (cf. *semel*), *venia* (cf. *vindex*).
2. *e* becomes *o* before *l*: *soluo* (*se-luo*); or in connexion with *u*: *nouos* (for *neuos*), *douco* (later *duco*).
3. *i* becomes *e* before *r*: *sero* (for *siso*).
4. *o* sometimes becomes *u*: *huc* (for *ho-ce*).



## 11 II. Change in Unaccented Syllables.

(A) In final syllables :

1. **o** becomes **u** : corpus (stem corpor-).
2. **i** becomes **e** : mare (stem mari-), or is lost altogether : animal (for animale, stem animali-).

(B) In medial syllables the vowel is commonly affected by the next consonant :

1. **e** appears before **r** : cineres (cinis), caperis (capió).
2. **u** appears before **l** or a labial : as in cultus (colo), epistula (earlier epístola). But when **i** or **e** precedes, the vowel remains **o** : as filiulus, alveolus.
3. **i** appears before any other single consonant : as in meritus, monitus (moneo). (For exception see 13.)

## 12 (C) In Compounds :

Here the principle is the same, and generally the rules are the same as in (B), but the examples are much more numerous.

**a** to **e** in closed syllables and before **r** : consecro from sacer ;  
descendo from scando ; tradere from dare.

**a** to **i** in most open syllables and before **ng** : difficilis from facilis ; attingo from tango.

**a** to **u** or **i** before labials : occûpo and accipio from capio ;  
and before **l** : insulto, insilio, from salto, salio.

**e** to **i** often in open syllables, but never before **r** : diligo from lego ; but fero, aufero.

**ae** to **ī** : collido from laedo.

**au** to **ū** or **ō** : inclūdo from claudo ; explōdo from plaudo.

**o** and **u** are generally unchanged in compounds.

*Note.*—There is a vowel variation often seen in Latin flexion which is not due to change in the Latin language itself, but came down to it from the Indo-European language. Thus the same noun can have two or more Stems, as homo ; older stem **homon-**, later weak stem, **homin-** ; **agmen-**, **agmin-** ; **pater**, **patr-** ; **genus-** (orig. **genos**), **gener-**.

In these words the vowel of the strong stem is preserved in the Nom. Sing., while the weak stem appears in the other cases.

**13 Vowel Assimilation and Dissimilation.**—The vowels of two following syllables tend to become alike in sound : *vegeo*, *vegetus* (*vigeo*), *pupugi* (for *pepugi*), *nihil* (for *ne-hil*), *mihi*, *tibi*.

On the other hand, two vowels coming together are sometimes dissimilated : *ii* becomes *ie* in *pietas*, *societas*, *abietis*.

**14 Vowel Contraction.**—When two similar vowels are separated by consonant *i* or *u*, or by *h*, they commonly throw out the letter between them, and unite in a long vowel : *rēs* is contracted from *re-i-es*, *nēmo* from *ne-h-emo*, *nīl* from *ni-h-il*, *audisse* from *au-divisse*.

Two dissimilar vowels sometimes unite in the same manner : *amāre* from *ama-i-ere*; *amō* from *ama-i-o*; *amāsti* from *ama-v-isti*.

Two vowels placed next each other often contract : *dēgo* from *de-go*; *nullus* from *ne-ullus*; *prōmo* from *pro-emo*.

**15 Syncope.**—Dropping of an unaccented vowel between two consonants : *dextra* for *dextera*; *valde* for *valide*. It often takes place in compounds : *calfacio* for *calefacio*. The vowel of the reduplicating syllable sometimes drops ; *reppuli* for *repepuli*.

*Note.*—Sometimes when any one of the letters *l*, *r*, *m*, or *n* follows a consonant, a vowel not found in the stem springs up before it because of the semi-vocalic character of the sound ; *ager*, stem *agro-*; *populus*, original stem *poplo-*; *asinus* (*asno-*); *volumus* (contrast *vul-tis*).

**16 Apocope.**—Dropping of a final vowel : *e* is dropped in *hic* for *hi-ce*; *quin* for *qui-ne*; *dic* for *dice*; *i* falls off in *ut* for *uti*, *quot*, *tot* (*totidem*).

**17 Changes of Quantity.**—A vowel generally shortens before another vowel : thus *rēi* became *rēi*. A long vowel often becomes short through effect of the accent on the preceding or following syllable : *jūro* becomes *pérjūro*, afterwards weakening to *pējēro*; *lūcerna* from *lūceo*. In flexional endings, a vowel originally final is sometimes shortened. But when a final consonant is lost (as final *d* in the ablative), the length of the vowel seems to be preserved : *Gnaeō* (earlier *Gnaivōd*).

Vowel lengthening is often due to Compensation. When two consonants follow an accented vowel the first of the two is often dropped, and the vowel lengthened, so that the syllable keeps its length : *hōc* for *hod-ce*; *nīdus* for *nisdus* (English *nest*).

## CONSONANT CHANGE.

**18 Consonants at the beginning of a word.**—Two mute consonants at the beginning of a word were avoided. Thus we find *locus* for original *stlocus*, *tilia* for *ptilia*. Sometimes a spirant preceding a mute is dropped: *caveo* for *scaveo*, but generally it is retained: *scando*, *sterno*, *spēro*. A mute followed by a liquid is generally unchanged: as *cresco*, *tres*, *plaudo*; but *g* before *n* is lost in *nōtus* for *gnotus* (cf. *ignōtus*), and in *nōdus*, *knot*. Two spirants remain: *flos*, *frons*; but *sm* becomes *m*, as in *mīrus*, *memor*; *sn* becomes *n* in *nix* (*snow*), *ī árus* (Old English *snoru*), *daughter-in-law*; *sv* sometimes remains: *suādeo*; sometimes *v* is lost: *salum* (*swell*), *sibi* (cf. *su-us*).

**19 Consonants in the middle of a word.**—In the middle of a word if two consonants come next each other which cannot be easily sounded together, either one drops out, *quālus* for *quas-lus*, *basket*, or one is assimilated to the other, as in *sella* for *sedla*, *a seat*. A mute often drops out before a nasal or liquid, with lengthening of the preceding vowel, as in *exāmen* for *exagmen*.

Other cases in which a letter is dropped are *quintus* for older *quinctus*; *ascribo* for *ad-scribo*; *asporto* for *abs-porto*; *bimestris* from stem *bi-menstri-*; *jūdex* from *jus-dic-*.

**20 Consonant Assimilation is of two kinds:**

(a) Complete Assimilation, when the first letter becomes the same as the following one:

Assimilation of mute to semi-vowel: *alloquor* for *ad-loquor*; *arrogō* for *ad-rogo*; *summus* for *supmus* (*supremus*).

Mute to spirant: *assentio* for *ad-sentio*, *offero* for *ob-fero*.

Mute to mute: *suggero* for *sub-gero*; *accido* for *ad-cado*; *succumbo* for *sub-cumbo*.

Spirant to spirant: *differo* for *dis-fero*.

(b) Partial assimilation, when the first letter changes to one which combines more easily with the following one.

A soft mute becomes hard before another hard sound: *rexī* (*rec-si*), *rectum* from *rego*; *scripsi*, *scriptum*, from *scribo*.

*m* becomes *n* (*ng*) before a guttural and *n* before a dental;

congruo (sounded cong-gruo), condūco, consto. **n** becomes **m** before a labial : impotens, imbibo. A hard mute becomes soft between vowels or between a vowel and a semi-vowel : trīginta for tricenta ; publicus, stem poplico-.

*Note.*—**tt** and **dt** change to **ss** : hence the supines in -sum and past participles in -sus are formed : defend-to- becomes defensso-, defensum ; claudto-, clausso-, clausum, pat-to- becomes passo-, passus.

Occasionally a following consonant is assimilated to the preceding one : collum for colsum ; ferre for ferse.

Dissimilation is seen in caeruleus from caelum, meridies for medidies ; and in Adjectives in -aris and -alis, familiāris, naturalis.

**s** (when soft) between two vowels always changes to **r** : flōres, honōres, from flōs, hōnōs ; quaeso becomes quaero.

- 21 Metathesis.**—Interchange of position between a vowel and semi-vowel in the same syllable. This is chiefly seen in the case of **r** : ter, trēs ; sperno, sprēvi ; tēro, trīvi.

*Note.*—When the vowel becomes the last letter of the stem by this change of position, it is always lengthened.

- 22 Consonants at the end of a word.**—A Latin word never ends in a double consonant : mell-, farr-, become mel, far.

A dental drops off after a guttural : lac, from stem lact-.

The only exceptions are a labial mute or nasal followed by **s** : urbs, stirps, dens, hiems (usually written hiemps).

**c** or **g** followed by **s** becomes **x** : dux, rex.

**d** falls off in cor, stem cord-, and in the ablative singular extra(d), intra(d).

**n** regularly falls off in the nominative of the **n**-stems : leo.

*Note.*—Both **m** and **n** were very lightly sounded at the end of a word, and a syllable ending in **m** is sometimes elided before a vowel : 'animum advertere.' This elision takes place regularly in poetry. Final **d** and **t** were also lightly sounded and are sometimes interchanged : haud, haut.

- 23 Dropping of Syllables.**—When two syllables beginning with the same letter come together in the middle of a word, the first one is sometimes dropped. Thus veneni-ficium becomes veneficium, consuetitudo consuetudo.

## FLEXION.

**24** FLEXION is a change made in the form of a word to show differences of meaning and use.

The **Stem** is the simplest form of a word in any language before it undergoes changes of Flexion.

The **Character** is the final letter of the Stem.

The **Root** is the primitive element which the word has in common with kindred words in the same or in other languages. Every word has a Stem and a Root. They may be the same, but more often the Stem is formed from the Root. Thus in *agitāre*, **agita-** is the Stem and **a** the Stem-Character, but **ag-** is the Root, as shown by other words, *agere*, *agmen*, *agilis*.

*Note 1.*—A language which expresses changes of meaning chiefly by Flexion, and makes little use of help-words, is called synthetic. Latin is a synthetic language. A language which has little Flexion and uses many help-words is called analytic. English as now spoken is an analytic language. In analytic languages the place of the flexional endings is often supplied by prepositions used with nouns: *Caesāris*, of *Caesar*; by auxiliaries used with verbs: *agitur*, it is being done. Analytic languages also use the article: *rex*, a king, or the king; and they use pronouns with verbs: *āgo*, I do.

*Note 2.*—Flexion sometimes takes place by letter-change in the Root-syllable, **agī-mus**, **ēgī-mus**, or by an addition before it, which is called a Prefix, as **ce-cīn-i** from *cāno*. Most frequently, however, it consists in an addition made after the Stem, which is called a Suffix. In *agitare*, **-re** is a Suffix, and is also the ending; in *agitarēmus*, a second Suffix, **-mus**, is added and becomes the ending.



## PARTS OF SPEECH.

25 Words are divided into :

I. NOUNS : which are of three kinds :

**Substantives**,\* names of persons, places, or things :

**Caesar**, *Caesar* ; **Rōma**, *Rome* ; **sōl**, *sun* ; **virtūs**, *virtue*.

**Adjectives**, which express the qualities of Substantives :

Roma **antīqua**, *ancient Rome* ; sol **clārus**, *the bright sun*.

**Pronouns**, which stand for a Substantive or Adjective :

**ego**, *I* ; **ille**, *that, he* ; **meus**, *my, mine*.

II. VERBS : which express an action or state :

Sol **dat** lūcem, *the sun gives light* ; Roma **manet**, *Rome remains*.

III. PARTICLES : which are of four kinds :

**Adverbs**, which qualify and limit Verbs, Adjectives, and sometimes other Adverbs :

Roma **dīu** flōruit ; nunc **minus** potens est.

*Rome flourished long ; now it is less powerful.*

**Prepositions**, which denote the relation of a Noun to other words in the sentence :

**Per** Romam erro, *I wander through Rome*.

**Conjunctions**, which connect words, phrases, and sentences :

Caelum suspicio **ut** lūnam **et** sīdera videam.

*I look up to the sky that I may see the moon and stars.*

**Interjections** : words of exclamation : **heu**, **ēheu**, *alas !*

\* In this book the word Noun is often used for Noun Substantive.

The Parts of Speech are therefore eight :

(1) Substantives

(2) Adjectives

(3) Pronouns

(4) Verbs

(5) Adverbs

(6) Prepositions

(7) Conjunctions

(8) Interjections

Which have Flexion.

Which are without Flexion except the comparison of Adverbs.

- 26** The flexion of Nouns is called Declension ; that of Verbs, Conjugation.

There is no Article in Latin. *Lux* may stand for *a light*, *the light*, or simply *light*.

- 27** Substantives are (a) Concrete: *vir*, *man*; *mensa*, *table*.  
(b) Abstract: *virtūs*, *virtue*. Proper names are names of persons or places: *Caesar*, *Roma*. A Collective Substantive includes many persons or things of the same kind: *turba*, *crowd*.

Numerals are words which express Number. They are Adjectives, as *unus*, *one*; *duo*, *two*; or Adverbs, as *semel*, *once*; *bis*, *twice*.

## DECLENSION.

- 28** Declension is the change of form which Nouns undergo to show changes of **Number** and **Case**.

- 29** The NUMBERS are two :

**Singular** for one person or thing: *mensa*, *a table*; *gens*, *a nation*.

**Plural** for more than one: *mensae*, *tables*; *gentēs*, *nations*.

- 30** **Case** is the form which a Noun takes to show its relation to other words in the sentence.

The CASES are six :

**Nominative**, the Subject Case, answering the question Who? or What?

**Vocative**, the Case of one addressed.

**Accusative**, the Object Case, answering the question Whom? or What?

**Genitive**, answering the question Of whom? or Of what?

**Dative**, answering the question To whom? or To what?

**Ablative**, answering the question From whom? or From what?



Examples of the cases :

Nominative.	Sol lūcet,	<i>the sun shines.</i>
Vocative.	Sol <i>or</i> o sol,	<i>o sun.</i>
Accusative.	Sōlem lucēre video,	<i>I see the sun shine.</i>
Genitive.	Solis lux,	<i>the sun's light, or the light of the sun.</i>
Dative.	Solī lux additur,	<i>light is added to the sun.</i>
Ablative.	Solē lux ēditur,	<i>light issues from the sun.</i>

*Note 1.*—The dative is also rendered *for* in English: Senātus urbi consultit, *the Senate consults for the city.*

*Note 2.*—The ablative is rendered by many English prepositions besides *from*: *in, by, with.* To express the person by whom an action is done, the ablative is used with the preposition *a, ab*: Remus **a Rōmulo** interfectus est, *Remus was slain by Romulus.* To express the instrument with which an action is done, the ablative is used alone: Remus **gladiō** interfectus est, *Remus was slain with (or by) a sword.*

*Note 3.*—In ancient Latin there were two more cases, the Instrumental answering the question *With what?* and the Locative answering the question *Where?* The use of the Instrumental passed entirely to the ablative. But the Locative is often found in classical literature: *humī, on the ground; Romae, at Rome; Athēnis, at Athens.*

## RULES OF GENDER.

**31** The Genders are three :

1, Masculine ; 2, Feminine ; 3, Neuter (*neutrum, neither of the two*).

Gender is shown by the form of a word and by its meaning.

(A) Form :

(a) Masculine are most Substantives in **-us** of the Second and Fourth Declensions, and those in **-er** of the Second Declension.

(b) Feminine are nearly all Substantives in **-a** of the First Declension and in **-es** of the Fifth Declension.

(c) Neuter are Substantives in **-um** of the Second Declension, in **-u** of the Fourth Declension, and indeclinable nouns, including the infinitive verb-noun.

For the third declension no general rule can be given.

(B) Meaning :

(a) Masculine are all names of men, gods, months, and winds; also of most rivers and mountains: Rōmulus, Mars, Octōber, Boreās, *north wind*, Tiberis, Olympus.

Exceptions: Some mountains and a few rivers ending in **-a** or **-e** are feminine: Allia, Lēthē, Aetna, Rhodopē, Alpēs (plur.); neuter, Pēlion, Soractē.

(b) Feminine are all names of women, goddesses, islands; and of most countries, cities, and trees: Cornēlia, Jūno, Lesbos, Asia, Roma, pīnus, *pine*.

Exceptions: Countries ending in **-um**, neuter; Latium; Pontus, masculine. Cities with plur. form in **-i** are masc.: Coriōli, Delphi; those in **-um**, **-on**, **-a** (plur.) are neuter: Tarentum, Ilion, Arbēla.

Note 1.—In the early ages people imagined natural objects as living beings, and made them masculine or feminine, according to their notions of their qualities: ventus, *wind*, fluvius, *river*, mons, *mountain*, masculine;—regio, *country*, urbs, *city*, arbor, *tree*, feminine; and words belonging to these classes took the same genders.

Note 2.—Many **o-** Stems masc. (called Mobilia) have a corresponding form in **-a** feminine:

filius, <i>son</i> .	deus, <i>god</i> .	arbiter	} <i>umpire</i> .
filia, <i>daughter</i> .	dea, <i>goddess</i> .	arbitra	

Other corresponding forms are used: rex, *king*, rēgina, *queen*; victor, victrix, *conqueror*; nepōs, *grandson*, neptis, *granddaughter*; socer, socrus, *father-, mother-in-law*.

Note 3.—Nouns which include both masculine and feminine are said to be of common gender: sacerdos, *priest or priestess*, vātēs, *seer*, parens, *parent*, dux, *leader*, comes, *companion*, cīvis, *citizen*, custōs, *guardian*, iūdex, *judge*, hēres, *heir*, āles, *bird*, capis, *dog*, serpens, *serpent*, tigris, *tiger*.

Many names of animals, though used of both sexes, have (in grammar) only one gender; they are called Epicene: aquila, *eagle*, fem.; lepus, *hare*, masc.; passer, *sparrow*, masc.

(For Memorial Lines on Gender, see Appendix IV.)

## 2 DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

Substantives are grouped in Declensions according to the Character or final letter of the Stem as follows :

- (1) FIRST DECLENSION : A- Stems.
- (2) SECOND DECLENSION : O- Stems.
- (3) THIRD DECLENSION : Consonant Stems and I- Stems.
- (4) FOURTH DECLENSION : U- Stems.
- (5) FIFTH DECLENSION : E- Stems.

TABLE OF CASE-ENDINGS.

Decl. Stem Char.	I.	II.	III.				IV.	V.
	ă-	ō-	consonant		ī-		ŭ-	ě-
	<i>f. (m.)</i>	<i>m. (f.) n.</i>	SINGULAR		<i>f. m.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m. (f.) n.</i>	<i>f.</i>
Nom.	ă	ūs um	various		īs ēs	ě l r	ūs ū	ēs
Voc.	—	ě —	—	—	—	—	—	—
Acc.	am	um —	em —	—	im em	—	um —	em
Gen.	ae	ī	īs	—	īs	—	ūs	eī
Dat.	ae	ō	ī	—	ī	—	ŭī (ŭ)	eī
Abl.	ā	ō	ě	—	ī or ě	—	ŭ	ē
			PLURAL					
Nom.	ae	ī ā	ēs	ă	ēs	īă	ūs uă	ēs
Voc.	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Acc.	ās	ōs —	ēs	—	īs ēs	—	ūs —	ēs
Gen.	ārum	ōrum	um	—	ium	—	uum	ērum
Dat.	īs	īs	ībūs	—	ībūs	—	ībūs	ēbūs
Abl.	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

**33** The Character of the Stem is most clearly seen before the ending **-um** or **-rum** of the Genitive Plural.

The Nominative, masculine and feminine, takes **s**, except in **a-** Stems, some Stems in **ro-** of the Second Declension, and Stems in **s, l, r, n**, of the Third. The Vocative (which is not a true case) is like the Nominative, except in the singular of Nouns in **-us** of the Second Declension.

Neuters have the Accusative like the Nominative in both singular and plural; the plural always ends in **a**.

**34**

## FIRST DECLENSION.

### A- Stems.

The Nominative Singular is the same as the Stem.

	Stem	mensā-	
		table, f.	
	SING.		PLUR.
Nom.	mensā,	a table.	mensae, tables.
Voc.	mensa,	o table.	mensae, o tables.
Acc.	mensam,	a table.	mensās, tables.
Gen.	mensae,	of a table.	mensārum, of tables.
Dat.	mensae,	to a table.	mensīs, to tables.
Abl.	mensā,	from a table.	mensīs, from tables.

Decline like **mensa**: *aquila*, eagle; *lūna*, moon; *rēgīna*, queen; *stella*, star.

Stems in **a** are mostly feminine. A few are masculine, as *scriba*, a notary; *Hadria*, the Adriatic sea.

*Note 1.*—An old form of the gen. sing. **-āī** for **-ae** is sometimes used by poets, as *aulāī*. Also an old genitive of *familia* remains in compounds: *pater-* (*māter-*) *familias*, father (mother) of a family.

*Note 2.*—The locative sing. ends in **-ae**; the plur. in **-is**; *Romae*, at Rome; *militiae*, at the war; *Athēnis*, at Athens.

*Note 3.*—The gen. plur. is sometimes formed in **-um** instead of **-arum**, by compounds with *-cōla*, *-gēna*: *agricola*, a farmer; and in some words borrowed from Greek: *amphora*, *drachma*.

*Note 4.*—*Dea* and *filia* have dat. and abl. plural **-ābūs**, in order to distinguish them from the dat. and abl. plural of *deus* and *filius*.

## 35

## SECOND DECLENSION.

## O- Stems.

The Nominative is formed from the Stem by adding *s*; in neuter nouns, *m*; the Character. *ō* being weakened to *ū*.

In the greater number of nouns whose Stem ends in *ero*, or in *ro* preceded by a mute, the *o* is dropped, and the Nom. ends in *-er*.

Stem	annō-	puērō-	māgistrō-	bellō-
	<i>year, m.</i>	<i>boy, m.</i>	<i>master, m.</i>	<i>war, n.</i>
SING.				
Nom.	annūs, <i>a year</i>	puēr	magistēr	bellum
Voc.	annē, <i>o year</i>	puēr	magistēr	bellum
Acc.	annum, <i>a year</i>	puerum	magistrum	bellum
Gen.	annī, <i>of a year</i>	puerī	magistrī	bellī
Dat.	annō, <i>to a year</i>	puerō	magistrō	bellō
Abl.	annō, <i>from a year</i>	puerō	magistrō	bellō
PLUR.				
Nom.	annī, <i>years</i>	puerī	magistrī	bellā
Voc.	annī, <i>o years</i>	puerī	magistrī	bellā
Acc.	annōs, <i>years</i>	puerōs	magistrōs	bellā
Gen.	annōrum, <i>of years</i>	puerōrum	magistrōrum	bellōrum
Dat.	annīs, <i>to years</i>	puerīs	magistrīs	bellīs
Abl.	annīs, <i>from years</i>	puerīs	magistrīs	bellīs

Decline like **annus**: amīcus, *friend*; dominus, *lord*; servus, *slave*.

Decline like **puer**: gener, *son-in-law*; socer, *father-in-law*; liberī (plur.), *children*; lūcifer, *light-bringer*; armiger, *armour-bearer*.

Decline like **magister**: ager, *field*; cancer, *crab*; liber, *book*.

Decline like **bellum**: regnum, *kingdom*; verbum, *word*.

Nouns in **us**, **er**, are masculine; in **um** neuter.

The following in **ūs** are feminine besides words feminine by meaning: alvus, *paunch*; colus, *distaff*; humus, *ground*; vannus, *winnowing-fan*; also several from the Greek: arctus, *the bear constellation*; carbasus, *linen*; plur. carbasa, *n., sails*. Neuter in **us** (and used in the sing. only) are pelagus, *sea*; vīrus, *venom*.

*Note.*—Vulgus, *crowd*, is generally neuter, rarely masculine.

The following have some exceptional forms:—

Stem	filiō-	vīrō-	deō-
	son, m.	man, m.	god, m.
SING.			
Nom.	filiūs	vīr	deūs
Voc.	fili	vīr	deūs
Acc.	filium	virum	deum
Gen.	fili or fili	virī	deī
D. Abl.	filiō	virō	deō
PLUR.			
N. V.	fili	virī	di (dei)
Acc.	filiōs	virōs	deōs
Gen.	filiōrum	virōrum or virum	deōrum or deum
D. Abl.	filiis	viris	dis (deis)

*Note 1.*—Like *filius* are declined *gēnius*, *guardian spirit*, and many proper names in **-ius**: *Claudius*, *Vergilius*; like *vir*, its compounds, *decemvir*, *triumvir*, &c. The contracted gen. sing. in **-ī**, as *fili*, *ingenī*, is used by writers of the best age, especially poets.

*Note 2.*—The locative singular ends in *ī*; the plural in *īs*: *humī*, *on the ground*; *bellī*, *at the war*; *Milēti*, *at Milētus*; *Philippis*, *at Philippi*.

*Note 3.*—The genitive plural in **-um** is often found; especially in words denoting coins, sums, weights, and measures: *nummus*, *coin*; *talentum*, *talent*. Some nouns have genitive plural in **-um** or **-orum**: *socius*, *ally*; *faber*, *smith*; *liberi*, *children*. Also *superi*, *the gods*, from adj. *superus* (304).

## 36

## THIRD DECLENSION.

## Consonant and I- Stems.

The Third Declension contains—

## A. Consonant Stems.

## MUTES—

(1) **Gutturals**, c, g.

(2) **Dentals**, t, d.

(3) **Labials**, p, b. —

**SPIRANT**, s.

**NASALS**, n, m.

**LIQUIDS**, l, r.

## B. I- Stems.



# 37 Syllabus of Consonant Substantives, showing Stem-ending with Nominative and Genitive Singular.

Stem-ending	Nominative Sing.	Genitive Sing.	English
<i>Stems in Gutturals with x in Nom. for cs or gs.</i>			
ăc-	fax, f.	făcīs	torch
āc-	pax, f.	pācīs	peace
ēc-	nex, f.	nēcīs	death
ēc- ĭc-	apex, m.	apīcis	peak
ēc-	vervex, m.	vervēcis	wether
ĭc-	fornix, m.	fornīcis	arch
ĭc-	jūdex, c.	judīcis	judge
īc-	rādex, f.	radīcis	root
ōc-	vox, f.	vōcis	voice
ŭc-	dux, c.	dūcis	leader
ūc-	lux, f.	lūcis	light
ēg-	grex, m.	grēgis	flock
ēg-	rex, m.	rēgis	king
ēg- ĭg-	rēmex, m.	remīgis	rower
ĭg-	strix, f.	strīgis	screech-owl
ŭg-	conjux, c.	conjūgis	wife or husband
ūg-	wanting	frūgis, f.	fruit
īv-	nix, f.	nīvis	snow

*Stems in Dentals drop t, d, before s in the Nom.*

ăt-	ănās, f.	anătīs	duck
āt-	aetās, f.	aetătīs	age
ět-	sęgēs, f.	segētīs	corn-crop
ět-	pariēs, m.	pariētīs	room-wall
ēt-	quiēs, f.	quiētīs	rest
ět- ĭt-	mīlēs, c.	milītīs	soldier
īt-	căpūt, n.	capītīs	head
ōt-	nēpōs, m.	nepōtīs	grandson
ūt-	virtūs, f.	virtūtīs	virtue
ct-	lac, n.	lactīs	milk
ăd-	vās, m.	vădis	surety
əd-	pēs, m.	pēdis	foot
əd-	mercēs, f.	mercēdis	hire
aed-	praes, m.	praedis	bondsman
əd- ĭd-	obsēs, c.	obsīdis	hostage
īd-	lăpīs, m.	lapīdis	stone
ōd-	custōs, c.	custōdis	guardian
ūd-	pēcus, f.	pecūdīs	beast
ūd-	incūs, f.	incūdīs	anvil
aud-	laus, f.	laudīs	praise
rd-	cōr, n.	cordīs	heart



*Stems in Labials form Nom. regularly with s.*

ăp-	wanting	dăpîs, f.	banquet
ěp- ĭp-	princeps, c.	prîncîpis	chief
ĭp-	wanting	stîpis, f.	dole (a small coin)
öp-	wanting	öpîs, f.	help
ěp- ŭp-	auceps, m.	aucûpis	fowler

*Stems in the Spirant s, which, except in vas, becomes r.*

ās-	vās, n.	vāsis	vessel
aes- aer-	aes, n.	aeris	copper, bronze
ēs- ěr-	Cerēs, f.	Cērēris	Ceres
īs- ěr-	cinis, m.	cînēris	cinder
ōs- ōr-	honōs, m.	honōris	honour
ōs- ōr-	tempūs, n.	tempōris	time
ūs- ěr-	opūs, n.	opēris	work
ūs- ūr-	crūs, n.	crūris	leg

*Stems in Liquids.*

ăl-	sal, m.	sălîs	salt
ell-	mel, n.	mellis	honey
ĭl-	mūgil, m.	mūgĭlis	mullet
ōl-	sōl, m.	sōlis	sun
ŭl-	consŭl, m.	consŭlis	consul
ăr-	jubăr, n.	jubăris	sunbeam
arr-	far, n.	farris	flour
ěr-	ansēr, m.	ansēris	goose
ēr-	vēr, n.	vēris	spring
ter- tr-	māter, f.	mātris	mother
ōr-	aequōr, n.	aequōris	sea
ōr-	ěbŭr, n.	ebōris	ivory
ōr-	sorōr, f.	sorōris	sister
ŭr-	vultŭr, m.	vultŭris	vulture
ŭr-	fŭr, m.	fŭris	thief

*Stems in Nasals.*

ěn- ĭn-	nōmĕn, n.	nomĭnis	name
ōn- ĭn-	hōmo, m.	homĭnis	man
ōn-	leo, m.	leōnis	lion
iōn-	rătio, f.	ratiōnis	reason
rn-	caro, f.	carnis	flesh
ăn-	cănîs, c.	canis	dog
ěn-	juvenis, c.	juvenis	young person
ēm-	hiemps, f.	hiĕmis	winter

## A. Consonant Stems.

38

## (1) Stems in Gutturals: c, g.

Stem	jūdic-		rādic-	rēg-
	<i>judge,</i>		<i>root, f.</i>	<i>king, m.</i>
SING.				
N. V.	jūdex,	<i>a judge</i>	rādex	rex
Acc.	jūdicem,	<i>a judge</i>	radicem	rēgem
Gen.	judicis,	<i>of a judge</i>	radicis	regis
Dat.	judici,	<i>to a judge</i>	radici	regi
Abl.	judicē,	<i>from a judge</i>	radicē	regē
PLUR.				
N. V.	judicēs,	<i>judges</i>	radicēs	regēs
Acc.	judicēs,	<i>judges</i>	radicēs	regēs
Gen.	judicum,	<i>of judges</i>	radicum	regum
Dat.	judicībūs,	<i>to judges</i>	radicībūs	regībūs
Abl.	judicībūs,	<i>from judges</i>	radicībūs	regībūs

Decline also: f. vox, **vōc-**, *voice*; c. dux, **dūc-**, *leader*; m. grex, **grēg-**, *flock*.

39

## (2) Stems in Dentals: t, d.

Stem	milit-	pēd-	cāpit-
	<i>soldier, c.</i>	<i>foot, m.</i>	<i>head, n.</i>
SING.			
N. V.	mīlēs	pēs	cāpūt
Acc.	mīlitem	pēdem	capūt
Gen.	mīlītis	pedis	capītis
Dat.	mīlītī	pedī	capitī
Abl.	mīlītē	pedē	capitē
PLUR.			
N. V.	mīlītēs	pedēs	capitā
Acc.	mīlītēs	pedēs	capitā
Gen.	mīlītum	pedum	capitum
Dat.	mīlītībūs	pedībūs	capitībūs
Abl.	mīlītībūs	pedībūs	capitībūs

Decline also: f. virtūs, **virtūt-**, *virtue*; c. sēgēs, **segēt-**, *corn*; m. lapis, **lapīd-**, *stone*.

40 (3) Stems in **Labials** : p, b.

	Stem	princĕp- princip- chief, c.	
SING.			PLUR.
N. V.	princeps		principēs
Acc.	principem		principēs
Gen.	principis		principum
Dat.	principi		principibūs
Abl.	principē		principibūs

Decline also : c. forceps, **forcĭp-**, *tongs* ; m. auceps, **aucŭp-**, *fowler*.

41 Stems in the **Spirant s**.

Stems in **s** do not add **s** in the Nominative Singular, and generally they change **s** into **r** in the other cases.

	Stem	fĭōs- fĭōr- flower, m.	ōpŭs- ōpĕr- work, n.	crŭs- crŭr- leg, n.
SING.				
N. V.	fĭōs		opŭs	crŭs
Acc.	fĭōrem		opŭs	crŭs
Gen.	florĭs		opĕrĭs	crŭrĭs
Dat.	florĭ		operĭ	crurĭ
Abl.	florē		operē	crurē
PLUR.				
N. V.	florēs		operă	crură
Acc.	florēs		operă	crură
Gen.	florum		operum	crurum
Dat.	florĭbŭs		operĭbŭs	crurĭbŭs
Abl.	florĭbŭs		operĭbŭs	crurĭbŭs

Decline also : m. honōs, **honōr-**, *honour* ; n. tempus, **tempŏr-**, *time* ; corpus, **corpŏr-**, *body* ; genus, **genĕr-**, *race* ; jŭs, **jŭr-**, *law*.

*Note 1.*—Vās, vas-, *a vessel*, keeps **s** in all the cases, and has plural vāsa, vasŏrum, vasīs. —Os, oss-, n., *bone*, as, ass-, m., *a coin*, keep **s** in all the cases, and have gen. plur. ossium, assium.

*Note 2.*—Honōs, colōs, *colour*, and other words changed in later Latin to honŏr, colŏr, &c., in the nom. sing., with gen. -ŏris. Arbŏs, f., changed to arbŏr, arbŏris, *tree*.

## 42 Stems in Liquids : l, r.

Stems in l, r, do not take s in the Nominative Singular.

Stem	consŭl-	ămōr-	păter-	aequōr-
	<i>consul, m.</i>	<i>love, m.</i>	<i>father.</i>	<i>sea, n.</i>
SING.				
N. V.	consŭl	ămōr	pătēr	aequōr
Acc.	consŭlem	amōrem	patrem	aequōr
Gen.	consulīs	amorīs	patrīs	aequōris
Dat.	consulī	amorī	patri	aequorī
Abl.	consulē	amorē	patrē	aequorē
PLUR.				
N. V.	consulēs	amorēs	patrēs	aequoră
Acc.	consulēs	amorēs	patrēs	aequoră
Gen.	consulum	amorum	patrum	aequorum
Dat.	consulībŭs	amorībŭs	patrībŭs	aequorībŭs
Abl.	consulībŭs	amorībŭs	patrībŭs	aequorībŭs

Decline also : m. sŏl, **sŏl-**, *sun*; orătōr, **orătōr-**, *speaker*; carcēr, **carcēr-**, *prison*; frăter, **fratr-**, *brother*; n. ebŭr, **ebŏr-**, *ivory*.

## 43 Stems in Nasals : n, m.

Stems ending in n do not take s in the Nominative Singular.

Stems in ōn, ōn, drop the n.

Stem	lēōn-	virgŏn-	nŏmĕn-
	<i>lion, m.</i>	<i>virgin, f.</i>	<i>name, n.</i>
SING.			
N. V.	leō	virgō	nŏmĕn
Acc.	leōnem	virgĭnem	nomĕn
Gen.	leonīs	virginīs	nŏmĭnīs
Dat.	leonī	virginī	nomĭnī
Abl.	leonē	virginē	nomĭnē
PLUR.			
N. V.	leonēs	virginēs	nomĭnă
Acc.	leonēs	virginēs	nomĭnă
Gen.	leonum	virginum	nominum
Dat.	leonībŭs	virginībŭs	nomĭnībŭs
Abl.	leonībŭs	virginībŭs	nomĭnībŭs

Decline also : m. latrŏ, **latrŏn-**, *robber*; f. ratiŏ, **ratiŏn-**, *reason*; m. ordŏ, **ordĭn-**, *order*; homŏ, **homĭn-**, *man*; n. carmĕn, **carmĭn-**, *song*.

There is only one Stem in m : hiemps, *winter*; Gen. hiĕmis, f.

## B. I-Stems.

44 (1) Stems with Nom. Sing. in **-is**, and in **-er** from stem **ri-**:

Stem	cīvī-	imbrī-
	<i>citizen, c.</i>	<i>shower, m.</i>
SING.		
N. V.	cīvīs	imbēr
Acc.	civem	imbrem
Gen.	civīs	imbrīs
Dat.	civī	imbrī
Abl.	civē, -ī	imbrē, -ī
PLUR.		
N. V.	civēs	imbrēs
Acc.	civēs	imbrēs
Gen.	civium	imbrium
Dat.	civībūs	imbrībūs
Abl.	civībūs	imbrībūs

Decline like **civīs** : m. amnis, *river* ; ignis, *fire* ; f. avis, *bird*.

Decline like **imber** : f. linter, *boat* ; m. ūter, *leathern bottle*.

*Note 1.*—Some words have acc. **-im**, abl. **ī** : f. tussis, *cough* ; sitis, *thirst* ; most rivers and towns, m. Tiberis, *Tiber* ; f. Neapolis, *Naples*. Sometimes f. febris, *fever* ; puppis, *stern* ; turris, *tower* ; clavis, *key* ; navis, *ship* ; restis, *rope* ; securis, *axe* ; sementis, *sowing*. Ignis has usually abl. ignī. The acc. plur. is sometimes written **-is**, which is the older form.

*Note 2.*—Vīs, *force*, is the only long **I**-stem. It has acc. sing. vīm, abl. sing. vī, plur. vīres, vīrium, vīribus.

45 (2) Stems with Nom. Sing. in **-es**:

Stem	nūbī-	
	<i>cloud, f.</i>	
	SING.	PLUR.
N. V.	nūbēs	nubēs
Acc.	nubem	nubēs
Gen.	nubīs	nubium
Dat.	nubī	nubībūs
Abl.	nubē	nubībūs

Decline also : cautēs, *rock* ; mōlēs, *pile* ; rūpēs, *crag*.

*Note.*—Some have nom. sing. **-ēs** or **-is** : vallēs or vallis, *valley* ; vulpēs or vulpis, *fox*. Trabs, *beam*, plebs, *the common people*, are often found for trabēs, plebēs. Famēs, *hunger*, has abl. sing. famē.

- 6 (3) Stems which have two consonants (a liquid or nasal and a mute) before *i*, and drop *i* before the *s* in the Nom. Sing.:

Stem	montĭ- <i>mountain, m.</i>	urbĭ- <i>city, f.</i>
SING.		
N. V.	mons	urbs
Acc.	montem	urbem
Gen.	montĭs	urbĭs
Dat.	montĭ	urbĭ
Abl.	montĕ	urbĕ
PLUR.		
N. V.	montēs	urbēs
Acc.	montēs	urbēs
Gen.	montium	urbium
Dat.	montibūs	urbībūs
Abl.	montībūs	urbībūs

Decline also: *f. arx, arci-, citadel*; *ars, arti-, art*; *stirps, stirpi-, stem*; *frons, fronti-, forehead*; *frons, frondi-, leaf*; *m. dens, denti-, tooth*.

- 7 (4) Neuter Stems with Nom. Sing. in *-ĕ, -ăl, -ăr*:

These either change *ĭ* into *ĕ* in the Nom. Sing. or drop the vowel and shorten the final syllable.

Stem	cubilĭ- <i>couch</i>	ănimălĭ- <i>animal</i>	calcărĭ- <i>spur</i>
SING.			
N. V. Acc.	cubilĕ	animăl	calcăr
Gen.	cubilĭs	animălĭs	calcărĭs
Dat. Abl.	cubilĭ	animălĭ	calcărĭ
PLUR.			
N. V. Acc.	cubiliă	animaliă	calcăriă
Gen.	cubiliū	animaliū	calcarium
Dat. Abl.	cubilībūs	animalībūs	calcarībūs

Decline also: *conclăve, room*; *sedile, seat*; *rĕtĕ, net* (abl. sing. *ĕ*); *tribūnal, tribunal*; *exemplar, pattern*.

Note.—*Mărĕ, sea*, has abl. sing. *marĭ*, or more rarely *marĕ*; the gen. plur. is only found once: *marum*. *Baccar, an aromatic root, far, flour, jubar, a sunbeam, nectar, nectar*, have abl. sing. *-ĕ*.



48

Consonant stems and I- stems are placed in one declension because of the difficulty of distinguishing their forms. I-stems are very rare in early Latin; they were being developed in the Classical period, and their forms are liable to uncertainty. The Gen. Plur. (by which in other declensions the stem is determined) often varies in the third declension between -um and -ium. In classing words as Consonant or I-stems, the Gen. Plur. must be considered, together with the Acc. Sing. -em or -im, Abl. Sing. -ē or -i; Acc. Plur. -es or -is, and in neuters the Nom. Plur. -ia; but often the classification remains doubtful, and rests chiefly on analogy with other Latin words, or on comparison with cognate words in other languages.

49

The following rule with regard to the form of the Gen. Plur. may be given for practical convenience:—

**Nouns with a syllable more in the Gen. Sing. than in the Nom. Sing. (Imparisyllabic Nouns) have Gen. Plur. in -um.**

**Nouns with the same number of syllables in the Nom. Sing. and Gen. Sing. (Parisyllabic Nouns) have Gen. Plur. in -ium.**

The chief exceptions to this rule are the following:—

- (a) Imparisyllabic Nouns which have Gen. Plur. in -ium are: glis, lis, mas, mus, nox, and Nouns of one syllable of which the Nom. Sing. ends in -ns, -rs, -ps, -bs, -rx, -lx.\*

Often also, ren, lar, dos, Nouns of two syllables with Nom. Sing. ending in -ns, -rs, and most Nouns in -as (gen. -ātis). These last and Nouns in -ns are especially variable. Horace writes both parentum and parentium, but the latter is rare. Livy writes always civitatum; Cicero chiefly civitatum.

- (b) Parisyllabic Nouns which have Gen. Plur. in -um are: canis, juvenis, senex, sedes, pater, mater, frater, accipiter.†

Sometimes also, apis, mensis, vates, volucris.

\* Nouns of one syllable, of which the Stem has two Consonants before i-, are only apparently Imparisyllabic because the Nom. Sing. originally ended in -is (47), and of some both forms are found; e.g. orbs and orbis.

† Pater, mater, frater, accipiter, are only apparently Parisyllabic because the e of the Nom. Sing. has fallen out in the other cases.

## 50 The following have exceptional forms:—

(1) Juppiter (for Dieus-piter) and bos (for bous), *ox*.

		SING.	PLUR.
N. V.	Juppiter	bos	bōvēs
Acc.	Jōvem	bōvem	bovēs
Gen.	Jovīs	bovīs	boum
Dat.	Jovī	bovī	bōbūs or būbūs
Abl.	Jovē	bovē	bōbūs or būbūs

(2) Two stems in **-u**, declined like consonant nouns: *grūs, crane*, *sūs, pig*. These are the only uncontracted **u-** nouns.

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N. V.	grus	gruēs	sus	suēs
Acc.	gruem	gruēs	suem	suēs
Gen.	gruīs	gruum	suīs	suum
Dat.	gruī	gruibūs	suī	suibūs (sūbus)
Abl.	gruē	gruibūs	suē	suibūs (sūbus)

*Itēr, journey*, has gen. sing. *itinēris* (and rarely *iteris*).*Jēcūr, liver*, *jecōris*, and *jecinōris*.*Sēnex, old man*, has Sing. Acc. *senem*, Gen. *senis*, Dat. *seni*, Abl. *sene*; Plur. N. Acc. *senes*, Gen. *senum*, Dat. Abl. *senibus*.*Supellex, furniture*, forms the other cases from stem *supellectili-*.*Jusjurandum, oath*, is declined in both parts: N. V. Acc. *jusjurandum*; Gen. *jurisjurandi*; Dat. *jurijurando*; Abl. *jurejurando*. No plural.*Paterfamiliās, māterfamiliās, father, mother of a family*, have *pater, māter* fully declined in the sing. cases, but *familiās* remains unaltered. The plur. *patresfamilium* is sometimes found.*Note*.—The locative sing. of the third declension ends in *-ī* or *-ē*; the plural in *-ibus*: *rūrī, rurē, in the country*; *vesperī, vesperē, in the evening*; *Carthāginī, Carthāginē, at Carthage*; *Gādibus, at Gades (Cadiz)*.

## GENDER IN THIRD DECLENSION.

## 51

*Consonant Stems.*Masculinē are nouns which end in **-os, -o** (except **-do, -go, -io**), **-or, -er**, and Imparisyllabic nouns in **-is** or **-es**.

Exceptions:

*cōs, whetstone*, *dōs, dowry*, f.; *ōs, ossis, bone*, *ōs, oris, mouth*, n.*ēcho, echo*, *cāro, flesh*, f.*arbor, tree*, f.; *aequor, sea*, *marmor, marble*, *cor, heart*, n.*vēr, spring*, *cadāver, corpse*, *iter, journey*, *tūber, hump*, *ūber, udder*, *verber, lash*, n.; also some names of plants, as *pāpāver, poppy*.*compēs, fetter*, *mercēs, hire*, *mergēs, sheaf*, *quiēs, rest*, *requiēs, rest*, *sēgēs, corn*, *tēgēs, mat*, f.

**52** Feminine are nouns which end in **-x**, **-as**, **-ps**, **-do**, **-go**, **-io**, and nouns in **-ūs** of more than one syllable.

Exceptions :

Nouns in **-ex** are masculine or common, but *lex*, *law*, *nex*, *death*, *forfex*, *shears*, *supellex*, *furniture*, *ilex*, *oak*, *f.*

*calix*, *cup*, *fornix*, *arch*, *m.* ; *dux*, *leader*, *c.*

*as*, *coin*, *vas*, *surety*, *m.* ; *fas*, *right*, *nefas*, *wrong*, *vas*, *vessel*, *n.*

*manceps*, *buyer*, *m.* ; *municeps*, *burgess*, *c.* ; *princeps*, *chief*, *c.*

*cardo*, *hinge* ; *ordo*, *order*, *m.*

*ligo*, *hoe*, *m.* ; *margo*, *brink*, *c.*

Concrete nouns in **-io** are masculine : *pūgio*, *dagger* ; *pāpilio*, *butterfly*.

Abstract nouns in **-io** are feminine : *ratio*, *reason* ; *regio*, *region*.

**53** Neuter are nouns in **-ūs**, **-ūs** (in words of one syllable), **-en**, **-l**, **-ar**, **-ur**.

Exceptions :

*lepus*, *hare*, *m.* ; *pecus*, *pecūdis*, *single head of cattle*, *f.*

*mūs*, *mouse*, *m.* ; *grūs*, *crane*, *sūs*, *pig*, *c.*

*pectēn*, *comb*, *rēn*, *kidney*, *splēn*, *spleen*, *tibicēn*, *flute-player*, *m.*

*mūgil*, *mullet*, *sal*, *salt*, *sol*, *sun*, *m.*

*lar*, *god of the hearth*, *m.*

*furfūr*, *bran*, *lemūr*, *goblin*, *turtūr*, *turtle dove*, *vultūr*, *vulture*, *m.*

*Praes*, *bondsman*, is masc. ; *laus*, *praise*, *fraus*, *deceit*, are fem. ; *lac*, *milk*, *caput*, *head*, *aes*, *copper*, are neuter.

**54** *I- Stems.*

Most Parisyllabic nouns in **-is** and **-es** are feminine.

Exceptions : the following nouns in **-is** are masculine :

<i>amnis</i> , <i>river</i>	<i>crīnis</i> , <i>hair</i>	<i>mensis</i> , <i>month</i>	<i>unguis</i> , <i>nail</i>
<i>axis</i> , <i>axle</i>	<i>ensis</i> , <i>sword</i>	<i>orbis</i> , <i>circle</i>	<i>vectis</i> , <i>lever</i>
<i>canālis</i> , <i>canal</i>	<i>fascis</i> , <i>bundle</i>	<i>pānis</i> , <i>bread</i>	<i>vermis</i> , <i>worm</i>
<i>caulis</i> , <i>cabbage</i>	<i>follis</i> , <i>bag</i>	<i>piscis</i> , <i>fish</i>	<i>cassēs</i> , <i>nets</i>
<i>clunis</i> , <i>haunch</i>	<i>fustis</i> , <i>cudgel</i>	<i>postis</i> , <i>post</i>	<i>mānēs</i> , <i>shades</i> } plur.
<i>collis</i> , <i>hill</i>	<i>ignis</i> , <i>fire</i>	<i>torris</i> , <i>firebrand</i>	

Generally masculine are *callis*, *path* ; *finis*, *end* ; *fūnis*, *rope* ; *sentis*, *thorn* ; *torquis*, *necklace*.

*Acinaces*, *scimitar*, and *verres*, *boar*, are masculine.

Nouns in **-al**, **-ar**, and **-e** are neuter.

Nouns in **-x**, **-bs**, **-ls**, **-ns**, **-rs** are feminine ; but *fons*, *fountain*, *mons*, *mountain*, *dens*, *tooth*, *bidens*, *fork*, *rudens*, *rope*, *torrens*, *torrent*, *oriens*, *east*, *occidens*, *west*, masculine ; *infans*, *infant*, *parens*, *parent*, *c.*

55

## FOURTH DECLENSION.

## U- Stems (contracted).

The Nominative of masculine and feminine nouns is formed by adding *s*; neuters have the plain stem with *ū* (long).

Stem	grādŭ- <i>step, m.</i>		gĕnū <i>knee, n.</i>
SINGULAR.			
Nom.	grādŭs	<i>a step</i>	gĕnū
Voc.	gradŭs	<i>o step</i>	genū
Acc.	gradum	<i>a step</i>	genū
Gen.	gradŭs	<i>of a step</i>	genŭs
Dat.	graduī	<i>to a step</i>	genū
Abl.	gradū	<i>from a step</i>	genū
PLURAL.			
Nom.	gradŭs	<i>steps</i>	genŭă
Voc.	gradŭs	<i>o steps</i>	genuă
Acc.	gradŭs	<i>steps</i>	genuă
Gen.	graduum	<i>of steps</i>	genuum
Dat.	gradībŭs	<i>to steps</i>	genībŭs
Abl.	gradībŭs	<i>from steps</i>	genībŭs

Decline like *gradus*: *m. fructus, fruit*; *senātus, senate*; *f. manus, hand*.

Decline like *genu*: *cornu, horn*; *veru, spit* (dat. abl. plur., -ibus or -ŭbus).

Feminine nouns of this declension, besides *manus*, are: *acus, needle*; *porticus, porch*; *tribus, tribe*; *Idŭs, Ides*, and words feminine by meaning. Neuters are: *genu, cornu, veru*.

*Note 1.*—The dat. sing. -uī is sometimes contracted into -ū. The dat. and abl. plur. -ŭbŭs is generally changed into -ibŭs; but *acus, tribus, arcus, bow, lacus, lake, partus, birth, and artŭs* (plur.), *limbs*, have always -ŭbus; *portus, harbour*, has -ibus or -ŭbus.

*Note 2.*—Some nouns have forms of both *u-* and *o-* Stems, especially names of trees: *laurus, bay*; *myrtus, myrtle*. *Colus, distaff*, has Gen. -i and ŭs, Abl. -ō and -ū, Acc. pl. -ōs and ŭs.

56

*Domus, f.*, is thus declined:

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. V.	dŏmŭs	domŭs
Acc.	domum	domŭs or domōs
Gen.	domŭs	domōrum or domuum
Dat.	domuī or domō	domībŭs
Abl.	domō	domībŭs

The locative *domī. at home*, is often used.

57

## FIFTH DECLENSION.

## E- Stems.

The Nom. Sing. is formed by adding *s* to the Stem.

Stem *rē-*, *thing*.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
Nom.	<i>rēs</i> . <i>a thing</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>things</i>
Voc.	<i>rēs</i> . <i>o thing</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>o things</i>
Acc.	<i>rem</i> . <i>a thing</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>things</i>
Gen.	<i>rēī</i> . <i>of a thing</i>	<i>rērum</i>	<i>of things</i>
Dat.	<i>rēī</i> . <i>to a thing</i>	<i>rēbūs</i>	<i>to things</i>
Abl.	<i>rē</i> . <i>from a thing</i>	<i>rēbūs</i>	<i>from things</i>

Decline like *res*: *diēs*, *day* (gen. dat., *diēī*); *aciēs*, *line of battle*; *faciēs*, *face*; *seriēs*, *series*; *speciēs*, *form*; *spēs*, *hope*; *fidēs*, *faith*; *glaciēs*, *ice*; *meridiēs*, *noon*.

*Res* and *dies* are the only nouns which occur in the Gen., Dat., and Abl. Plural. *Fides*, *meridies*, are Singular only.

All nouns of this declension are feminine except *dies* and *meridies*. *Dies* also is feminine when it means 'an appointed day' or 'a period of time.'

*Note 1.*—The greater number of nouns of this declension were originally *ia-* Stems, and have forms both of *e-* and *a-* Stems. They are declined like *materiēs*, *matter*, singular only.

Stem,	<i>materia-</i> ,	and <i>materie-</i> .
N. V.	<i>materia</i>	<i>materiēs</i>
Acc.	<i>materiam</i>	<i>materiem</i>
Gen. Dat.	<i>materiae</i>	( <i>materiēī</i> )
Abl.	<i>materia</i>	<i>materiē</i>

*Note 2.*—The contracted gen. and dat. sing. in *-ē*, as *fidē* for *fideī*, is found in Virgil and Horace. An old gen. in *-ī* occurs in *tribunus plebi*, *tribune of the people*. The locative ends in *-ē*.

58

*Note 3.*—*Respublica*, *the public interest*, *the republic*, *the State*, is declined in both its parts:

Sing. Acc. *republicam*, Gen. *reipublicae*, Dat. *reipublicae*, Abl. *rēpublicā*.

Plur. Nom. *republicae*, Acc. *republicas*, Gen. *rerumpublicarum*, D. Abl. *republicis*.

59

## DEFECTIVE AND VARIABLE SUBSTANTIVES.

Many nouns are found only in the Singular ; these are chiefly proper names and words of general meaning : as

humus,	<i>ground.</i>	ævum,	<i>an age.</i>
justitia,	<i>justice.</i>	aurum,	<i>gold.</i>
lætitia,	<i>joy.</i>	argentum,	<i>silver.</i>
ver,	<i>spring.</i>	cælum,	<i>heaven.</i>
vesper,	<i>evening.</i>	lētum,	<i>death.</i>

*Note.*—In poetry some words take plural form with singular meaning : mella, *honey*, nives, *snow*, silentia, *silence*, rura, *country*.

60

Many nouns are used only in the Plural :

arma,	<i>arms.</i>	insidiae,	<i>ambush.</i>
artūs,	<i>limbs.</i>	liberi,	<i>children.</i>
cūnae,	<i>cradle.</i>	mānes,	<i>departed spirits.</i>
dīvitiae,	<i>riches.</i>	moenia,	<i>town walls.</i>
fasti,	<i>annals.</i>	nūgae,	<i>trifles.</i>
fēriæ,	<i>holidays.</i>	penates,	<i>household gods.</i>
indūtiæ,	<i>truce.</i>	tenebrae,	<i>darkness.</i>

And names of towns, days, festivals : Athēnae, *Delphi*, Kalendae, *Calends* ; Bacchanālia, *festival of Bacchus*.

61

Some words have a different meaning in Singular and Plural :

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
aedes,	<i>temple.</i>	aedes,	<i>house.</i>
auxilium,	<i>help.</i>	auxilia,	<i>allied forces.</i>
castrum,	<i>fort.</i>	castra,	<i>camp.</i>
cēra,	<i>wax.</i>	cērae,	<i>waxen tablet.</i>
cōpia,	<i>plenty.</i>	cōpiae,	<i>forces.</i>
fīnis,	<i>end.</i>	fines,	<i>boundaries.</i>
grātia,	<i>favour.</i>	gratiae,	<i>thanks.</i>
impedimentum,	<i>hindrance.</i>	impedimenta,	<i>baggage.</i>
littera,	<i>letter of the alphabet.</i>	litterae,	<i>epistle, literature.</i>
lūdus,	<i>play.</i>	ludi,	<i>public games.</i>
opem (acc.),	<i>help.</i>	opes,	<i>wealth.</i>
opera,	<i>labour.</i>	operae,	<i>work-people.</i>
sal,	<i>salt.</i>	sales,	<i>wit.</i>



**62** Some nouns have two or more forms of Declension :

NOM.	GEN.		NOM.	GEN.		
tergum,	-i, n.	} <i>back.</i>	pecūs,	-ōris, n.	} <i>cattle.</i> <i>a single head</i> <i>of cattle.</i>	
tergus,	-ōris, n.		pecūs,	-ūdis, f.		
ēventum,	-i, n.	} <i>event.</i>	plebs,	-is, f.	} <i>the common</i> <i>people.</i>	
ēventus,	-ūs, m.		plebes,	-ei, f.		
			NOM.	GEN.	ABL.	
jugerum,	-i, n.	} <i>acre.</i>	vespera,	-ae	-a, f.	
[juger],	-is, n.		vesper,	-i	-o, m.	} <i>evening.</i>
			vesper,	—	-e, m.	

Quiēs, f., *rest*, -ētis, is a **t**-Stem only; but its compound requiēs takes also the **e**-forms: requiem, requiē.

**63** Some **o**-Stems vary between masc. and neut. in Sing. or Plur. :  
baculus, m., baculum, n., *a stick*; pileus, m., pileum, n., *a hat*.

locus, m., <i>place</i> , pl.	{ loci. loca.	frēnum, n., <i>bit</i> , pl.	{ freni. frena.
jocus, m., <i>jest</i> , pl.	{ joci. joca.	rastrum, n., <i>harrow</i> , pl.	{ rastri. rastra.

**64** In many nouns some of the cases are wanting; thus :

	<i>feast</i> , f.,	<i>fruit</i> , f.,	<i>help</i> , f.,	<i>prayer</i> , f.,	<i>change</i> , f.
N. V.	—	—	—	—	—
Acc.	dāpem	frūgem	ōpem	prēcem	vīcem
Gen.	dapīs	frugīs	opīs	—	vicīs
Dat.	dapī	frugī	—	precī	—
Abl.	dapē	frugē	opē	precē	vicē

These have full plural -es, -um, -ibus, except Gen. vicium.

**65** Many are used in the Abl. Sing. only.

coactu,	<i>by force.</i>	natu,	<i>by birth.</i>
concessu,	<i>by permission.</i>	noctu,	<i>by night.</i>
(diu) interdiu,	<i>by day.</i>	rogātu,	<i>by request.</i>
jussu,	<i>by command.</i>	sponte,	<i>by choice.</i>
injussu,	<i>without command.</i>		

**66** Some have only Nom. Acc. S. : fās, *right*, nefās, *wrong*, instar, *likeness*, size, opus, *need*, nihil, *nothing*.

## DECLENSION OF GREEK NOUNS.

## 67

## FIRST DECLENSION, a- STEMS.

At an early time many Greek nouns were used in Latin, in an almost or entirely Latin form. Masc. nouns ending in -ās, -ēs, and fem. nouns in -ā, -ē, all alike took the ending -ă in the nom., and were declined throughout like *mensa*. Such words are *nauta*, *sailor*, *poēta*, *poet*.

Afterwards the Greek forms, especially of proper names, were brought in by the poets, and thus in many instances both Greek and Latin forms of the same words are found, while of some words, used chiefly in poetry, the Greek forms alone occur.

Patronymics (*race-names*) are usually in the Greek form, as *Atridēs* (*son of Atreus*), *Pēlidēs* (*son of Peleus*); and though they sometimes have -ă for ēs in the nom. they always retain the Greek acc. in -ēn.

Names of people ending in -ātēs, -ītēs, or -ōtēs, as *Eleātēs* (inhabitant of Elea), generally have -em or -am in acc., being nearer to Latin words.

All these usually follow the Latin declension in the plural, even when they have the Greek form in the singular.

## MASCULINE NOUNS IN -ās, -ēs, AND FEMININE NOUNS IN -ē.

## SINGULAR.

N.	Aenēās	Atridēs, -ă	Cȳbēlē, ă
V.	Aeneā	Atridē, -ā, -ă	Cȳbēlē, -ă
A.	Aeneān	Atridēn	Cybelēn
G.	Aeneae	Atridae	Cybelēs, -ae
D.	Aeneae	Atridae	Cybelae
Abl.	Aeneā	Atridē, -ā	Cybelē, -ā

Plural in all cases like that of *mensa*.

Decline also: *Boreās*, *the north wind*, *Persă* (-ēs), *a Persian*, *Ēpīrctēs* (-ōtă), *native of Ēpirus*, *Hēlēnē*, *f.*

## 68

## SECOND DECLENSION, o- STEMS.

Greek nouns of the Second Declension, especially names of persons and places, often keep their Greek forms in the nom. and acc., but the other cases generally take the Latin forms.

## SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	Dēlōs, f.	Athōs, m.	Pēliōn, n.
<i>Voc.</i>	(Delē)	(Athōs)	(Peliōn)
<i>Acc.</i>	Delōn, -um	Athōn	Peliōn
<i>Gen.</i>	Delī	Athō	Peliī
<i>D., Abl.</i>	Delō	Athō	Peliō

The fem. words of this Declension are chiefly names of towns, islands, plants, and precious stones.

Nouns ending in -ros sometimes take the Latin ending -er in the nom., as Evander (-dros).

Decline also : scoriōs, m., *scorpion* ; lotōs, f., *lotus* ; Samōs, Ἰλιόν.

The Greek plural forms are rare, but plural nom. in -oe, as Cānēphōroe, and plur. gen. in -ōn, as Būcolicōn, are sometimes found.

## 69

## THIRD DECLENSION.

## Consonant Stems and Stems in e, i, o, eu, y.

These nouns are very numerous, having many different endings in the Nom. Sing.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.		SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
<i>N., V.</i>	hērōs, m., <i>hero</i>	herōēs		lynx, c., <i>lynx</i>		lynxes
<i>Acc.</i>	herō-ā, -em	herōās		lync-em, -ā		lync-ās, -ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	herōīs	herōum		lyncīs		lyncum
<i>Dat.</i>	herōi	herōībūs		lyncī		lyncībūs
<i>Abl.</i>	herōē	herōībūs		lyncē		lyncībūs

Decline also : f. lampās, gen. lampadis, *torch* ; m. gigās, gigantis, *giant* ; āēr, āēris, *air* ; aethēr, aethēris, *the upper air*.

Names of this class are found in different forms, from the tendency to latinise Greek words. Thus Persēūs is called Persēus by Livy, but by Cicero latinised to Perses in the nom., with the other cases like Greek names of the First Declension, as Atrides.

Greek nouns in **-ōn** often drop the **n** in the nom., as Plato, Platonis; but sometimes it is kept, as in Cimon. Some nouns have a second form, as elephas, *elephant*, which is usually declined like gigas, but sometimes latinised to elephantus, elephanti.

Didō also has two forms of declension, (1) as an **-ōn** stem, gen. Didōnis, (2) as a **u-** Stem, gen. Didūs.

Pōēma, poemātis, n., *poem*, is regularly declined, but Cicero has dat. and abl. plur. poematis. Poēsis, f., *poetry*, is an I- noun, acc. poes-in or poes-im, abl. poesi.

The accusative singular endings in **-em** and in **-a** are both frequent. Gen. sing. usually in **-is**, but the Greek ending **-os** is often found in poetry. The abl. sing. is always in **-ē**, and dat. sing. in **-i**, but the latter is often short (ĭ) as in Greek. The nom. plur. is always in **-es**, often short. In acc. plur. the Greek **-ās** is usual. The Greek ending of the abl. plur. in **-si** (-sin) is occasionally used by the poets.

Many names in **-es**, **-eus**, and in **-is** have cases from two forms. I- forms and Consonant forms appear in

NOM.	V.	ACC.	GEN.	DAT.	ABL.	
Thal-es	-es	-em, ēn, ētā	-is, -ētis	-ī, ētī	-ē, ētē	m.
Par-is	-e	{ -idem, idā -in, -im	{ -idis, -idōs	{ -idi	{ -idē	f. m.
Iris	-ī					

Forms of both the Second and Third Declension appear in

NOM.	V.	ACC.	GEN.	DAT.	ABL.	
Orpheus	-eu	-ěum, -ěā	-ěī, -ěős	-ěī	-ěō, -ěō	
Achilleus	-eu	-ěā	-ěī, -ěős	-ī		m.
Achilles	-ē	-em, -ēn	-is, -ī	-ī	-ě	m.

*Note.*—Tigris, *tiger*, is declined throughout as an I- noun, like civis; but also as a Consonant Stem in d, like Paris; forming plur. tigridēs, tigridum, tigridās, without dat. and abl.

Decline Ulixēus (Ulixes) like Achilleus (Achilles).

## 70                      DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives are declined by Gender, Number and Case.

- 71     A. Adjectives of three endings in **-us, -a, -um** or **-er, -a, -um** are declined like Substantives of the Second and First Declension, O- and A- Stems.

Stem	bŏnŏ-	bŏnă	bŏnŏ-
	<i>good.</i>		

SING.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	bonŭs	bonă	bonum
<i>Voc.</i>	bonē	bonă	bonum
<i>Acc.</i>	bonum	bonam	bonum
<i>Gen.</i>	bonī	bonae	bonī
<i>Dat.</i>	bonō	bonae	bonē
<i>Abl.</i>	bonō	bonā	bonī
PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i>	bonī	bonae	bonă
<i>Voc.</i>	bonī	bonae	bonă
<i>Acc.</i>	bonōs	bonās	bonă
<i>Gen.</i>	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
<i>Abl.</i>	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

Decline also: *cārus, dear; dūrus, hard; malus, bad; magnus, great; parvus, small; dubius, doubtful.*

Stem	tĕnĕrŏ-	tĕnĕră-	tĕnĕrŏ-
		<i>tender.</i>	
SING.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	tĕnĕr	tĕnĕră	tĕnĕrum
<i>Voc.</i>	tĕner	tĕneră	tĕnerum
<i>Acc.</i>	tĕnerum	tĕneram	tĕnerum
<i>Gen.</i>	tĕnerī	tĕnerae	tĕnerī
<i>Dat.</i>	tĕnerŏ	tĕnerae	tĕnerŏ
<i>Abl.</i>	tĕnerŏ	tĕneră	tĕnero
PLURAL.			
<i>N. V.</i>	tĕnerī	tĕnerae	tĕneră
<i>Acc.</i>	tĕnerŏs	tĕnerăs	tĕneră
<i>Gen.</i>	tĕnerŏrum	tĕnerărūm	tĕnerŏrum
<i>D., Abl.</i>	tĕnerīs	tĕnerīs	tĕnerīs

Decline also: asper, *rough*; lacer, *torn*; liber, *free*; miser, *wretched*; prosper, *prosperous*; frugifer, *fruit-bearing*; plumiger, *feathered*, and other compounds of fero and gero; also satur, *full*, satūra, satŭrum.

Stem	nĭgrŏ-	nĭgră-	nĭgrŏ-
		<i>black.</i>	
SING.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	nĭġĕr	nĭgră	nĭgrum
<i>Voc.</i>	nĭġĕr	nĭgră	nĭgrum
<i>Acc.</i>	nĭgrum	nĭgram	nĭgrum
<i>Gen.</i>	nĭgrī	nĭgrae	nĭgrī
<i>Dat.</i>	nĭgrŏ	nĭgrae	nĭgrŏ
<i>Abl.</i>	nĭgrŏ	nĭgră	nĭgrŏ
PLURAL.			
<i>N. V.</i>	nĭgrī	nĭgrae	nĭgră
<i>Acc.</i>	nĭgrŏs	nĭgrăs	nĭgră
<i>Gen.</i>	nĭgrŏrum	nĭgrărūm	nĭgrŏrum
<i>D., Abl.</i>	nĭgrīs	nĭgrīs	nĭgrīs

Decline also: aeger, *sick*; āter, *jet-black*; pulcher, *beautiful*; ruber, *red*; sacer, *sacred*.

*Note.*—Dexter, on the right hand, may be declined like tener or like niger.



**72** B. Adjectives of two endings and of one ending in the Nominative Singular are declined like Substantives of the Third Declension.

**73** (1) Adjectives with Nominative Singular in *-is*, Masc. and Fem.; in *-e* Neuter: I- Stems.

Stem	tristī-, <i>sad</i> .			
	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.
<i>N. V.</i>	tristīs	tristē	tristēs	tristiā
<i>Acc.</i>	tristem	tristē	tristēs, -īs	tristiā
<i>Gen.</i>	tristīs	tristīs	tristium	tristium
<i>D. Abl.</i>	tristī	tristī	tristībūs	tristībūs

Decline also: *brēvis*, *short*; *omnis*, *all*; *aequālis*, *equal*; *hostilis*, *hostile*; *facilis*, *easy*; *illustris*, *illustrious*; *lūgubris*, *mournful*.

Some stems in *ri-* form the Masc. Nom. Sing. in *-er*:

Stem	ācrī-, <i>keen</i> .			
	SING.	M.	F.	N.
<i>N. V.</i>		ācēr	ācrīs	ācrē
<i>Acc.</i>		acrem	acrem	acrē
<i>Gen.</i>		acrīs	acrīs	acrīs
<i>Dat.</i>		acrī	acrī	acrī
<i>Abl.</i>		acrī	acrī	acrī
	PLUR.			
<i>N. V.</i>		acrēs	acrēs	acriā
<i>Acc.</i>		acrēs, -īs	acrēs, -īs	acriā
<i>Gen.</i>		acrium	acrium	acrium
<i>D., Abl.</i>		acrībūs	acrībūs	acrībūs

Decline like *acer* the following: *celēber*, *famous*; *salūber*, *healthy*; *alācer*, *brisk*; *volūcer*, *winged*; *campester*, *level*; *equester*, *equestrian*; *pedester*, *pedestrian*; *paluster*, *marshy*; *puter*, *crumbling*; with September, October, November, December, masculine only.

*Note.*—In *celer*, *celēris*, *celērē*, *swift*, the Stem ends in *-ērī-* and the *e* is kept throughout.

74 (2) Adjectives with Nom. Sing. the same for all genders :

(a) *I- Stems.*

Stem	fēlicī-, happy.					
	M. F.	SING.	N.	M. F.	PLUR.	N.
N. V.	felix		felix	felicēs		feliciā
Acc.	felicem		felix	felicēs, -īs		feliciā
Gen.	felicīs		felicīs	felicium		felicium
Dat.	felicī		felicī	felicībūs		felicībūs
Abl.	felicī		felicī	felicībūs		felicībūs

Stem	ingentī-, huge.					
	M. F.	SING.	N.	M. F.	PLUR.	N.
N. V.	ingens		ingens	ingentēs		ingentia
Acc.	ingentem		ingens	ingentēs, -īs		ingentiā
Gen.		ingentīs			ingentium	
Dat.		ingentī			ingentībūs	
Abl.		ingentī			ingentībūs	

Decline also: audax, audāci-, *bold*; simplex, simplici-, *simple*; duplex, duplici-, *double*; vēlox, velōci-, *swift*; amans, amanti-, *loving*; sapiens, sapienti-, *wise*; concors, concordi-, *agreeing*; par, pari-, *like*.

*Note 1.*—Some adjectives with stems in **ti** have genitive plural in **-um** as well as **-ium**: recens, recentum or recentium, consors, consortum or consortium. In Participles, however, the gen. plur. is almost always in **-ium**.\*

*Note 2.*—The abl. sing. generally ends in **i** when an adjective is used with a substantive: a milite vigili, *by a watchful soldier*; and in **e** when an adjective stands for a substantive: a vigile, *by a watchman*, but a few have abl. sing. always in **-i**. The same rule applies to present participles; but in the ablative absolute construction the ablative always ends in **e**: viridanti quercu cinctus, *wreathed with green oak*; viridante quercu, *when the oak is green*.

\* It is to be remarked that when either in a Substantive or an Adjective a long syllable comes before the Stem Character, the genitive plural generally ends in **-ium**;

when a short vowel comes before the Stem Character, it ends in **-um**; but this cannot be laid down as an invariable rule.

75

## (b) Consonant Stems.

	Stem	divet-,	divit-, rich.
SING. N. V.	divēs		PLUR. divitēs
Acc.	divitem		divitēs
Gen.	divitīs		divitum
Dat.	divitī		divitibūs
Abl.	divitē		divitibūs

Decline like **dives**: pauper, pauper-, *poor*; dēgener, degener-, *degenerate*; sospes, sospit-, *safe*; superstes, superstit-, *surviving*; deses, desid-, *slothful*; compos, compot-, *possessing*; caelebs, caelib-, *unmarried*; vetus, veter-, *old*.

*Note*.—Dives has a contracted form dis, acc. ditem, &c.; with abl. sing. diti and neut. plur. ditia; gen. plur. ditium. Dives and vetus are used as neut. acc. sing. Vetus has neut. plur. vetera. The rest have no neuter forms.

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

76

Adjectives are compared in three degrees.

- (1) Positive: **dūrus**, *hard*. **tristis**, *sad*.
- (2) Comparative: **duriōr**, *harder*. **tristiōr**, *sadder*.
- (3) Superlative: **durissimus**, *hardest*. **tristissimus**, *saddest*.

The Positive is the adjective itself expressing the quality; the Comparative expresses a greater degree; the Superlative expresses a very great, or the greatest, degree of the quality.

The Comparative is formed from the Positive by adding the suffix **-ior** to the last consonant of the Stem; the Superlative generally by adding **-issimus** to the last consonant of the Stem.

Stem	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
dur-o-	durus	dur-iōr	dur-issimus
trist-i-	tristis	trist-iōr	trist-issimus
audāc-i-	audax, <i>bold</i>	audac-iōr	audac-issimus

77 The Comparative is declined as follows:

	M. F.	SING.	N.	M. F.	PLUR.	N.
N. V.	tristior		tristius	tristiōrēs		tristiōrā
Acc.	tristiōrem		tristius	tristior-es		tristiorā
Gen.		tristiōrīs			tristiorum	
Dat.		tristiōrī			tristiorībūs	
Abl.		tristior-ē, -ī*			tristiorībūs	

\* The Ablative in -ī of the Comparative is rare, and only used by late writers.

**78** The Superlative is declined from *o-* and *a-* Stems, like *bonus*.

Adjectives with Stems in *ro-*, *ri-*, form the Superlative by doubling the last consonant of the Stem and adding *-imus*. Words like *niger* insert *e* before *r* in the Superlative.

Stem	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
tenero-	tener	tenerior	tenerrimus
nigro-	niger	nigrior	nigerrimus
celeri-	celer	celerior	celerrimus

Six adjectives with Stems in *ili-* also form the Superlative by doubling the last consonant of the Stem and adding *-imus* :

<i>facilis, easy.</i>	<i>similis, like.</i>	<i>gracilis, slender.</i>
<i>difficilis, difficult.</i>	<i>dissimilis, unlike.</i>	<i>humilis, lowly.</i>
facili-	facilis	facilior
		facillimus

**79** Many Participles are compared like adjectives :

<i>amans, loving</i>	<i>amantior</i>	<i>amantissimus</i>
<i>parātus, ready</i>	<i>paratior</i>	<i>paratissimus</i>

### IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

**80** (1) Some Comparatives and Superlatives are formed from Stems distinct from that of the Positive :

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
<i>bonus, good.</i>	<i>melior, better.</i>	<i>optimus, best.</i>
<i>malus, bad.</i>	<i>pējor, worse.</i>	<i>pessimus, worst.</i>
<i>parvus, small.</i>	<i>minor, less.</i>	<i>minimus, least.</i>
<i>multus, much.</i>	<i>plūs, more.</i>	<i>plūrimus, most.</i>
<i>magnus, great.</i>	<i>mājor</i>	<i>maximus</i>
<i>nēquam (indecl.), wicked.</i>	<i>nequior</i>	<i>nequissimus</i>
<i>frūgi (indecl.), honest.</i>	<i>frugalior</i>	<i>frugalissimus</i>
<i>senex, old.</i>	<i>senior</i>	<i>natu maximus</i>
	{ <i>nātu mājor</i>	
<i>juvenis, young.</i>	{ <i>jūnior</i>	<i>natu minimus</i>
	{ <i>nātu minor</i>	

*Note 1.*—Senior, junior are not used as true comparatives of *senex*, *juvenis*, but with the meaning *old* rather than *young*, and *young* rather than *old*.

*Note 2.*—Dives has both uncontracted and contracted forms :

<i>dives</i> }	{ <i>dīvitior</i>	<i>dīvitissimus</i>
<i>(dis)</i> }, <i>rich.</i>	{ <i>dītior</i>	<i>dītissimus</i>
<i>vetus</i> }	{ <i>vetustior</i>	<i>veterrimus</i>
<i>(veter)</i> }, <i>old,</i>	has { <i>(veterior)</i>	

Plus in the Sing. is neuter only :

SING.		M. F.	PLUR.	N.
N. V. Acc.	plus	plures		plura
Gen.	pluris		plurium	
Dat. Abl.	plurī		pluribus	

- 81 (2) Adjectives compounded with **-dīcus**, **-fīcus**, **-vōlus** (from dico, facio, volo), form the Comparative and Superlative as if from participles in **-ens**.

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
malēdīcus, <i>evil-speaking</i> .	maledīcentior	maledīcentissimus
benēfīcus, <i>beneficent</i> .	beneficentior	beneficentissimus
benēvōlus, <i>well-wishing</i> .	benevolentior	benevolentissimus
Also: egēnus, <i>needy</i> .	egentior	egentissimus
prōvīdus, <i>provident</i> .	providentior	providentissimus

- 82 (3) Adjectives in **-eus**, **-ius**, **-uus** are generally compared with the adverbs magis, maxime; as dubius, *doubtful*, magis dubius, *more doubtful*, maxime dubius, *most doubtful*.

*Note*.—Adjectives in **-quus** are compared regularly, the first **u** being consonantal: aequus, *level*, aequior, aequissimus; so, antiquus, *ancient*. Egregius, *excellent*, has comparative egregior; strenuus, *vigorous*, sometimes has strenuior.

- 83 (4) Some adjectives have no Comparative forms; some no Superlative; of some the Comparative and Superlative are found without the Positive: ōcior, *swifter*, ocissimus, *swiftest*.

- 84 Some Comparatives denoting relations of place have no Positive, but correspond to Adverbs from the same Stem.

Adverb.	Comparative Adj.	Superlative Adj.
*extrā, <i>outside</i> .	extērior	extrēmus, extīmus
intrā, <i>within</i> .	intērior	intīmus
*suprā, <i>above</i> .	supērior	suprēmus, summus
*infrā, <i>below</i> .	infērior	infīmus, īmus
citrā, <i>on this side</i> .	citērior	citīmus
ultrā, <i>beyond</i> .	ultērior	ultīmus
prae, <i>before</i> .	prior	primus, <i>first</i> .
*post, <i>after</i> .	postērior	postrēmus, <i>last</i> .
prōpē, <i>near</i> .	propior	proximus

\**Note*.—The adjectives exterus, superus, inferus, posterus, are, however, sometimes found. Also :

dexter (adj.), <i>on the right</i> .	dexterior	dexterrimus, dextīmus
sinister (adi.), <i>on the left</i> .	sinisterior	
[deter-]	detērior, <i>wors<sup>a</sup></i> .	deterrimus, <i>worst</i> .

## COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

- 85 Adverbs derived from adjectives and ending in *-ē, -ō, -ter*, and rarely *-ě*, form Comparative in *-ius*, Superlative in *-issimē*.

*Note.*—These forms are the neut. acc. sing. of the Comp. adjective and an old neut. abl. sing. of the Superl. adjective.

Adjective	Adverb	Comparative	Superlative
dignus, <i>worthy</i> .	dignē, <i>worthily</i> .	dignius	dignissimē
tutus, <i>safe</i> .	tūtō, <i>safely</i> .	tutius	tutissimē
fortis, <i>brave</i> .	fortiter, <i>bravely</i> .	fortius	fortissimē
constans, <i>firm</i> .	constanter, <i>firmly</i> .	constantius	constantissimē
audax, <i>bold</i> .	audacter, <i>boldly</i> .	audācius	audacissimē
facilis, <i>easy</i> .	facile, <i>easily</i> .	facilius	facillimē

- 86 Irregular comparison has corresponding forms in Adverbs.

Adverb	Comparative	Superlative
benē, <i>well</i> .	melius	optimē
malē, <i>ill</i> .	pējus	pessimē
paullum, <i>little</i> .	mīnus	mīnimē
multum, <i>much</i> .	plus	plurimum
magnōpēre, <i>greatly</i> .	māgis	maximē
—	ocius, <i>more quickly</i> .	ocissime

Magis, *more* (in degree) ; plus, *more* (in quantity).

- 87 In like manner are compared :

diū, <i>long</i> .	diūtius	diūtissimē
intus, <i>within</i> .	intērius	intimē
(prae, <i>before</i> ).	prius	primo
post, <i>after</i> .	postērius	postrēmō
prōpē, <i>near</i> .	propius	proximē
saepē, <i>often</i> .	saepius	saepissimē
nūper, <i>lately</i> .	—	nuperrimē



## NUMERALS.

Numeral Adjectives are of three kinds :

1. Cardinals ; answering the question, *How many ?*
2. Ordinals ; answering the question, *Which in order of number ?*
3. Distributives ; answering the question, *How many each ?*

Numeral Adverbs answer the question, *How many times ?*

Unus, from **o-** and **a-** Stems, is declined as follows :

	SING.			PLUR.		
<i>Nom.</i>	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	unī	unae	unā
<i>Acc.</i>	unum	unam	unum	unōs	unās	una
<i>Gen.</i>	unius	unius	unius	unorum	unarum	unorum
<i>Dat.</i>	unī	unī	unī	unīs	unīs	unīs
<i>Abl.</i>	unō	unā	unō	unīs	unīs	unīs

Dūo is an **o-** Stem, and trēs an **i-** Stem.

	M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	duō	duae	duō	trēs	tria
<i>Acc.</i>	duōs, duō	duās	duo	trēs	tria
<i>Gen.</i>	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
<i>D., Abl.</i>	duōbūs	duābūs	duōbūs	tribūs	tribūs

Decline like **duo** : ambō, *both*.

*Note.*—Duum is sometimes used for duorum.

The Cardinals from quattuor to centum are indeclinable. Hundreds from *two* to *nine hundred* are **o-** and **a-** Stems, ducentī, ducentae, ducenta. Mille (*a thousand*) is an indeclinable adjective ; but milia (*thousands*) is a neuter substantive declined like animalia. Mille passus, *a mile*.

In Compound Numbers above twenty, the order is the same as in English. Either the smaller number with **et** comes first, or the larger without **et** : septem et trīginta, *seven and thirty* ; or trīginta septem, *thirty-seven*. Unus usually stands first : unus et vīginti, *twenty-one*. In numbers above a hundred the larger comes first, with or without **et**.

Thousands are expressed by putting (1) the numeral adverbs bis, ter, &c., before mille : bis mille ; or (2) cardinal numbers before milia : duo milia. Milia is followed by a genitive : duo milia hominum, *two thousand men*.

ARABIC NUMERALS	ROMAN NUMERALS	CARDINALS; answering the question Quot? how many?	ORDINALS; answering the question Quotus? which in order of number?	DISTRIBUTIVES; answering the question Quotēni? how many each?	NUMERAL ADVERBS; answering the question Quotiens? how many times?
1		I unus	m. -ūs, f. -ū, n. -um.	m. -ī, f. -ae, n. -ā	sēmēl, once
2		II duo	primus (prior), first	singūli, one each	bīs, twice
3		III trēs	secundus (alter), second	terni, or trini, three each, &c.	tēr, three times, &c.
4	IIII or IV	quattuor	quartus	quāterni	quāter
5	V	quinque	quintus	quini	quinquens
6	VI	sex	sextus	seni	sexiens
7	VII	septem	septimus	septēni	septiens
8	VIII or IIX	octo	octāvus	octōni	octiens
9	VIII or IX	novem	nōnus	nōvēni	noviens
10	X	dēcem	decimus	dēni	deciens
11	XI	undēcim	undecimus	undeni	undēciens
12	XII	duodecim	duodecimus	duodeni	duodeciens
13	XIII	tredecim	tertius decimus	terni deni	tredeciens
14	XIIII or XIV	quattuordecim	quartus decimus	quaterni deni	quattuordeciens
15	XV	quindecim	quintus decimus	quini deni	quindeciens
16	XVI	sēdecim	sextus decimus	seni deni	sēdeciens
17	XVII	septemdecim	septimus decimus	septeni deni	septiesdeciens
18	XVIII or XIX	{ duodēviginti octodecim	duodēvicensimus	duodoviceni	duodeviciens
19	XVIII or XIX	{ undēviginti novendecim	undevicensimus	undeviceni	undeviciens
20	XX	viginti	vicensimus	vicēni	viciens
21	XXI	unus et viginti	unus et vicensimus	viceni singuli	semel et viciens
22	XXII	duo et viginti	alter et vicensimus	viceni bini	bis et viciens
28	XXVIII or XXIX	duodetrīginta	duodetrīgensimus	duodetriceni	duodētriciens
29	XXVIII or XXIX	undetrīginta	undetrīgensimus	undetriceni	undetriciens

30	XXX trīginta	trīgensimus	triceni	triciens
40	XXXX or XL quādrāginta	quādrāgensimus	quādrāgēni	quādrāgiens
50	L quinquāginta	quinquāgensimus	quinquāgēni	sexāgiens
60	LX sexāginta	sexāgensimus	sexāgēni	septuāgiens
70	LXX septuāginta	septuāgensimus	septuāgēni	octōgiens
80	LXXX or XXC octōginta	octōgensimus	octōgēni	nōāgiens
90	LXXX or XC nōāginta	nōāgensimus	nōāgēni	duodeceniens
98	XCIX or IIC octo et nonaginta	duodecentisimus	duodecenteni	undeceniens
99	XCIX or IC undēcentum	undecentisimus	undecenteni	centiens
100	C centum	centensimus	centēni	centiens semel
101	CI centum et unus	centisimus primus	centeni singuli	centiens vicies sexiens
126	CXXVI centum viginti sex	centisimus vicisimus sextus	centeni viceni senī	ducentiens
200	CC dūcentī, ae, a	ducentisimus	ducenti	trecentiens
300	CCC trēcenti	trecentisimus	trecenti	quadrāgentiens
400	CCCC quādringenti	quadrāgentisimus	quādringēni	quingentiens
500	Id or D quingenti	quingentisimus	seēni	sexcentiens
600	Ic sexcenti	sexcentisimus	secenteni	septingentiens
700	Iccc septingenti	septingentisimus	septingēni	octingentiens
800	Icccc octingenti	octingentisimus	octingēni	nongentiens
900	Iccccc nongenti, noning-	nongentisimus	nongeni	miliens
1,000	cl or M millī	milisimus	singula milia	bis miliens
2,000	clccId or MM duo milia	bis-milisimus	bina milia	quinquiens miliens
5,000	Icc quinque milia	quinquiens milisimus	quīna milia	deciens miliens
10,000	ccIdo decem milia	deciens milisimus	dēna milia	quinquāgiens miliens
50,000	Iccc quinquāginta milia	quinquāgiens milisimus	quinquāgēna milia	centiens miliens
100,000	ccclccc centum milia	centiens milisimus	centēna milia	quingentiens miliens
500,000	Iccccc quingenta milia	quingentiens milisimus	quingēna milia	deciens centena milia
1,000,000	cccclcccc centiens centum milia	deciens centiens milisimus	deciens centena milia	centiens centiens miliens

Note 1.—MULTIPLICATIVES, answering the question, *how many fold?* are: simplex, duplex, triplex, &c., centīplex, a *hundredfold* (formed with Stem **pluc-**, *fold*).

Note 2.—PROPORTIONALS, answering the question, *how many times as great?* are: simplex; duplus, *double*; triplus, *treble*; quadruplus, *quadruple*.

## PRONOUNS.

- 91 Pronouns either stand in the place of Substantives, or stand in the place of Adjectives, to define or point out Substantives.

There are three Persons :

First : The person speaking : *I* or *we*.

Second : The person spoken to : *thou* or *ye* (*you*).

Third : The person or thing spoken of : *he*, *she*, *it*, *they*.

Personal Pronouns stand only in place of Substantives. Possessive Pronouns, as *meus*, *my*, stand only for Adjectives. Most of the others can stand for Substantives or Adjectives.

92

## PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE.

## SINGULAR.

1st Person.	2nd Person.
Nom. <i>ĕgō</i> , <i>I</i> .	<i>tū</i> , <i>thou</i> (so also Voc.)
Acc. <i>mē</i> , <i>me</i> .	<i>tē</i> , <i>thee</i> .
Gen. <i>meī</i> , <i>of me</i> .	<i>tui</i> , <i>of thee</i> .
Dat. <i>mihī</i> , <i>to me</i> .	<i>tībī</i> , <i>to thee</i> .
Abl. <i>mē</i> , <i>from me</i> .	<i>tē</i> , <i>from thee</i> .

## PLURAL.

1st Person.	2nd Person.
Nom. <i>nōs</i> , <i>we</i> .	<i>vōs</i> , <i>ye</i> (so also Voc.)
Acc. <i>nōs</i> , <i>us</i> .	<i>vōs</i> , <i>you</i> .
Gen. { <i>nostrī</i> <i>nostrum</i> }, <i>of us</i> .	{ <i>vestrī</i> <i>vestrum</i> }, <i>of you</i> .
Dat. <i>nōbīs</i> , <i>to us</i> .	<i>vōbīs</i> , <i>to you</i> .
Abl. <i>nōbīs</i> , <i>from us</i> .	<i>vōbīs</i> , <i>from you</i> .

## Reflexive Pronoun.

Nom. —
Acc. <i>sē</i> or <i>sēsē</i> , <i>himself</i> , <i>herself</i> , <i>itself</i> , or <i>themselves</i> .
Gen. <i>suī</i> , <i>of himself</i> , &c.
Dat. <i>sībī</i> , <i>to himself</i> , &c.
Abl. <i>sē</i> or <i>sēsē</i> , <i>from himself</i> , &c.

For the Personal Pronoun of the 3rd Person, *he*, *she*, *it*. the Demonstrative *is*, *ea*, *id*, is used.

*Note*.—*Nostri*, *vestri*, are called Objective Genitives: *memor nostri*, *mindful of us* (264). *Nostrum*, *vestrum*, are called Partitive Genitives, because they are used after words which express a part: *unus nostrum*, *one of us* (259).

93 POSSESSIVE.

SING.	1st Person :	meŭs, meă,	meum, my.
	2nd Person :	tuŭs, tuă,	tuum, thy.
PLUR.	1st Person :	nostĕr, nostră,	nostrum, our.
	2nd Person :	vestĕr, vestră,	vestrum, your.

Suus, sua, suum, *his, her, its, their*, is the Possessive Pronoun of the Reflexive.

*Note.*—Meus, tuus, suus are declined like bonus : noster, vester, like niger. Meus has voc. sing. masc. mī. The other possessives, except noster, have no vocative.

94 DEMONSTRATIVE.

Is, *that*, or *he, she, it*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	īs	eă	īd	īī or eī	eae	eă
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	eă
<i>Gen.</i>	ējūs	ējūs	ējūs	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	eī	eī	īīs (eīs)	īīs (eīs)	īīs (eīs)
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō	īīs (eīs)	īīs (eīs)	īīs (eīs)

Hic, *this (near me)*, or *he, she, it*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	hīc	haec	hōc	hī	hae	haec
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
Gen.	hūjus	hūjus	hūjus	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

Ille, *that (yonder)*, or *he, she, it*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	illĕ	illă	illŭd	illī	illae	illă
<i>Acc.</i>	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illă
<i>Gen.</i>	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
<i>Abl.</i>	illō	illă	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

Istĕ, *that (near you)*, is declined like ille.

95

## DEFINITIVE.

Idem, *same*.

## SINGULAR.

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	īdem	eādem	īdem
Acc.	eundem	eandem	idem
Gen.	ējusdem	ējusdem	ējusdem
Dat.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem

## PLURAL.

Nom.	eīdem or īdem	eaedem	eādem
Acc.	eosdem	easdem	eadem
Gen.	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.		eīsdem or īsdem	
Abl.		eīsdem or īsdem	

Ipsē, *self*.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ipsē	ipsā	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsā
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsas	ipsā
Gen.	ipsīus	ipsīue	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

96

*Note.*—The suffixes -met, -te, -pte or -pse, -ce are added to some cases of pronouns for emphasis :

(a) met may be joined (1) to ego and its cases, except gen. plur. : egomet, *I myself*; (2) to the cases of tu, except nom. sing. : vosmet, *ye yourselves*; (3) to se and its cases, except sui : sibimet; (4) to the cases of suus : suamet facta.

(b) te is joined to tu : tute; also tutemet, *thou thyself*.

(c) pte is joined especially to the abl. sing. of the possessive pronouns : meopte consilio, *by my advice*.

(d) ce is joined to the demonstrative : hunce, hujusce.

For istece, illece, are written istic, illic :

	SING.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.		istic	istaec	istuc
Acc.		istunc	istanc	istuc
Gen.		istiusce	istiusce	istiusce
Abl.		istoc	istac	istoc

Idem (for is-dem), and ipse (for is-pse), are emphatic forms of is.



## 97 RELATIVE.

*Qui, who, which.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quōd	quī	quae	quae
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cūjūs	cūjūs	cūjūs	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui		quībūs or quīs	
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō		quībūs or quīs	

## 98 INTERROGATIVE.

*Quis, who ? what ?*

	M.	F.	N.		M.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	{ quīs	(quīs)	quīd	<i>Acc.</i>	{ quem	quīd
	{ quī	quae	quōd		{ quem	quōd

In all other Cases singular and plural *qui* Interrogative is like the Relative.

## 99 INDEFINITE.

*Quis, anyone or anything.*

	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	{ quīs	quā	quīd	<i>Acc.</i>	{ quem	quam	quīd
	{ quī	quae	quōd		{ quem	quam	quōd

In the other Cases singular and plural the Indefinite is like the Relative, except that *quā* or *quae* may be used in neut. nom. and acc. plural.

**Quis**, both Interrogative and Indefinite, and its compounds, are used **chiefly** as Substantives; **qui** and its compounds **chiefly** as Adjectives.

**Quid** and its compounds are used **only** as Substantives; **quod** and its compounds **only** as Adjectives.

## EXAMPLES :

Homo qui venit,	<i>The man who comes.</i>	(qui, relative.)
Quis venit ?	<i>Who comes ?</i>	(quis, interrogative.)
Qui homo venit ?	<i>What man comes ?</i>	(qui, interrogative.)
Aliquid amari,	<i>Some bitterness,</i>	
Aliquod verbum,	<i>Some word,</i>	

## 100

## COMPOUND PRONOUNS.

MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	
quicumquē, quaecumquē,		quodcumquē,	{ whosoever, or whatsoever.
quisquīs, quisquīs,		quidquīd or quicquīd,	
quīdam, quaedam,		quiddam (quoddam),	{ a certain per- son or thing.
āliquīs, āliquā,		āliquid,	
aliquī, aliquā,		aliquid,	{ someone or something.
quispiam, quaepiam,		quippiam (quodpiam),	
quīvīs, quaevis,		quidvis (quodvis),	{ anyone you like.
quīlibēt, quaelibēt,		quidlibēt (quodlibēt),	
quisquam	—	quidquam or quicquam,	{ anyone at all.
quisquē, quaequē,		quidquē (quodque),	
ūterquē, utraquē,		utrumquē,	{ each one severally. each of two.
ūnusquisquē, ūnāquaequē,		ūnumquiquē (unumquodquē),	
ecquis, ecquā,		ecquid (ecquod),	{ Is there any who?
quisnam, quaenam,		quidnam (quodnam)	

*Note 1.*—Quisquis is found only in nom. acc. and abl.

*Note 2.*—Quisquam is used as a substantive, sing. only, chiefly in negative sentences and the adjective which corresponds to it is ullus: haud quisquam, *not anyone*.

*Note 3.*—In the Compound Pronouns qui, quis, and uter follow their own declension in the oblique cases; the prefix or suffix is unaltered: alicujus, cujusque, cuivis, utroque, quamlibet. In unus-quisque both unus and quisque are declined.

- 101 The following Pronominal Adjectives form the Gen. Sing. in -ius and the Dat. Sing. in -ī like ille: *alius*, *other, another*; *ullus*, *any*; *nullus*, *none*; *sōlus*, *sole*; *tōtus*, *whole*; *ūter*, *which of two*; *alter*, *one of two, the other*; *neuter*, *neither*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	āliūs	āliā	āliūd	āliī	āliae	āliā
<i>Acc.</i>	aliūm	aliām	aliūd	aliōs	aliās	alia
<i>Gen.</i>	aliūs	aliūs	aliūs	aliōrum	aliārum	aliērum
<i>Dat.</i>	aliī	aliī	aliī	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs
<i>Abl.</i>	aliō	aliā	aliō	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs

*Note.*—In *alius* the *i* of the Gen. Sing. is always long. In the Gen. of words declined like it the quantity of the *i* is doubtful; also in the Gen. of *uter*, *neuter*.

Like *alius*, but with Neuter Singular in -um, are declined *ullus*, *nullus*, *sōlus*, *tōtus*.

	SINGULAR.		
	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	altēr	altērā	altērum
<i>Acc.</i>	altērum	altēram	altērum
<i>Gen.</i>	alteriūs	alteriūs	alteriūs
<i>Dat.</i>	alterī	alterī	alterī
<i>Abl.</i>	alterō	alterā	alterō

	PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	altērī	altērae	altērā
<i>Acc.</i>	alterōs	alterās	altērā
<i>Gen.</i>	alterōrum	alterārum	alterōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	alterīs	alterīs	alterīs
<i>Abl.</i>	alterīs	alterīs	alterīs

Like *alter*, but casting out *e* before *r* in all cases except the Nom. Sing. Masculine, are declined,—

*ūter*, *utra*, *utrum*, *which (of two)*; *neuter*, *neutra*, *neutrum*, *neither*. These are seldom used in the plural.

*Note 1.*—*Uter* forms compounds by taking nearly all the same suffixes as *quis* and *qui*: *utercumque*, *whichever of two*; *ūtervis*, *ūterlibēt*. *Alterūter*, *one or the other*, is usually declined only as *uter*, but sometimes both parts are declined.

*Note 2.*—The genitive and ablative singular of *nullus* are used for the genitive and ablative of the substantive *nemo*, *nobody*, which are very rarely found.

## TABLE OF CORRELATIVE

<i>Interrogative.</i>	<i>Demonstrative.</i>	<i>Relative.</i>	<i>Indefinite (1).</i>
quis, qui, <i>who?</i> <i>which?</i>	is, <i>that.</i>	qui, <i>who, which.</i>	(si) quis, <i>if any</i> <i>one.</i>
uter, <i>which</i> of <i>two?</i>	alter, <i>one of two,</i> <i>other of two.</i>		
quālis, of <i>what</i> <i>kind?</i>	tālis, <i>of such kind.</i>	qualis, <i>as.</i>	
quantus, <i>how</i> <i>great?</i>	tantus, <i>so great.</i>	quantus, <i>as</i> <i>(great).</i>	
quot, <i>how many?</i>	tot, <i>so many.</i>	quot, <i>as (many).</i>	
ubi, <i>where?</i>	ibi, <i>there.</i>	ubi, <i>where.</i>	si(cubi), <i>if any-</i> <i>where.</i>
unde, <i>whence?</i>	inde, <i>thence.</i>	unde, <i>whence.</i>	si(cunde), <i>if from</i> <i>any quarter.</i>
quo, <i>whither?</i>	eo, <i>thither.</i>	quo, <i>whither.</i>	(si) quo, <i>if any-</i> <i>whither.</i>
quā, <i>by what</i> <i>way?</i>	eā, <i>by that way.</i>	quā, <i>by what</i> <i>way.</i>	(si) quā, <i>if by any</i> <i>way.</i>
quam. <i>how?</i>	tam, <i>so.</i>	quam, <i>as.</i>	
quando, <i>when?</i>	tum, <i>then.</i>	{ quando, <i>when.</i> ubi, <i>when.</i> cum, <i>when.</i>	(si) quando, <i>if</i> <i>ever.</i>
quotiens, <i>how</i> <i>often?</i>	totiens, <i>so often.</i>	quotiens, <i>as (of-</i> <i>ten).</i>	

## PRONOUNS AND ADVERBS.

<i>Indefinite (2).</i>	<i>Distributive.</i>	<i>Universal Relative.</i>
aliquis, <i>some one.</i>	quisque, <i>each.</i>	quicumque, <i>whoever,</i> <i>whatever.</i>
alteruter, <i>one or other</i> <i>of two.</i>	uterque, <i>each of two.</i>	utercumque, <i>whichever</i> <i>of two.</i>
		qualiscumque, <i>of what</i> <i>kind soever.</i>
aliquantus, <i>some (in</i> <i>quantity).</i>		quantuscumque, <i>however</i> <i>great.</i>
aliquot, <i>some (in num-</i> <i>ber).</i>		quotcumque, <i>however</i> <i>many.</i>
alicubi, <i>somewhere.</i>	ubique, <i>everywhere.</i>	ubicumque, <i>whereso-</i> <i>ever.</i>
alicunde, <i>from some</i> <i>quarter.</i>	undique, <i>from every</i> <i>side.</i>	undecumque, <i>whenceso-</i> <i>ever.</i>
aliquo, <i>somewhither.</i>		quocumque, <i>whitherso-</i> <i>ever.</i>
aliquā, <i>by some way.</i>		quācumque, <i>by whatso-</i> <i>ever way.</i>
		quandocumque, <i>whenso-</i> <i>ever.</i>
aliquotiens, <i>at some (va-</i> <i>rious) times.</i>		quotienscumque, <i>however</i> <i>often.</i>

## VERBS.

## 103 The Verb has :

The **Three Persons**—First, Second, Third.The **Two Numbers**—Singular and Plural.**Six Tenses :**

(1) Present, (2) Future Simple, (3) Past Imperfect, (4) Perfect or Aorist, (5) Future Perfect, (6) Pluperfect.	} The Verb Finite.
--	--------------------

**Three Moods :**

(1) Indicative, (2) Imperative, (3) Con-junctive.	}
---	---

The **Infinitive** (Verbal Substantive).**Three Participles** (Verbal Adjectives).

The <b>Gerund</b> and <b>Gerundive</b> (Verbal Substantive and Adjective).	} The Verb Infinite.
--	----------------------

**Two Supines** (Verbal Substantives).**Two Voices :**

(1) Active, (2) Passive.

The Verb Finite is so called because it is limited by Mood and Persons ; while the Verb Infinite is not so limited.

## 104

## PERSON AND NUMBER.

In English, Pronouns are used with Verbs to express the three Persons Singular and Plural : *I am, We are*. But in Latin the Pronouns are expressed by the personal suffixes.

su-m, <i>I am, am-o, I love.</i>	su-mus, <i>we are.</i>
e-s, <i>thou art (you are).</i>	es-tis, <i>ye are.</i>
es-t, <i>he (she, it) is.</i>	su-nt, <i>they are.</i>



TABLE OF PERSONAL ENDINGS IN THE INDICATIVE AND CONJUNCTIVE MOODS.

		ACTIVE VOICE.	PASSIVE VOICE.
Singular	1	-m or -ō	-r
	2	-s	-rīs or -rē
	3	-t	-tūr
Plural	1	-mūs	-mūr
	2	-tīs	-mīnī
	3	-nt	-ntūr

The Imperative Mood has only the Second and Third Person Singular and Plural, not the First.

## 105

## TENSES.

**Tenses** express the time of the action or state denoted by the Verb, as being :

- (1) Present, Past, or Future ;
- (2) Complete or Incomplete ;
- (3) Momentary or Continuous.

In English, by means of auxiliary Verbs, differences of time can be more accurately expressed than in Latin ; so that one tense in Latin may correspond to two tenses in English, of which one is momentary, the other continuous. Thus, *rogo*, *I ask*, has the following tenses :

Present	Present	<i>incomplete</i>	<i>rogo</i>	<i>I ask</i> <i>I am asking</i>
	Perfect	<i>complete</i>	<i>rogavi</i>	<i>I have asked</i> <i>I have been asking</i>
Future	Fut. Simple	<i>incomplete</i>	<i>rogabo</i>	<i>I shall ask</i> <i>I shall be asking</i>
	Fut. Perf.	<i>complete</i>	<i>rogavero</i>	<i>I shall have asked</i> <i>I shall have been asking</i>
Past	Perfect	<i>incomplete</i>	<i>rogavi</i>	<i>I asked</i>
	Imperf.		<i>rogabam</i>	<i>I was asking</i>
	Pluperf.	<i>complete</i>	<i>rogaveram</i>	<i>I had asked</i> <i>I had been asking</i>

*Note.*—Latin has no separate tenses corresponding to the Greek Aorist and Perfect ; therefore the Perfect has to fill the place of two Tenses : the Aorist, *I loved*, and the Perfect, *I have loved*.

The Present, the Future Simple, and the Future Perfect are called **Primary** Tenses.

The Imperfect and the Pluperfect are called **Historic** Tenses.

The Perfect in the sense of *I have loved* is **Primary**; in the sense of *I loved* it is **Historic**.

## 106

## MOOD.

**Moods** are the forms in which the idea contained in the Verb is presented.

The **Indicative** is the mood which states a fact: *amo, I love*.

The **Imperative** is the mood of command: *amā, love thou*.

*Note.*—The forms of the Imperative in **-to, -tote**, are emphatic, and were used anciently in laws.

The **Conjunctive** is the mood which represents something as thought of or as dependent: *ut amem, that I may love*; *si amarem, if I were to love*.

*Note.*—In the Paradigms the tenses of the Conjunctive are given without any English translation, because their meaning varies so much according to the context that it is impossible to convey it by any one rendering.

107

## THE VERB INFINITIVE.

The **Infinitive** is a Verb Noun expressing action or state in general, without limit of person or number : *amāre, to love*.

The **Gerund** is a Verbal Substantive declined like neuters of the Second Declension. It supplies Cases to the Infinitive : as *amandi, of loving*.

The **Gerundive** is a Participle, or Verbal Adjective : *amandus, a, um, meet to be loved*.

The **Supines** are Cases of a Verbal Substantive : *amātum, in order to love* ; *amātu, for or in loving*.

The **Participles** are so called because they have partly the properties of Verbs and partly those of Adjectives ; there are three besides the Gerundive :

- |                 |                  |                      |                                  |
|-----------------|------------------|----------------------|----------------------------------|
| (a) Act. Pres.  | <i>amans,</i>    | <i>loving</i>        | (declined like <i>ingens</i> ).  |
| (b) Act. Fut.   | <i>amatūrus,</i> | <i>about to love</i> | } (declined like <i>bonus</i> ). |
| (c) Pass. Perf. | <i>amātus,</i>   | <i>loved</i>         |                                  |

*Note.*—The three Participles wanting are : (a) Active Perfect, (b) Passive Present, (c) Passive Future.

108

## VOICE.

The **Active Voice** expresses what the Subject of a Verb is or does :

*sum, I am* ; *valeo, I am well* ; *amō, I love* ; *regō, I rule*.

The **Passive Voice** expresses what is done to the Subject of the Verb :

*amor, I am loved* ; *regor, I am ruled*.

**109 Deponent Verbs** are Verbs which have chiefly the forms of the Passive Voice with the meaning of the Active Voice.

**110 Verbs in the Active Voice and Deponent Verbs are,**

- (a) Transitive (*transire, pass over*), acting on an object :  
*amo eum, I love him* ; *hortor vōs, I exhort you*.
- (b) Intransitive, not acting on an object : *stō, I stand* ;  
*loquor, I speak*.

Only Transitive Verbs have the full Passive Voice.

## 111

## THE CONJUGATIONS.

Verbs are generally arranged according to the Character of the Present Stem in four Conjugations.

The Character is most clearly seen before the suffix *-re* (or *-ĕre*) of the Infinitive Present Active. It is either one of the vowels *a, e, i, u*, or a **Consonant**.

First Conjugation, **A- Stems**.

Second Conjugation, **E- Stems**.

Third Conjugation, **Consonant and U- Stems**.

Fourth Conjugation, **I- Stems**.

Deponent Verbs are also divided into four Conjugations with the same Stem endings.

## 112

The following forms must be known in order to give the full Conjugation.

A- Stems.	E- Stems.	Consonant and U- Stems.	I- Stems.
-----------	-----------	----------------------------	-----------

**Active Voice.**

1 Pers. Pres. Indic.	āmo	mōneo	rēgo	audio
Infin. Pres.	amāre	monēre	regere	audire
Perfect.	amāvī	monuī	rexī	audīvī
Supine in -um.	amātum	monitum	rectum	auditum

**Passive Voice.**

1 Pers. Pres. Indic.	amor	moneor	regor	audior
Infin. Pres.	amārī	monērī	regī	audīrī
Partic. Perf.	amātus	monitus	rectus	auditus
Gerundive	amandus	monendus	regendus	audiendus

113 In the Perfects **-āvi**, **-ēvi**, **-ōvi**, **v** sometimes drops out before **-is** or **-er**, and contraction follows: **amāvisti** becomes **amasti**, **amāvērunt amārunt**, **amavissem amassem**. In I- Stems there is no contraction: **audīvi** becomes **audīi**, **audīvērunt audiērunt**. (See 14.)

For **-ērunt** (3rd pers. pl. Perf. Act.), **-ēre** is often written: **amavēre**, **implēvēre**, **audīvēre**; but these forms are not contracted.

The 2nd pers. sing. in the Passive ends in **-ris** or **-re**: **amābāris**, **amābāre**; but in Pres. Indic. the ending in **-re** is rare.

*Note.*—An old form in **-ier** of the Pres. Infin. Passive is sometimes found in poetry: **amārier** for **amāri**.

Poets sometimes use old forms in the Future of I- Stems; as **audibo**, **audibor**, for **audiam**, **audiar**.

The Gerundive sometimes ends in **-undus** in Consonant and I- Stems.

## 114 PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

The Active Future Participle and the Gerundive may be used with all the Tenses of the Verb **sum**:

<b>amaturus</b> , -a <b>sum</b> ,	<i>I am about to love.</i>
<b>amaturus</b> , -a <b>es</b> ,	<i>thou art about to love.</i>
<b>amaturus</b> , -a <b>est</b> ,	<i>he (she) is about to love.</i>
<b>amaturi</b> , -ae <b>sumus</b> ,	<i>we are about to love.</i>
etc.	
<b>amandus</b> , -a <b>sum</b> ,	<i>I am meet to be loved.</i>
etc.	

In the same way the Participle **futurus** may be used with the tenses of **sum**: **futurus sum**, *I am about to be*.

The Active Future Participle with **fuisse** forms an Imperfect Future Infinitive, which is only used conditionally: **amaturus fuisse**, *to have been about to love*.

This verb is formed from two roots, **ēs**, *to be*, and **rū**, *to be* or the Perfect and Participial Stems from the root **rū**. In the tense forms

TENSE.	INDICATIVE.
Present.	sum, <i>I am.</i> ēs, <i>thou art.</i> est, <i>he is.</i> sūmūs, <i>we are.</i> estis, <i>ye are.</i> sunt, <i>they are.</i>
Future Simple.	ěro, <i>I shall be.</i> eris, <i>thou wilt be.</i> erit, <i>he will be.</i> erimūs, <i>we shall be.</i> eritis, <i>ye will be.</i> erunt, <i>they will be.</i>
Imperfect.	eram, <i>I was.</i> erās, <i>thou wast.</i> erāt, <i>he was.</i> erāmūs, <i>we were.</i> erātis, <i>ye were.</i> erant, <i>they were.</i>
Perfect.	fuī, <i>I have been or I was.</i> fuistī, <i>thou hast been or thou wast.</i> fuit, <i>he has been or he was.</i> fuimūs, <i>we have been or we were.</i> fuistis, <i>ye have been or ye were.</i> fuerunt, <i>they have been or they were.</i>
Future Perfect.	fuěro, <i>I shall have been.</i> fuěris, <i>thou wilt have been.</i> fuěrit, <i>he will have been.</i> fuěrimūs, <i>we shall have been.</i> fuěritis, <i>ye will have been.</i> fuěrint, <i>they will have been.</i>
Pluperfect.	fuěram, <i>I had been.</i> fuěrās, <i>thou hadst been.</i> fuěrāt, <i>he had been.</i> fuěrāmūs, <i>we had been.</i> fuěrātis, <i>ye had been.</i> fuěrant, <i>they had been.</i>

\* Before the regular Verbs it is necessary to conjugate the as an auxiliary in the conjugation of other Verbs.



(sum, fui, esse, futurus).

*become.* The Present Stem is formed from the root **ēs-**.

**es-** sometimes drops **e**: sum, sumus; sometimes **s** changes to **r**: eram.

CONJUNCTIVE.	IMPERATIVE.
sim sis sit simūs sitīs sint	ēs, estō, <i>be thou.</i> estō, <i>let him be.</i>  estē, estōtē, <i>be ye.</i> suntō, <i>let them be.</i>
	THE VERB INFINITE. Infinitives. Present } Imperf. } <i>essē, to be.</i> Perfect } Pluperf. } <i>fuissē, to have been.</i> Future { <i>fūtūrūs essē</i> } <i>to be about to be.</i> <i>forē</i>
essem or <i>fōrem</i> essēs or <i>fōrēs</i> essēt or <i>fōrēt</i> essēmūs essētīs essent or <i>fōrent</i>	Participles. Present (none). Future <i>fūtūrūs, about to be.</i>
fuērīm fuērīs fuērīt fuērīmūs fuērītīs fuērīnt	Gerunds and Supines. (None.)
	Note.—There is no present participle of sum. It is only seen in the compounds, ab-sens, prae-sens.
fuissem fuissēs fuissēt fuissēmūs fuissētīs fuissent	Like Sum are conjugated its compounds: absum, <i>am absent</i> ; adsum, <i>am present</i> ; dēsum, <i>am wanting</i> ; insum, <i>am in or among</i> ; intersum, <i>am among</i> ; obsum, <i>hinder</i> ; praesum, <i>am set over</i> ; prōsum, <i>am of use</i> ; subsum, <i>am under</i> ; supersum, <i>survive</i> . In prōsum the final <b>d</b> of the old preposition is kept before <b>e</b> : prodes.

irregular Verb of Being, sum, *I am*, esse, *to be*, because it is used

## FIRST CONJUGATION

## ACTIVE

TENSE.	INDICATIVE.
Present	<p> amō,  amās,  amāt,  amāmūs,  amātis,  amant, </p> <p> <i>I love or am loving.  thou lovest or art loving.  he loves or is loving.  we love or are loving.  ye love or are loving.  they love or are loving.</i> </p>
Future Simple.	<p> amābo,  amābis,  amābit,  amābimūs,  amābitis,  amābunt, </p> <p> <i>I shall love.  thou wilt love.  he will love.  we shall love.  ye will love.  they will love.</i> </p>
Imperfect.	<p> amābam,  amābās,  amābāt,  amābāmūs,  amābātis,  amābant, </p> <p> <i>I was loving or I loved.  thou wast loving or thou lovedst.  he was loving or he loved.  we were loving or we loved.  ye were loving or ye loved.  they were loving or they loved.</i> </p>
Perfect.	<p> amāvī,  amāvisti,  amāvit,  amāvimūs,  amāvistis,  amāverunt, </p> <p> <i>I have loved or I loved.  thou hast loved or thou lovedst.  he has loved or he loved.  we have loved or we loved.  ye have loved or ye loved.  they have loved or they loved.</i> </p>
Future Perfect.	<p> amāverō,  amāveris,  amāverit,  amāverimūs,  amāveritis,  amāverint, </p> <p> <i>I shall have loved.  thou wilt have loved.  he will have loved.  we shall have loved.  ye will have loved.  they will have loved.</i> </p>
Pluperfect.	<p> amāveram,  amāverās,  amāverāt,  amāverāmūs,  amāverātis,  amāverant. </p> <p> <i>I had loved.  thou hadst loved.  he had loved.  we had loved.  ye had loved.  they had loved.</i> </p>

## A- STEMS.

## VOICE.

CONJUNCTIVE.	IMPERATIVE.
amem amēs amēt amēmūs amētīs ament	amā, amātō, <i>love thou.</i> amātō, <i>let him love.</i>  amātě, amātōtě, <i>love ye.</i> amantō, <i>let them love.</i>
	THE VERB INFINITE.
	Infinitives.
amārem amārēs amārēt amārēmūs amārētīs amārent	Present } amārě, <i>to love.</i> Imperf. }  Perfect } amāvissě, <i>to have loved.</i> Pluperf. }
	Future amātūrūs essě, <i>to be about to love.</i>
amāvėrim amāvėris amāvėrīt amāvėrimūs amāvėrītīs amāvėrint	Gerunds.
	Nom. Acc. amandum, <i>the loving.</i> Gen. amandī, <i>of loving.</i> Dat. Abl. amando, <i>for or by loving.</i>
	Supines.
	amātum, <i>in order to love.</i> amātū, <i>in or for loving.</i>
amāvissem amāvissēs amāvissēt amāvissēmūs amāvissētīs amāvissent	Participles.
	Pres. amans, <i>loving.</i> Fut. amātūrūs, <i>about to love.</i>

TENSE.	INDICATIVE.	
Present.	mōneō, monēs, monēt, monēmūs, monētis, monent,	<i>I advise or am advising.          thou advisest or art advising.          he advises or is advising.          we advise or are advising.          ye advise or are advising.          they advise or are advising.</i>
Future Simple.	monēbō, monēbīs, monēbīt, monēbīmūs, monēbītis, monēbunt,	<i>I shall advise.          thou wilt advise.          he will advise.          we shall advise.          ye will advise.          they will advise.</i>
Imperfect.	monēbam, monēbās, monēbāt, monēbāmūs, monēbātis, monēbant,	<i>I was advising or I advised.          thou wast advising or thou advisedst.          he was advising or he advised.          we were advising or we advised.          ye were advising or ye advised.          they were advising or they advised.</i>
Perfect.	monuī, monuistī, monuīt, monuīmūs, monuistīs, monuērunt,	<i>I have advised or I advised.          thou hast advised or thou advisedst.          he has advised or he advised.          we have advised or we advised.          ye have advised or ye advised.          they have advised or they advised.</i>
Future Perfect.	monuēro, monuēris, monuērit, monuērimūs, monuēritīs, monuērint,	<i>I shall have advised.          thou wilt have advised.          he will have advised.          we shall have advised.          ye will have advised.          they will have advised.</i>
Pluperfect.	monuēram, monuērās, monuērāt, monuērāmūs, monuērātīs, monuērant,	<i>I had advised.          thou hadst advised.          he had advised.          we had advised.          ye had advised.          they had advised.</i>

## E- STEMS.

## VOICE.

CONJUNCTIVE.	IMPERATIVE.
moneam moneās moneāt moneāmūs moneātīs moneant	monē, <i>monētō, advise thou.</i> monētō, <i>let him advise.</i> monētē, <i>monētōtē, advise ye.</i> monentō, <i>let them advise.</i>
	<p style="text-align: center;">THE VERB INFINITIVE.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Infinitives.</p>
monērem monērēs monērēt monērēmūs monērētīs monērent	Present } <i>monērē, to advise.</i> Imperf. } Perfect } <i>monuissē, to have advised.</i> Pluperf. }
monuērim monuēris monuērit monuērimūs monuēritīs monuērint	Future <i>monītūrūs essē, to be about to advise.</i> <p style="text-align: center;">Gerunds.</p> Nom. Acc. <i>monendum, the advising.</i> Gen. <i>monendī, of advising.</i> Dat. Abl. <i>monendō, for or by advising.</i>
	<p style="text-align: center;">Supines.</p> <i>monītum, in order to advise.</i> <i>monītū, in or for advising.</i>
monuissēm monuissēs monuissēt monuissēmūs monuissētīs monuissent	<p style="text-align: center;">Participles.</p> Pres. <i>monens, advising.</i> Fut. <i>monītūrūs, about to advise.</i>

TENSE.	INDICATIVE.
Present.	<p>rēgō regis, regit, regimūs, regītis, regunt,</p> <p><i>I rule or am ruling. thou rulest or art ruling. he rules or is ruling. we rule or are ruling. ye rule or are ruling. they rule or are ruling.</i></p>
Future Simple.	<p>regam, regēs, regēt, regēmūs, regētis, regent,</p> <p><i>I shall rule. thou wilt rule. he will rule. we shall rule. ye will rule. they will rule.</i></p>
Imperfect.	<p>regēbam, regēbās, regēbāt, regēbāmūs, regēbātis, regēbant,</p> <p><i>I was ruling or I ruled. thou wast ruling or thou ruledst. he was ruling or he ruled. we were ruling or we ruled. ye were ruling or ye ruled. they were ruling or they ruled.</i></p>
Perfect.	<p>rēxī, rexistī, rexīt, reximūs, rexistis, rexērunt,</p> <p><i>I have ruled or I ruled. thou hast ruled or thou ruledst. he has ruled or he ruled. we have ruled or we ruled. ye have ruled or ye ruled. they have ruled or they ruled.</i></p>
Future Perfect.	<p>rexēro, rexēris, rexērīt, rexērīmūs, rexērītis, rexērint,</p> <p><i>I shall have ruled. thou wilt have ruled. he will have ruled. we shall have ruled. ye will have ruled. they will have ruled.</i></p>
Pluperfect.	<p>rexeram, rexerās, rexerāt, rexerāmūs, rexerātis, rexerant,</p> <p><i>I had ruled. thou hadst ruled. he had ruled. we had ruled. ye had ruled. they had ruled.</i></p>

*Note.*—Facio, dico, duco, and the compounds of duco, in the 2nd person



## CONSONANT STEMS.

## VOICE.

CONJUNCTIVE.	IMPERATIVE.
regam regās regāt regāmūs regātis regant	regē, regītō, <i>rule thou.</i> regītō, <i>let him rule.</i> regītē, regītōtē, <i>rule ye.</i> reguntō, <i>let them rule.</i>
regērem regērēs regērēt regērēmūs regērētis regērent	THE VERB INFINITE. Infinitives. Present } regērē, <i>to rule.</i> Imperf. } Perfect } rexissē, <i>to have ruled.</i> Pluperf. } Future rectūrūs essē, <i>to be about to rule.</i>
rexērim rexērīs rexērīt rexērīmūs rexērītis rexerint	Gerunds. Nom. Acc. regendum, <i>the ruling.</i> Gen. regendī, <i>of ruling.</i> Dat. Abl. regendō, <i>for or by ruling.</i>
	Supines. rectum, <i>in order to rule.</i> rectū, <i>in or for ruling.</i>
rexissem rexissēs rexissēt rexissēmūs rexissētis rexissent	Participles. Present regens, <i>ruling.</i> Future rectūrūs, <i>about to rule.</i>

of the Pres. Imperative make fāc, dic, dūc, &c.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION

## ACTIVE

TENSE.	INDICATIVE.	
Present.	audiō, audīs, audīt, audimūs, audītis, audiunt,	<i>I hear or am hearing. thou hearest or art hearing. he hears or is hearing. we hear or are hearing. ye hear or are hearing. they hear or are hearing.</i>
Future Simple.	audiam, audies, audiet, audiemūs, audietis, audient,	<i>I shall hear thou wilt hear. he will hear. we shall hear. ye will hear. they will hear.</i>
Imperfect.	audiebam, audiebās, audiebāt, audiebāmūs, audiebātis, audiebant,	<i>I was hearing or I heard. thou wast hearing or heardest. he was hearing or he heard. we were hearing or we heard. ye were hearing or ye heard. they were hearing or they heard.</i>
Perfect.	audivī, audivistī, audivīt, audivimūs, audivistis, audivērunt,	<i>I have heard or I heard. thou hast heard or thou heardest. he has heard or he heard. we have heard or we heard. ye have heard or ye heard. they have heard or they heard.</i>
Future Perfect.	audivēro, audivēris, audivērīt, audivērimūs, audivērītis, audivērint,	<i>I shall have heard. thou wilt have heard. he will have heard. we shall have heard. ye will have heard. they will have heard.</i>
Pluperfect.	audivēram, audivērās, audivērāt, audivērāmūs, audivērātis, audivērant,	<i>I had heard. thou hadst heard. he had heard. we had heard. ye had heard. they had heard.</i>

I. STEMS.

VOICE.

CONJUNCTIVE.	IMPERATIVE.
audiā audiās audiāt audiāmūs audiātīs audiant	audi, auditō, <i>hear thou.</i> auditō, <i>let him hear.</i> auditē, auditōtē, <i>hear ye.</i> audiuntō, <i>let them hear.</i>
	<p>THE VERB INFINITE.</p> <p>Infinitives.</p> Present } Imperf. } <i>audire, to hear.</i> Perfect } Pluperf. } <i>audivissē, to have heard.</i> Future <i>auditūrus essē, to be about to hear.</i>
audīrem audirēs audirēt audirēmūs audirētīs audirent	<p>Gerunds.</p> Nom. Acc. <i>audiendum, the hearing.</i> Gen. <i>audiendī, of hearing.</i> Dat. Abl. <i>audiendō, for or by hearing.</i>
audivērim audivēris audivērit audivērimūs audivēritīs audivērint	<p>Supines.</p> auditum, <i>in order to hear.</i> auditū, <i>in or for hearing.</i>
audivissem audivissēs audivissēt audivissēmūs audivissētīs audivissent	<p>Participles.</p> Present <i>cudiens, hearing.</i> Future <i>auditūrus, about to hear.</i>

## FIRST CONJUGATION

## PASSIVE

TENSE.	INDICATIVE.
Present.	<p>ămor, amăris, amătŭr, amămŭr, amămĭnĭ, amantŭr,</p> <p><i>I am or I am being loved. thou art or thou art being loved. he is or he is being loved. we are or we are being loved. ye are or ye are being loved. they are or they are being loved.</i></p>
Future Simple.	<p>amăbŏr, amăbĕris, amăbĭtŭr, amăbĭmŭr, amăbĭmĭnĭ, amăbuntŭr,</p> <p><i>I shall be loved. thou wilt be loved. he will be loved. we shall be loved. ye will be loved. they will be loved.</i></p>
Imperfect.	<p>amăbăr, amăbăris, amăbătŭr, amăbămŭr, amăbămĭnĭ, amăbantŭr,</p> <p><i>I was being or I was loved. thou wast being or thou wast loved. he was being or he was loved. we were being or we were loved. ye were being or ye were loved. they were being or they were loved.</i></p>
Perfect.	<p>amătŭs sum, amătŭs ęs, amătŭs est, amătĭ sŭmŭs, amătĭ estĭs, amătĭ sunt,</p> <p><i>I have been or I was loved. thou hast been or thou wast loved. he has been or he was loved. we have been or we were loved. ye have been or ye were loved. they have been or they were loved.</i></p>
Future Perfect.	<p>amătŭs ęrŏ, amătŭs ęris, amătŭs ęrit, amătĭ ęrimŭs, amătĭ ęritĭs, amătĭ ęrunt,</p> <p><i>I shall have been loved. thou wilt have been loved. he will have been loved. we shall have been loved. ye will have been loved. they will have been loved.</i></p>
Pluperfect.	<p>amătŭs ęram, amătŭs ęrăs, amătŭs ęrăt, amătĭ ęrămŭs, amătĭ ęrătĭs, amătĭ ęrant,</p> <p><i>I had been loved. thou hadst been loved. he had been loved. we had been loved. ye had been loved. they had been loved.</i></p>

## A- STEMS.

## VOICE.

## CONJUNCTIVE.

amēr  
amērīs  
amētūr  
amēmūr  
amēmīnī  
amentūr

amārēr  
amārērīs  
amārētūr  
amārēmūr  
amārēmīnī  
amārentūr

amātūs sim  
amātūs sis  
amātūs sīt  
amāti simus  
amāti sitis  
amāti sint

amātūs essem  
amātūs essēs  
amātūs essēt  
amāti essēmūs  
amāti essētīs  
amāti essent

## IMPERATIVE.

amārē, amātōr, *be thou loved.*  
amātōr, *let him be loved.*

amāmīnī, *be ye loved.*  
amantōr, *let them be loved.*

## THE VERB INFINITE.

## Infinitives.

Present } amārī, *to be loved.*  
Imperf. }  
Perfect } amātūs essē, *to have been loved.*  
Pluperf. }  
Future amātum irī. (See 387).

## Participle.

Perfect amātūs, *loved, or having been loved.*

## Gerundive.

amandūs, *meet to be loved.*

## SECOND CONJUGATION

## PASSIVE

TENSE.	INDICATIVE.
Present.	<p>mōnēōr, <i>I am or I am being advised.</i>  monēris, <i>thou art or thou art being advised.</i>  monētūr, <i>he is or he is being advised.</i>  monēmūr, <i>we are or we are being advised.</i>  monēmīni, <i>ye are or ye are being advised.</i>  monentūr, <i>they are or they are being advised.</i></p>
Future Simple.	<p>monēbōr, <i>I shall be advised.</i>  monēberis, <i>thou wilt be advised.</i>  monēbītūr, <i>he will be advised.</i>  monēbīmūr, <i>we shall be advised.</i>  monēbīmīni, <i>ye will be advised.</i>  monēbuntūr, <i>they will be advised.</i></p>
Imperf.	<p>monēbār, <i>I was being or I was advised.</i>  monēbāris, <i>thou wast being or thou wast advised.</i>  monēbātūr, <i>he was being or he was advised.</i>  monēbāmūr, <i>we were being or we were advised.</i>  monēbāmīni, <i>ye were being or ye were advised.</i>  monēbantūr, <i>they were being or they were advised.</i></p>
Perfect.	<p>monītūs sum, <i>I have been or I was advised.</i>  monītūs es, <i>thou hast been or thou wast advised.</i>  monītūs est, <i>he has been or he was advised.</i>  monītī sūmūs, <i>we have been or we were advised.</i>  monītī estīs, <i>ye have been or ye were advised.</i>  monītī sunt, <i>they have been or they were advised.</i></p>
Future Perfect.	<p>monītūs ērō, <i>I shall have been advised.</i>  monītūs ēris, <i>thou wilt have been advised.</i>  monītūs ērit, <i>he will have been advised.</i>  monītī ērimūs, <i>we shall have been advised.</i>  monītī ēritīs, <i>ye will have been advised.</i>  monītī ērunt, <i>they will have been advised.</i></p>
Pluperf.	<p>monītūs ēram, <i>I had been advised.</i>  monītūs ērās, <i>thou hadst been advised.</i>  monītūs ērāt, <i>he had been advised.</i>  monītī ērāmus, <i>we had been advised.</i>  monītī ērātīs, <i>ye had been advised.</i>  monītī ērant, <i>they had been advised.</i></p>



## E- STEMS.

## VOICE.

CONJUNCTIVE.	IMPERATIVE.
monëär monëärīs monëätür monëämür monëämīnī monëantür	monëřě, monëtör, <i>be thou advised.</i> monëtör, <i>let him be advised.</i>  monēmīnī, <i>be ye advised.</i> monentör, <i>let them be advised.</i>
monëřěr monëřěrīs monëřětür monëřēmür monëřēmīnī monërentür	<p style="text-align: center;">THE VERB INFINITE.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Infinitives.</p> Present } Imperf. } <i>monëřī, to be advised.</i> Perfect } Pluperf. } <i>monītūs essě, to have been advised.</i> Future <i>monītum īrī. (See 387.)</i>
monītūs sim monītūs sīs monītūs sīt monītī simus monītī sītis monītī sint	<p style="text-align: center;">Participle.</p> Perfect <i>monītūs, advised, or having been advised.</i>
monītūs essem monītūs essēs monītūs essēt monītī essēmūs monītī essētīs monītī essent	<p style="text-align: center;">Gerundive.</p> <i>monendūs, meet to be advised.</i>

TENSE.	INDICATIVE.
Present.	<p>rēgōr, regēris, regītūr, regimūr, regimīnī, reguntūr,</p> <p><i>I am or I am being ruled. thou art or thou art being ruled. he is or he is being ruled. we are or we are being ruled. ye are or ye are being ruled. they are or they are being ruled.</i></p>
Future Simple.	<p>regār, regēris, regētūr, regēmūr, regēminī, regentūr,</p> <p><i>I shall be ruled. thou wilt be ruled. he will be ruled. we shall be ruled. ye will be ruled. they will be ruled.</i></p>
Imperfect.	<p>regēbār, regēbāris, regēbātūr, regēbāmūr, regēbāmīnī, regēbantūr,</p> <p><i>I was being or I was ruled. thou wast being or thou wast ruled. he was being or he was ruled. we were being or we were ruled. ye were being or ye were ruled. they were being or they were ruled.</i></p>
Perfect.	<p>rectūs sum, rectus ēs, rectūs est, rectī sūmūs, rectī estīs, rectī sunt,</p> <p><i>I have been or I was ruled. thou hast been or thou wast ruled. he has been or he was ruled. we have been or we were ruled. ye have been or ye were ruled. they have been or they were ruled.</i></p>
Future Perfect.	<p>rectūs erō, rectūs erīs, rectūs erīt, rectī erīmūs, rectī erītīs, rectī erunt,</p> <p><i>I shall have been ruled. thou wilt have been ruled. he will have been ruled. we shall have been ruled. ye will have been ruled. they will have been ruled.</i></p>
Pluperfect.	<p>rectūs eram, rectūs erās, rectūs erāt, rectī erāmūs, rectī erātīs, rectī erant,</p> <p><i>I had been ruled. thou hadst been ruled. he had been ruled. we had been ruled. ye had been ruled. they had been ruled.</i></p>

## CONSONANT STEMS

## VOICE.

CONJUNCTIVE.	IMPERATIVE.
regār regāris regātūr regāmūr regāmini regantūr	regērē, regītōr, <i>be thou ruled.</i> regītōr, <i>let him be ruled.</i>  regīmīnī, <i>be ye ruled.</i> reguntōr, <i>let them be ruled.</i>
regērēr regērēris regērētūr regērēmūr regērēmini regērentūr	<p style="text-align: center;">THE VERB INFINITIVE.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Infinitives.</p> Present } Imperf. } <i>rēgī, to be ruled.</i> Perfect } Pluperf. } <i>rectūs essē, to have been ruled.</i>  Future <i>rectum irī. (See 387.)</i>  <p style="text-align: center;">Participle.</p> Perfect <i>rectūs, ruled, or having been ruled.</i>  <p style="text-align: center;">Gerundive.</p> <i>rēgendūs, meet to be ruled.</i>
rectūs sim rectūs sis rectūs sit rectī simūs rectī sitīs rectī sint	
rectūs essem rectūs essēs rectūs essēt rectī essēmūs rectī essētīs rectī essent	

TENSE.	INDICATIVE.
Present.	<p>audiōr, audirīs, auditūr, audimūr, audiminī, audiuntūr,</p> <p><i>I am or I am being heard. thou art or thou art being heard. he is or he is being heard. we are or we are being heard. ye are or ye are being heard. they are or they are being heard.</i></p>
Future Simple.	<p>audiār, audiēris, audiētūr, audiēmūr, audiēmīnī, audientūr,</p> <p><i>I shall be heard. thou wilt be heard. he will be heard. we shall be heard. ye will be heard. they will be heard.</i></p>
Imperf.	<p>audiēbār, audiēbāris, audiēbātūr, audiēbāmūr, audiēbāmīnī, audiēbāntūr,</p> <p><i>I was being or I was heard. thou wast being or thou wast heard. he was being or he was heard. we were being or we were heard. ye were being or ye were heard. they were being or they were heard.</i></p>
Perfect.	<p>auditūs sum, auditūs es, auditūs est, auditī sūmūs, auditī estīs, auditī sunt,</p> <p><i>I have been or I was heard. thou hast been or thou wast heard. he has been or he was heard. we have been or we were heard. ye have been or ye were heard. they have been or they were heard.</i></p>
Future Perfect.	<p>auditūs ērō, auditūs ēris, auditūs ērit, auditī ērimūs, auditī ēritīs, auditī ērunt,</p> <p><i>I shall have been heard. thou wilt have been heard. he will have been heard. we shall have been heard. ye will have been heard. they will have been heard.</i></p>
Pluperf.	<p>auditūs ēram, auditūs ēras, auditūs ērāt, auditī ērāmūs, auditī ērātīs, auditī ērant,</p> <p><i>I had been heard. thou hadst been heard. he had been heard. we had been heard. ye had been heard. they had been heard.</i></p>

I-STEMS.

VOICE.

CONJUNCTIVE.	IMPERATIVE.
audiār audiārīs audiātūr audiāmūr audiāmīnī audiantūr	audirē, auditōr, <i>be thou heard.</i> auditōr, <i>let him be heard.</i> audīmīnī, <i>be ye heard.</i> audiuntōr, <i>let them be heard.</i>
audirēr audirērīs audirētūr audirēmūr audirēmīnī audirentūr	<p style="text-align: center;">THE VERB INFINITE.</p>
auditūs sim auditūs sis auditūs sit auditī simūs auditī sitīs auditī sint	<p style="text-align: center;">Infinitives.</p> Present } Imperf. } <i>audiri, to be heard.</i> Perfect } Pluperf. } <i>auditūs essē, to have been heard.</i>
	Future <i>auditum iri. (See 387).</i>
auditūs essem auditūs essēs auditūs essēt auditī essēmūs auditī essētīs auditī essent	<p style="text-align: center;">Participle.</p> Perfect <i>auditūs, heard, or having been heard.</i> <p style="text-align: center;">Gerundive.</p> <i>audiendūs, meet to be heard.</i>

## DEPONENT VERB, HAVING THE FORMS OF THE PASSIVE

TENSE.	INDICATIVE.
Present.	ūtōr, utēris, utītūr, utīmūr, utīmīnī, utuntūr, <i>I use.</i> <i>thou usest.</i> <i>he uses.</i> <i>we use.</i> <i>ye use.</i> <i>they use.</i>
Future Simple.	utār, utēris, utētūr, utēmūr, utēmīnī, utentūr, <i>I shall use.</i> <i>thou wilt use.</i> <i>he will use.</i> <i>we shall use.</i> <i>ye will use.</i> <i>they will use.</i>
Imperfect.	utēbār, utēbāris, utēbātūr, utēbāmūr, utēbāmīnī, utēbantūr, <i>I was using or I used.</i> <i>thou wast using or thou didst use.</i> <i>he was using or he used.</i> <i>we were using or we used.</i> <i>ye were using or ye used.</i> <i>they were using or they used.</i>
Perfect.	ūsūs sum, usūs es, usūs est, usī sumūs, usī estis, usī sunt, <i>I have used or I used.</i> <i>thou hast used or thou didst use.</i> <i>he has used or he used.</i> <i>we have used or we used.</i> <i>ye have used or ye used.</i> <i>they have used or they used.</i>
Future Perfect.	usūs ērō, usūs ēris, usūs ērit, usī ērimūs, usī ēritīs, usī ērunt, <i>I shall have used.</i> <i>thou wilt have used.</i> <i>he will have used.</i> <i>we shall have used.</i> <i>ye will have used.</i> <i>they will have used.</i>
Pluperfect.	usūs ēram, usūs ērās, usūs ērāt, usī ērāmūs, usī ērātīs, usī ērant, <i>I had used.</i> <i>thou hadst used.</i> <i>he had used.</i> <i>we had used.</i> <i>ye had used.</i> <i>they had used.</i>

Deponent Verbs have Gerunds, Supines, Present and Future Participles



(THIRD CONJUGATION).

VOICE, WITH THE MEANING OF THE ACTIVE.

CONJUNCTIVE.	IMPERATIVE.
ūtār utāris utātūr utāmūr utāminī utantūr	utērē, utītōr, <i>use thou.</i> utītōr, <i>let him use.</i> utīminī, <i>use ye.</i> utuntōr, <i>let them use.</i>
	<p>THE VERB INFINITE.</p> <p>Infinitives.</p> <p>Present } utī, <i>to use.</i>                      Imperf. }</p> <p>Perfect } usūs esse, <i>to have used.</i>                      Pluperf. }</p> <p>Future usūrūs essē, <i>to be about to use.</i></p> <p>Gerunds.</p> <p>Nom. Acc. utendum, <i>using.</i>                      Gen. utendī, <i>of using.</i>                      Dat. Abl. utendō, <i>for or by using.</i></p> <p>Supines.</p> <p>usum, <i>to use.</i>                      usū, <i>in or for using.</i></p> <p>Participles.</p> <p>Present utens, <i>using.</i>                      Future usūrūs, <i>about to use.</i>                      Perfect usūs, <i>having used</i></p> <p>Gerundive.</p> <p>utendūs, <i>meet to be used.</i></p>
utērēr utērēris utērētūr utērēmūr utērēmīnī utērentūr	
usūs sim usūs sis usūs sīt usī simūs usī sītīs usī sint	
usūs essem usūs essēs usūs essēt usī essēmūs usī essētīs usī essent	

Active; their Perfect Participles have the meaning of the Active Voice.

## 125

## DEPONENT VERBS of the four Conjugations.

Vēnōr	vēnātūs sum	vēnāri, <i>hunt.</i>	Utōr	ūsūs sum	ūti, <i>use.</i>
Vereōr	verītūs sum	verēri, <i>fear.</i>	Partiōr	partītūs sum	partiri, <i>divide</i>

## INDICATIVE.

TENSE	1st CONJ.	2nd CONJ.	3rd CONJ.	4th CONJ.
Pres.	vēnor	vereor	ūtōr	partior
	venāris (rē)	verēris (rē)	utēris (rē)	partīris (ire)
Fut. S.	venābor	verēbor	utar	partiar
Imperf.	venābar	verēbar	utēbar	partiēbar
Perf.	venātus sum	verītus sum	usus sum	partītus sum
Fut. Perf.	venātus ero	verītus ero	usus ero	partītus ero
Pluperf.	venātus eram	verītus eram	usus eram	partītus eram

## CONJUNCTIVE.

Pres.	vener	verear	utar	partiar
Imperf.	venārer	verērer	utērer	partīrer
Perf.	venātus sim	verītus sim	usus sim	partītus sim
Pluperf.	venātus essem	verītus essem	usus essem	partītus essem

## IMPERATIVE.

venāre	verēre	utēre	partire
venātor	verētor	utītor	partītor

## THE VERB INFINITE.

*Infinitives.*

Pres. & {	venāri	verēri	uti	partiri
Imp. }				
Perf. & {	venātus esse	verītus esse	usus esse	partītus esse
Plup. }				
Fut.	venāturus esse	verīturus esse	usurus esse	partīturus esse

*Participles.*

Pres.	venans	verens	utens	partiens
Fut.	venāturus	verīturus	usurus	partīturus
Perf.	venātus	verītus	usus	partītus

*Gerundive.*

venandus	verendus	utendus	partiendus
----------	----------	---------	------------

*Gerunds.*

venandum, -i, -o	verendum, -i, -o	utendum, -i, -o	partiendum, -i, -o
------------------	------------------	-----------------	--------------------

*Supines.*

in -um	venātum	verītum	usum	partītum
in -u	venātu	verītu	usu	partītu

*Note.*—Some Deponents have an Active form also: pūnior and pūnio, *punish*.

**126** Many Perf. Participles of Deponent Verbs are used passively as well as actively: as *confessus* from *confiteor*, *confess*; *imitātus* from *imitor*, *imitate*; *mēritus* from *mēreor*, *deserve*; *pollicitus* from *polliceor*, *promise*.

**127** Some Verbs have a Perfect of Passive form with a Present of Active form; they are called **Semi-deponents**:

<i>audeo, dare</i>	<i>ausus sum, I have dared or I dared.</i>
<i>gaudeo, rejoice</i>	<i>gāvisus sum, I have rejoiced or I rejoiced.</i>
<i>sōleo, am wont</i>	<i>solītus sum, I have been wont or I was wont.</i>
<i>fido, trust</i>	<i>fīsus sum, I have trusted or I trusted.</i>

**128** Some Verbs have an Active form with Passive meaning; they are called **Quasi-Passive**:

<i>exūlo, am banished.</i>	<i>liceo, am put up for sale.</i>
<i>vāpūlo, am beaten.</i>	<i>vēneo, am on sale.</i>
<i>fio, am made.</i>	

**129** Some Verbs have Perfect Participles with Active meaning, like the Deponent Verbs:

<i>jūro, swear.</i>	<i>jurāvi, I swore.</i>	<i>jurātus, having sworn.</i>
<i>cēno, sup.</i>	<i>cenāvi, I supped.</i>	<i>cenātus, having supped.</i>
<i>prandeo, dine.</i>	<i>prandi, I dined.</i>	<i>pransus, having dined.</i>

**130** **Inceptive Verbs**, with Present Stem in **-sco** (Third Conjugation), express beginning of action, and are derived from Verb-Stems or from Nouns:

<i>pallesco, turn pale,</i>	<i>from palleo.</i>
<i>nigresco, turn black,</i>	<i>from niger.</i>

**131** **Frequentative Verbs** (First Conj.) express repeated or intenser action, and are formed from Supine Stems:

*rōgito, ask repeatedly (rogo); canto, sing with energy (cāno).*

**132** **Desiderative Verbs** (Fourth Conj.) express desire of action, and are formed from the Supine Stem:

*ēsūrio, am hungry (ēdō, ēsurus).*

# 133 VERBS IN -io (THIRD CONJUGATION).

Forms from Present Stem, *cap-i*, *take*.

	ACTIVE VOICE			PASSIVE VOICE	
	INDIC.	CONJUNC.		INDIC.	CONJUNC.
Present	căpio capis capit capîmus capitis capiunt	capiam capias capiat capiamus capiatis capiant	Present	capior capëris capitur capimur capimini capiuntur	capiar capiaris capiatur capiamur capiamini capiantur
Fut. Simple	capiam capiēs capiet capiēmus capietis capiēnt		Fut. Simple	capiar capiēris capietur capiemur capiemini capiēntur	
Imperf.	capiebam capiebas capiebat capiebamur capiebatis capiebant	capërem caperes caperet caperemus caperetis caperent	Imperf.	capiebar capiebaris capiebatur capiebamur capiebamini capiebantur	capërer capereris caperetur caperemur caperemini caperentur
Imperative	Sing.	2. cape, capito. 3. capito.	2. capëre, capitor. 3. capitor.		
	Plur.	2. capite, capitôte. 3. capiunto.	2. capîmini. 3. capiuntor.		
Infin. Pres. căpëre, Gerund. capiendum. Pres. Partic. capiens.			Infin. Pres. capi. Gerundive capiendus.		

Capio has Perfect *cēpi*; Supine *captum*.

The Verbs in -io are :

căpio, cūpio *and* făcio, } and their  
fōdio, fūgio *and* jăcio, } compounds,  
părio, răpio, săpio, quătio, }

Compounds of spēcio *and* lăcio { obsolete  
Verbs,

Deponent : grădiōr, pătiōr, mōriōr,  
And in some tenses, pōtiōr, ōriōr,

*take, desire, make,  
dig, fly, throw,  
bring forth, seize, know, shake.*

*look at, entice.*

*step, suffer, die.  
get possession of. arise.*

134

IRREGULAR VERBS.

Verbs are called irregular :

- (1) Because they are formed from more than one root,  
as *sum*.
- (2) Because their tense-forms differ from those of regular  
verbs.

135

*Possum, I can, potui, posse.*

The Pres. Indic. *possum* is compounded of *sum, I am*, and the adjective *potis or poti, able*.

	INDIC.	CONJUNC.		INDIC.	CONJUNC.
Present	possum pōtēs potest possumus potestis possunt	possim possis possit possimus possitis possint	Perfect	potui potuisti potuit potuimus potuistis potuerunt	potuerim potueris potuerit potuerimus potueritis potuerint
Fut. Simp.	potero poteris poterit poterimus poteritis poterunt		Fut. Perf.	potuero potueris potuerit potuerimus potueritis potuerint	
Imperf.	poteram poteras poterat poteramus poteratis poterant	possem posses posset possemus possetis possent	Pluperf.	potueram potueras potuerat potueramus potueratis potuerant	potuissem potuisses potuisset potuissemus potuissetis potuissent

Infinitive Pres. and Imperf. *posse* (pot-esse), Perf. and Pluperf. *potuisse*.

*Potens* is used as an Adjective, *powerful, able*, never as a Participle.

Fĕro, *bear*, ferre, tŭli, lātum.

	ACTIVE VOICE			PASSIVE VOICE	
	INDIC.	CONJUNC.		INDIC.	CONJUNC.
Present	fĕro fers fert ferĭmus fertis ferunt	feram feras ferat ferāmus ferātis ferant	Present	feror ferris fertur ferĭmur ferĭmĭni feruntur	ferar ferāris feratur feramur feramini ferantur
Fut. Simple	feram feres feret ferēmus ferētis ferent		Fut. Simple	ferar ferēris feretur feremur feremini ferentur	
Imperf.	ferēbam ferēbas ferebat ferebamus ferebatis ferebant	ferrem ferrēs ferret ferrēmus ferrētis ferrent	Imperf.	ferēbar ferebāris ferebatur ferebamur ferebamini ferebantur	ferrer ferrēris ferretur ferremur ferremini ferrentur
Imperative	Sing.	2. fer, ferto. 3. ferto.	2. ferre, fertor. 3. fertor.		
	Plur.	2. ferte, fertote. 3. ferunto.	2. ferimini. 3. feruntor.		
Infin. Pres. ferre. Gerund. ferend-um, -i, -o. Pres. Partic. ferens.			Infin. Pres. ferri. Gerundive ferendus.		

The Perfect-Stem forms are regular :

tul-i -ero -eram -erim -issem.

Infin. tulisse

Also the Supine-Stem forms :

Supines { latum      Participles { latus  
          latu                           laturus

Infin. { latus esse  
          latum iri

latus sum, ero, eram, sim, essem.



137 **Eo** (for *eio*), *go*, *īre*, *īvi* or *ii*, *ītum*.

	INDIC.	CONJUNC.	IMPERATIVE
Present	eo īs īt īmus ītis eunt	eam eas eat eāmus eātis eant	ī, īto. īto. īte, ītōte. eunto.
Fut. Simple	ibo ibis ibit ibimus ibitis ibunt		THE VERB INFINITIVE. Infinitives. Present } īre. Imperf. } Perfect } Pluperf. } isse, īvisse. Future } iturus esse.
Imperf.	ībam ibas ibat ibamus ibatis ibant	īrem ires iret irēmus iretis irent	Gerunds. Nom. Acc. eundum. Gen. eundi. Dat. Abl. eundo.
Perf.	ii or īvi iisti, ivisti iit, ivit iimus, ivimus iistis, ivistis iērunt, ivērunt	īerim ieris ierit ierimus ieritis ierint	Supines. ītum. ītu. Participles. Pres. iēns (Acc. euntem). Future iturus.

In the Perfect Tense of **eo** the forms *ii*, *iisti* &c. are more usual than *īvi* &c.; also in the compounds *redii*, *rediisti*, *redisti*.

The Impersonal Passive, *itur*, *ītum est*, is often used.

138 **Queo**, *can*, **nequeo**, *cannot*, are conjugated like **eo** in the forms which are found, but many are wanting; they have no Imperative and no Gerunds.

**Ambio**, *go round*, *canvass*, is conjugated like **audio**.

139

**Vōlo**, *am willing, wish.***Nōlo**, *am unwilling, do not wish.***Mālo**, *prefer, wish rather.*

Nolo is compounded of ne and volo. Malo of magis and volo.

INDICATIVE				IMPERATIVE
Present	vōlo vīs vult volūmus vultis volunt	nōlo nonvis nonvult nolūmus nonvultis nolunt	mālo mavis mavult malūmus mavultis malunt	nōlī, nōlito nolito  nolite nolitōte, nolunto  Volo and malo have no Imperative.
Fut. Simple	vōlam volēs volet volēmus volētis volent	(nōlam) noles nolet nolēmus nolētis nolent	(mālam) males malet malēmus malētis malent	THE VERB INFINITIVE. Infinitive.  Present { velle Imperfect { nolle malle
Imperf.	volēbam volebas &c.	nolēbam nolebas &c.	malebam malebas &c.	
CONJUNCTIVE				Gerunds.  volendum, -i, -o nolendum, -i, -o malendum, -i, -o  Supines. None.  Participles.  Present { vōlens nōlens —
Present	vēlim velis velit velīmus velitis velint	nōlim nolis nolit nolīmus nolitis nolint	mālim malis malit malīmus malitis malint	
Imperf.	vellem velles vellet vellemus velletis vellent	nollem nolles nollet nollemus nolletis nollent	mallem malles mallet mallemus malletis mallent	

The Perfect-Stem forms are regular :

Vōlū-i	-ero	-eram	-erim	-issem	Infinitive { vōluisse nōluisse māluisse
Nōlū-i	-ero	-eram	-erim	-issem	
Mālū-i	-ero	-eram	-erim	-issem	

140

**Ēdo, I eat, esse** (for *ēdere*), *ēdi, ēsum*.

2nd Pers. S. Pres. Act.	<b>ēs</b>	for ed-i-s.
3rd " " "	<b>est</b>	for ed-i-t.
2nd Pers. Pl. " "	<b>estis</b>	for ed-i-tis.
Imperf. Conj.	<b>essem</b>	for ed-e-rem.
Imperat. Pres.	<b>este</b>	for ed-i-te.
" Fut.	<b>esto, estote</b>	for <i>edito, editote</i> .
Inf. Pres.	<b>esse</b>	for ed-e-re.
3rd Pers. S. Pres. Pass.	<b>estur</b>	ed-i-tur.

The other forms of this Verb are regular ; except that **edim, edis, edit**, are usually found in the Present Coniunctive.

141

**Fio, am made, become, fieri, factus sum.**

The Present-Stem tenses of **fio** supply a Passive to the Active verb **facio, make**. The Perfect tenses are borrowed from the Perfect Passive of *facio* formed from the Supine-Stem **facto-**.

	INDIC.	CONJUNC.	IMPERATIVE
Present	fio fis fit (fimus) (fitis) fiunt	fiam fias fiat fiamus fiatis fiant	fī fite
Fut. Simple	fiam fies fiet fiemus fietis fient		THE VERB INFINITE. Infinitives. Present } fieri. Imper. } Perfect } factus esse. Pluperf. } Future factum iri.
Imperf.	fiebam fiebas fiebat fiebamus fiebatis fiebant	fierem fieres fieret fieremus fieretis fierent	Participle. Perfect factus.
Perf.	factus sum, &c.	factus sim, &c.	Gerundive. faciendus.

## 142

## DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Defective Verbs are those of which only some forms are used.

<b>Coepi</b> , <i>begin</i>	} have only Perfect-Stem forms; but the Perfect forms are used with Present meaning.
<b>Memīni</b> , <i>remember</i>	
<b>Odi</b> , <i>hate</i>	

## Indicative.

Perfect.	<b>coepi</b> , <i>I begin.</i>	<b>memini</b> , <i>I remember.</i>	<b>ōdi</b> , <i>I hate.</i>
Fut. Perf.	<b>coepero</b> , <i>I shall begin.</i>	<b>meminero</b> , <i>I shall remember.</i>	<b>odero</b> , <i>I shall hate.</i>
Pluperf.	<b>coeperam</b> , <i>I began.</i>	<b>memineram</b> , <i>I remembered.</i>	<b>oderam</b> , <i>I hated.</i>

## Conjunctive.

Perfect.	<b>coeperim</b>	<b>meminerim</b>	<b>oderim</b>
Pluperf.	<b>coepissem</b>	<b>meminissem</b>	<b>odissem</b>
Infin.	<b>coepisse</b> , <i>to begin.</i>	<b>meminisse</b>	<b>odisse</b>
Fut. Part.	<b>coeptūrus</b> , <i>about to begin.</i>	—	<b>osurus</b> , <i>about to hate.</i>

**Coepi** has a participle **coeptus**. **Odi** sometimes has **osus sum**.  
**Memini** has Imperative **memento**, Plur. **mementote**.

**Nōvi** (Perf. of **nosco**) is used with Present meaning, *I know*.

<b>novero</b> ,	{ <b>noveram</b> <b>noram</b> }	<b>noverim</b>	{ <b>novissem</b> <b>nossem</b> }	Infin.	{ <b>novisse</b> <b>nosse</b> }
-----------------	------------------------------------	----------------	--------------------------------------	--------	------------------------------------

**Aio**, *I say or affirm.*

Ind. Pres. aio, ais, ait, — — aiunt.

Impf. aiebam, aiebas, aiebat, aiebamus, aiebatis, aiebant.

Conj. Pres. — — aiat, — — aiant.

Participle. aiens.

**Inquam**, *I say.*

Ind. Pres. inquam, inquis, inquit, inquĩmus, inquĩtis, inquiunt.

Impf. — — inquiebat — — inquiebant

Fut. S. — inquires, inquiet

Perf. — inquisti, inquit

Imper. inque — inquĩto

**Fari**, *to speak.*

Indic. Pres. faris, fatur.

„ Fut. fabor — fabitur.

Imper. fare, *speak thou.*

Participles, Pres. Acc. fantem. Perf. fatus.

Gerund. fandi, fando. Gerundive. fandus.

**Quaeso**, *entreat* (an old form of quaero), has first pers. plur. quaesũmus.

The following Imperatives are found :

apǎgě, *be gone.*

avē (havē), avēte, *hail.* Infin. avēre, *to have a desire.*

cědo, cedĩtě (cette), *give.*

salvē, salvēte. Infin. salvēre, *to be well.*

*Note.*—Age, āgĩte, *come*; vale, valēte, *farewell*, are used with special meaning; but the verbs ago, *I do*, vāleo, *I am well*, are fully conjugated.

143

## IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Impersonal Verbs are used only in the forms of the Third Person Singular of each tense, and do not refer to a Subject in the Nominative. They have also Infinitive and Gerund (288-295).

144

The principal are the following :

<i>Present.</i>		<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>
<i>misēret, it moves to pity.</i>		(miseruit)	(miserēre)
<i>piget, it vexes.</i>		piguit	pigēre
<i>paenitet, it repents.</i>		paenituit	paenitēre
<i>pudet, it shames.</i>		puduit	puḍere
<i>taedet, it wearies.</i>		taeduit	taedēre
<i>dēcet, it is becoming.</i>		decuit	decēre
<i>dēdecet, it is unbecoming.</i>		dedecuit	dedecēre
<i>libet, it pleases.</i>		libuit	libēre
<i>licet, it is lawful.</i>		licuit	licēre
<i>oportet, it behoves.</i>		oportuit	oportēre

*Note. 1.*—Decet, dedecet have also 3rd. pers. plur., decent, dedecent.

*Note 2.*—Active Impersonals have no Passive Voice, but some passive forms are found: *misereor, I pity, miserētur; miseritum est, pigitum est, puditum est, pertaesum est.* Other forms are occasionally found: *paenitendus, pudendus.*

145

Some Impersonals express change of weather and time :

<i>fulgurat, it lightens.</i>	<i>tonat, it thunders.</i>
<i>ningit, it snows.</i>	<i>lucescit, it dawns.</i>
<i>pluit, it rains.</i>	<i>vesperascit, it grows late.</i>

146

Of some Verbs which have all the personal forms, the Third Person Singular is used impersonally with special meaning :

<i>accēdit, it is added.</i>	<i>expēdit, it is expedient.</i>
<i>accidit, it happens.</i>	<i>fallit, fugit, it escapes one.</i>
<i>apparet, it is evident.</i>	<i>interest, it concerns.</i>
<i>attinet, it belongs.</i>	<i>juvat, it delights.</i>
<i>constat, it is agreed.</i>	<i>pertinet, it pertains.</i>
<i>contingit, it befalls.</i>	<i>placet, it seems good.</i>
<i>convēnit, it suits.</i>	<i>rēfert, it matters.</i>
<i>delectat, it charms.</i>	<i>restat, it remains.</i>
<i>ēvēnit, it turns out.</i>	

Intransitive Verbs are used impersonally in the Passive (299).



## 147 DERIVATION FROM THE THREE TENSE STEMS.

## I. From the Present-Stem.

Pres. Indic. Act.	ām(a)-o	mōnē-o	rēg-o	audī-o
" " Pass.	-ōr	ē-or	-ōr	ī-ōr
" Conj. Act.	-em	ē-am	-am	ī-am
" " Pass.	-ēr	ē-ār	-ār	ī-ār
Imperf. Indic. Act.	ā-bam	ē-bam	-ēbam	ī-ēbam
" " Pass.	ā-bār	ē-bār	-ēbār	ī-ēbār
" Conj. Act.	ā-rem	ē-rem	-ērem	ī-rem
" " Pass.	ā-rēr	ē-rēr	-ērēr	ī-rēr
Fut. Indic. Act.	ā-bo	ē-bo	-am	ī-am
" " Pass.	ā-bōr	ē-bōr	-ār	ī-ār
Imperative Act.	ā	ā	-ē	ī
" Pass.	ā-rē	ē-rē	-ērē	ī-rē
Infin. Pres. Act.	ā-rē	ē-rē	-ērē	ī-rē
" " Pass.	ā-rī	ē-rī	-ī	ī-rī
Partic. Pres. Act.	a-ns	e-ns	-ens	ī-ens
Gerund	a-ndo	e-ndo	-endo	ī-endo

## II. From the Perfect-Stem.

Perfect Indic. Act.	āmāv-ī	monū-ī	rex-ī	audīv-ī
" Conj. "	-ērim	-ērim	-ērim	-ērim
Fut. Perf. Indic. Act.	-ēro	-ēro	-ēro	-ēro
Plup. " "	-ēram	-ēram	-ēram	-ēram
" Conj. "	-issem	-issem	-issem	-issem
Infin. Perf. "	-issē	-issē	-issē	-issē

## III. From the Supine-Stem.

Supine I.	āmāt-um	monīt-um	rect-um	audit-um
Infin. Fut. } Pass.	-um īrī	-um īrī	-um īrī	-um īrī
Supine II.	-ū	-ū	-ū	-ū
Partic. Fut. } Act.	-ūrūs	-ūrūs	-ūrūs	-ūrūs
Partic. Perf. } Pass.	-ūs	-ūs	-ūs	-ūs
Perf. Indic. } Pass.	-ūs sum	-ūs sum	-ūs sum	-ūs sum
Perf. Conj. } Pass.	-ūs sim	-ūs sim	-ūs sim	-ūs sim
Fut. Perf. } Pass.	-ūs ēro	-ūs ēro	-ūs ēro	-ūs ēro
Plup. Ind. } Pass.	-ūs ēram	-ūs ēram	-ūs ēram	-ūs ēram
Plup. Conj. } Pass.	-ūs essem	-ūs essem	-ūs essem	-ūs essem
Infin. Pass.	-ūs essē	-ūs essē	-ūs essē	-ūs essē

## 148

## FORMATION OF THE THREE STEMS IN VERBS.

The forms of the Latin Verb vary in many respects from those of the parent and related languages. Both in the Past and in the Future tenses the Latin has developed new endings of its own, so that the original forms are only seen in the Present.

The Verbs in the older language were divided into two principal classes:

- I. In which the Personal endings were formed by Pronouns joined immediately to the Root, the tenses being partly formed by changes in the root vowel.
- II. In which the Verb-Stem was formed by a so-called Thematic vowel added to the root.

Of the first class there are very few remains in Latin, most of the Verbs which belonged to it having gone over into the second class.

The old ending -m (for -mi) of the First Person Singular is seen in *sum*, *I am*, and in other tenses, as *eram*, *amem*. A few Verbs retain part of their old forms side by side with later forms borrowed from the Thematic Verbs. These are:

Vowel-ending Stems:

*eo*, *I go*; *dō*, *I give*; *stō*, *I stand*.

Consonant-ending Stems:

*edo*, *I eat*; *fero*, *I carry*; *volo*, *I will*; *nōlo*, *will not*; *mālo*, *I prefer*.

(For the forms of these Verbs see 115 and 136 to 140.)

## PERSONAL ENDINGS IN UNTHEMATIC AND THEMATIC VERBS.

		ACTIVE VOICE.		PASSIVE VOICE.
		Unthematic.	Thematic.	
Singular	1	-m	-o	-r
	2	-s	-s	-ris or -re
	3	-t	-t (-d)	-tur
Plural	1	-mus (-mos)	-mus (-mos)	-mur
	2	-tis	-tis	-mini
	3	-nt	-unt (-ont)	-ntur

The -r of the Passive probably comes from an old form of a third Voice, called the Middle Voice, which is not preserved in Latin.

## PRESENT-STEM FORMATION.

The Thematic Verbs are divided into six groups according to the formation of their Present Stems.

- I. The Present Stem is the same as the Verb-Stem, being formed by the addition of the thematic vowel to the Stem-syllable either with or without lengthening of the Stem-vowel: *peto*, *veho*, *cēdo*, *fendo*, *dico*, *fido*, *dūco*, *claudio*, *ago*, *alo*, *rudo*, etc.

*Note.*—This class had originally two divisions: (a) with long root vowel, (b) with short root vowel, but in Latin the distinction between them is not clear.

- II. Reduplicated Presents. Of this class very few are preserved in Latin: *gigno* for *gi-g(e)no* (*gēnus*, *race*); *si-sto*; *bi-bo*.

- III. With suffix -to added to the Stem-syllable: *plecto*, *flecto*, *necto*.

## IV. Nasalised Stems :

- a) with addition of the suffix -no: *cerno*, *sterno*, *sperno*, *temno*, and two roots ending in -i: *sino*, *lino*. Verbs in -llo, *fallo*, *pello*, *percello*, etc., also belong to this class, -llo standing for older -lno.
- (b) Verbs in which the n is inserted in the Stem-syllable, as *plango* (Verb-Stem *plag-*), *jungo*, *findo*, *scindo*. The n becomes m before Labials, as in *rumpo*. In some of these Verbs the Nasal goes through all the tenses, as in *ungo*, *unxi*, *unctum*. In others it appears only in the Present Stem, as in *frango*, *frēgi*, *fractum*. A few have the Nasal in the Perfect, but not in the Supine, as *pingo*, *pinxi*, *pictum*.

## V. With suffix -sco. This class also has two divisions:

- (a) With the suffix joined immediately to the root-syllable: *nosco*, *cresco*, *disco*, *pasco*.
- (b) Derivative Verbs in -asco, -esco, -isco, derived from other Verbs or from Nouns: *congelasco*, from *gelo*; *calesco*, from *caleo*; *gemisco*, from *gemo*; *duresco*, from *durus*, etc.

- VI. With suffix -io. The Verbs in -io of the 3rd Conj. (Consonant-Stems) belong to this class. *Capio*, *facio*, etc.

It included originally the large number of derivative Verbs with Vowel-Stems, as *amo* (for *ama-io*), *moneo* (for *mone-io*) (14).

## 150

## FORMATION OF THE PERFECT.

The Perfect First Person Sing. ends in *-i*. When the suffix *-i* is joined to the Stem, with or without change in the Stem-syllable, it is called a strong formation. When the Perfect is formed by adding to the Stem one of the suffixes *-si*, *-vi*, *-ui*, the formation is called weak.

In some Vowel-Stems, especially in many E- Stems, the final or character vowel of the Verb-Stem is dropped before the Perfect suffix, and the Stem is then called the Clipt Stem. This is seen in *mon-ui* (Stem *mone-*), *man-si*, *cav-i*, *pend-i*, and also in some A- and I- Stems, as *dom-ui*, *sal-ui*.

## Strong Formation of the Perfect.

**I. With Reduplication.** This is the oldest way of forming the Perfect, and arose from a doubling of the Stem-syllable. In Latin it is formed by a vowel (originally *e*) prefixed to the Stem. When the Stem begins with a single consonant, this vowel is preceded by the same consonant: *pendo*, *pependi*. When the Stem begins with *s*, followed by another consonant (*sc*, *sp*, *st*), the Reduplicating-syllable begins with the double consonant, but the Stem-syllable drops the *s*: *spondeo*, *spopondi*, *sto*, *steti*. The *e* of the Reduplicating-syllable is often assimilated to the Stem-vowel, *mo-mordi*, *pupugi*, *didici* (13). In Compounds it is often dropped, as in *rettuli* (15). In many Reduplicated Perfects, the vowel of the Stem-syllable is weakened through loss of the accent: *cado*, *cecidi*.

**I. With Lengthened Stem-Vowel.** This formation is seen in two A- Stems: *jūvi*, *lāvi*; in a few E- Stems: *sēdi*, *vidi*, *cāvi*, *fōvi*, etc.; in Consonant-Stems: *vīci*, *fūgi*, *lēgi*, *fūdi*, etc.; and in one I- Stem: *vēni*.

A few Consonant-Stems, *ago*, *capio*, *jacio*, *frango*, and the compounds of *pango* (*compingo*, *impingo*) form their Perfect with Vowel change as well as lengthening. In many of these Verbs the Perfect was originally reduplicated and the vowel was lengthened after loss of reduplication. The Perfects *ēgi*, *ēdi*, *ēmi*, of *āgo*, *ēdo*, *ēmo*, are contractions of an old reduplication (*e-ag-*, *e-ed-*, *e-em-*).

*Note.*—A few of the above have long vowel in Pres. as well as Perf.: *īco*, *cūdo*, *sīdo*, *vīso*.

**III. With Unchanged Stem-Syllable.** This class includes the U- Stems *acui*, *argui*, etc., and a number of Consonant-Stems, as *verri*, *verti*, *scandi*, the compounds of *-cendo*, *-fendo*, etc., and two E- Verbs, *prandi* and *stridi*.

## Weak Formation of the Perfect.

- I. The Perfect suffix in *-si* is joined to the Clipt Stem of many E- and some I- Verbs; also to a large number of Consonant-Stems with which it combines according to the laws of Consonant change. Thus *gs*, *cs*, *hs*, become *x*, as in *rexi*, *pinxi*, *duxi*, *vexi*. Also *qs* in *coxi*. The guttural drops after *l*, *r* in *fulsi*, *mersi*, also in *vixi* from Stem *gvigv*—(compare Old English *cwicu*, *quick*). In *struxi*, *flaxi*, the Perfect preserves the guttural sound which is lost in the Present. Dental sounds are dropped, *plausi*, *flexi*; with lengthening of short vowels, as in *misi*. The labial *p* remains unchanged, as in *sculpsi*, but *b* becomes *p*, *scripsi*, *nupsi*. After *m*, *p* is inserted, in *sumpsi*, *tempsi*; *s* remains, as in *gessi*, *ussi*, where in the Present it changes to *r*. It becomes single after a long vowel or diphthong, as *haesi*, *hausi*.
- II. The weak Perfect forms in *-vi* and *-ui* are peculiar to the Latin language. They were probably formed by analogy from the V- and U- Stems like *favi*, *acui*, and extended to a very large number of Verbs. All the A- and I- Stems which keep their character vowel throughout the tenses as *amavi*, *audivi*, form their Perfect tense in *-vi* as well as many Consonant-Stems. The Perfect in *-ui* is joined to the Clipt E- Stems, as *mon-ui*, also to a few Clipt Stems in A- and E-, and to a large number of Consonant Verbs. This form had a tendency to spread in later Latin, and many Verbs formed new Perfects in *-ui* after the classical period.

151

## THE SUPINE STEM.

The Supine or Participial Stem ends in *-to*. This suffix is joined to the Verb-Stem or to the Clipt Stem, either immediately or by the vowel *i*. When it is joined immediately to the Vowel-Stem, as in most of the A-, I- and U- Stems, the character vowel is lengthened. When it is joined to a Consonant-Stem, the laws of consonant change again come into force; *g* before *t* becomes *c*; the guttural is dropped after *l* or *r*, *fultum*, *tortum*; *p* is inserted between *m* and *t*, *emptum*. In a few Verbs the Stem-vowel is changed, as in *lāvo*, which has besides *lavatum* a contracted Supine form *lautum*, afterwards becoming *lōtum*: in *sātum* (from *sāro*), *cultum* (from *cōlo*).

The Supine in *-sum* was formed in Dental Stems by a regular change of medial *-dt-*, *-tt-* to *ss*; thus *ced-to-*, *mit-to-*, would become *cesso-*, *misso-*, and the double *s* would become single after a long vowel or diphthong (20). From the Dental Stems the Supine in *-sum* spread to many other Verbs by analogy. It combines with Consonant-Stems according to the same laws of letter change as the Perfect in *-si*.

## TABLE OF VERB PERFECTS AND SUPINES.\*

## I. A- Stems.

<i>Present</i>	<i>Infin.</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Supine</i>	
		Usual Form.		
-ō(-a-io)	-ārē	-āvi	-ā-tum	
amō	amārē	amāvi	amātum	
		Exceptions.		
		-ŭī	-ītum	
crepo	-āre	crepui	crepitum	<i>creak</i>
cūbo	-āre	cubui	cubitum	<i>lie down</i>
dōmo	-āre	domui	domitum	<i>tame</i>
plico	-āre	-plicavi } -plicui }	-plicatum } -plicitum }	<i>fold</i>
sōno	-āre	sonui	sonitum	<i>sound</i>
tōno	-āre	tonui	tonitum	<i>thunder</i>
veto	-āre	vetui } vetavi }	vetitum	<i>forbid</i>
		-ŭī	-ātum	
mīco	-āre	micui } micavi }	-micatum	<i>glitter</i>
		-ŭī	-tum	
enēco	-āre	enecui	enectum	<i>kill</i>
frico	-āre	fricui	frictum } fricatum }	<i>rub</i>
sēco	-āre	secui	sectum	<i>cut</i>
		-ī	-tum	
		(a) Reduplicated	-tum	
dō	-āre	dēdī	dātum	<i>give</i>
stō	-āre	stēti	stātum	<i>stand</i>
		(b) Lengthened Stem	-tum	
jūvo	-āre	jūv -i	jūtum	<i>help</i>
lāvo	-āre	lāv -i	lavātum } lautum } lōtum }	<i>wash</i>

*Note.*--Jūvo, lāvo have Fut. Part. juvaturus, lavaturus.

\* For very many Supines no authority exists; but the form is inferred from the Perfect Participle Passive, or from the Future Participle, or the Verbal Substantive.

Forms printed with a hyphen, as -plicavi, -plicatum, are only used in compounds.



153

## II. E- Stems.

<i>Present</i>	<i>Infin.</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Supine</i>	
		Usual Form.		
-ēō (-e-io)	-ērē	-ūī	-ītum	
mōnēō	monēre	mōnūī	monītum	
Exceptions.				
		-ūī	-tum	
arceo	-ēre	arui	—	ward off
dūceo	-ēre	docui	doctum	teach
ferveo	-ēre	ferbui } ferui }	—	be hot
misceo	-ēre	miscui	mistum }	mix
sorbeo	-ēre	sorbui	mixtum }	
tēneo	-ēre	tenui	—	swallow
torreo	-ēre	torrui	tentum	hold
			tostum	scorch
		-ui	-sum	
censeo	-ēre	censui	censum	deem, vote
		-vī	-tum	
aboleo	-ēre	abolevi	abolitum	destroy
cio	-ēre	cīvi	citum	stir up
dēleo	-ēre	delevi	deletum	blot out
fleo	-ēre	flevi	fletum	weep
neo	-ēre	nevi	—	spin
-pleo	-ēre	-plevi	-pletum	fill
		-sī	-tum	
augeo	-ēre	auxi	auctum	increase (tr.)
conīveo	-ēre	conixi	—	wink
frigeo	-ēre	frixi	—	freeze
lūgeo	-ēre	luxi	—	mourn
pollūceo	-ēre	—	polluctum	make a feast
fulgeo	-ēre	fulsi	—	shine
indulgeo	-ēre	indulsi	—	indulge
mulgeo	-ēre	mulsi	—	milk
torqueo	-ēre	torsi	torctum	twist
		-si	-sum	
algeo	-ēre	alsi	—	be cold
ardeo	-ēre	arsī	—	burn (intr.)
haereo	-ēre	haesi	—	stick
jūbeo	-ēre	jussi	jussum	command
lūceo	-ēre	luxi	—	shine
māneo	-ēre	mansi	mansum	remain
mulceo	-ēre	mulsi	mulsum	soothe
rideo	-ēre	risi	risum	laugh
suādeo	-ēre	suasi	suasum	advise
tergeo	-ēre	tersi	—	wipe
turgeo	-ēre	tursi	—	swell
urgeo	-ēre	ursi	—	press

Note.—Ardeo, haereo have Fut. Part. arsurus, haesurus.

<i>Present</i>	<i>Infin.</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Supine</i>	
		-i	-tum or -sum	
	(a) Lengthened Stem		-tum	
cāveo	-ēre	cāv-i	cautum	beware
fāveo	-ēre	fāv-i	fautum	favour
fōveo	-ēre	fōv-i	fotum	cherish
mōveo	-ēre	mōv-i	motum	move (tr.)
pāveo	-ēre	pāv-i	—	quake
vōveo	-ēre	vōv-i	votum	vow
	(b) Reduplicated		-sum	
pendeo	-ēre	pēpendi	pensum	hang (intr.)
mordeo	-ēre	mōmordi	morsum	bite
spondeo	-ēre	spōpondi	sporum	pledge
tondeo	-ēre	tōtondi	tonsum	shear
	(c) Lengthened Stem		-sum	
sēdeo	-ēre	sēdi	sessum	sit
vīdeo	-ēre	vīdi	vīsum	see
prandeo	-ēre	prandi	pransum	lunch, dine
strideo	-ēre	stridi	—	creak

## III. Consonant and U- Stems.

## Consonant Stems.

<i>Present</i>	<i>Infin.</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Supine</i>	
rēgo	rēgēre	rexī	rectum	
		-si	-tum	
cōquo	-ēre	coxi	coctum	cook
dīco	-ēre	dixi	dictum	say
dīlīgo	-ēre	dilexi	dilectum	love
dūco	-ēre	duxi	ductum	lead
affligo	-ēre	-flixi	-flictum	smite down
frīgo	-ēre	frixi	frictum	roast
intellēgo	-ēre	intellexi	intellectum	understand
neglēgo	-ēre	neglexi	neglectum	neglect
pergo	-ēre	perrexi	perrectum	proceed
sūgo	-ēre	suxi	suctum	suck
surgo	-ēre	surrexi	surrectum	arise
tēgo	-ēre	texi	tectum	cover
trāho	-ēre	traxi	tractum	draw
vēho	-ēre	vexi	vectum	carry
vīvo	-ēre	vixi	victum	live
fluo	-ēre	fluxi	fluctum	flow
struo	-ēre	struxi	structum	build

<i>Present</i>	<i>Infin.</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Supine</i>	
carpo	-ĕre	carpsi	carptum	pluck
nūbo	-ĕre	nupsi	nuptum	marry
rēpo	-ĕre	repsi	reptum	creep
scalpo	-ĕre	scalpsi	scalptum	scratch
sculpo	-ĕre	sculpsi	sculptum	carve
scribo	-ĕre	scripsi	scriptum	write
gĕro	-ĕre	gessi	gestum	carry on
ūro	-ĕre	ussi	ustum	burn (tr.)
cōmo	-ĕre	compsi	comptum	adorn
ĭĕmo	-ĕre	dempsi	demptum	take away
prōmo	-ĕre	prompsi	promptum	bring out
sūmo	-ĕre	sumpsi	sumptum	take
temno	-ĕre	-tempſi	-temptum	despise
ango	-ĕre	—	—	pain
clango	-ĕre	—	—	clash
cingo	-ĕre	cinxi	cinctum	surround
exstinguo	-ĕre	exstinxi	extinctum	quench
finġo	-ĕre	finxi	fictum	feign
jungo	-ĕre	junxi	junctum	join
pango	-ĕre	panxi } pĕgi }	pactum	fasten
pingo	-ĕre	pinxi	pictum	paint
stringo	-ĕre	strinxi	strictum	bind
tingo	-ĕre	tinxi	tinctum	dye
unguo (ungo)	-ĕre	unxi	unctum	anoint
ninguit (ningit)	-ĕre	ninxit	—	it snows
<b>-ſī                      -ſum</b>				
figo	-ĕre	fixi	fixum	fix
mergo	-ĕre	mersi	mersum	drown
ſpargo	-ĕre	ſparſi	ſparſum	sprinkle
cĕdo	-ĕre	ceſſi	ceſſum	yield
claudio	-ĕre	clauſi	clauſum	ſhut
diuidō	-ĕre	diuiſi	diuiſum	divide
laedo	-ĕre	laeſi	laeſum	hurt
lūdo	-ĕre	luſi	luſum	play
mitto	-ĕre	mīſi	miſſum	ſend
plaudio	-ĕre	plauſi	plauſum	applaud
rādo	-ĕre	raſi	raſum	ſcrape
rōdo	-ĕre	roſi	roſum	gnaw
trūdo	-ĕre	truſi	truſum	thruſt
vādo	-ĕre	(in)vaſi	(in)vaſum	go (attack)
prĕmo	-ĕre	preſſi	preſſum	preſſ
ſlecto	-ĕre	ſlexi	ſflexum	bend
necto	-ĕre	nexi } nexui }	nexum	bind
pecto	-ĕre	pexi	pexum	comb
quātio	-ĕre	quaſſi	quaſſum	ſhake (tr.)
conciitio	-ĕre	concuſſi	concuſſum	ſhake together

*Note.*—Nexui, the more uſual Perf. of necto, is from an obſolete verb, nexo.

<i>Present</i>	<i>Infin.</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Supine</i>	
		<b>-vī</b>	<b>-tum</b>	
sēro	-ēre	sēvi	sātum	sow
cerno	-ēre	crēvi	crētum	sift, discern
sperno	-ēre	sprēvi	sprētum	despise
sterno	-ēre	strāvi	strātum	strew
līno	-ēre	lēvi } livi }	litum	smear
sīno	-ēre	sīvi	sītum	allow
cognosco	-ēre	cognōvi	cognitum	know
creasco	-ēre	crēvi	crētum	grow
nosco	-ēre	nōvi	nōtum	know
pasco	-ēre	pāvi	pastum	feed (tr.)
abolesco	-ēre	abolēvi	—	decay
adolesco	-ēre	adolēvi	—	grow up
obsolesco	-ēre	obsolēvi	—	grow out of use
quiesco	-ēre	quīēvi	quietum	rest
suesco	-ēre	suēvi	suētum	grow accustomed

*Note.*—Adolesco has adjective adultus.

		<b>-ivī</b>	<b>-itum</b>	
arcesso	-ēre	arcessīvi	arcessitum	send for
incesso	-ēre	incessīvi	—	attack
lācesso	-ēre	laccessīvi	laccessitum	provoke
cāpresso	-ēre	capessīvi	capessitum	take in hand
cūpio	-ēre	cupīvi	cupitum	desire
sāpio	-ēre	sapīvi	—	be wise
quaero	-ēre	quaesīvi	quaesitum	seek
tēro	-ēre	trīvi	tritum	rub
		<b>-ūī</b>	<b>-tum</b>	
ālō	-ēre	alui	altum	nourish
cōlō	-ēre	colui	cultum	till, worship
consūlō	-ēre	consului	consultum	consult
occūlō	-ēre	occului	occultum	hide
pinso	-ēre	pinsui } pinsi }	pistum	beat, pound
sēro	-ēre	serui	sertum	join
texo	-ēre	texui	textum	weave
rāpio	-ēre	rapui	raptum	seize
		<b>-ūī</b>	<b>-itum</b>	
frēmo	-ēre	fremui	fremitum	bellow
gēmo	-ēre	gemui	gemitum	groan
mōlō	-ēre	molui	molitum	grind
strēpo	-ēre	strepui	strepitum	roar
trēmo	-ēre	tremui	—	tremble
vōmo	-ēre	vomui	vomitum	vomit
gigno	-ēre	genui	genitum	produce
pōno	-ēre	posui	positum	place
compesco	-ēre	compescui	—	restrain
		<b>-ūī</b>	<b>-sum</b>	
mētō	-ēre	mæssui	messum	reap
excellō	-ēre	excellui	—	excel

<i>Present</i>	<i>Infin.</i>	<i>Perfect</i> -ī	<i>Supine</i> -tum	
		(a) Reduplicated	-tum	
cāno	-ēre	cēcīni	cantum	<i>sing</i>
pungo	-ēre	pūpūgi	punctum	<i>prick</i>
tango	-ēre	tētīgi	tactum	<i>touch</i>
tendo	-ēre	tētendi	tentum (tensum)	<i>stretch</i>
disco	-ēre	dīdīci	—	<i>learn</i>
posco	-ēre	pōposci	—	<i>demand</i>
pārio	-ēre	pēpēri	partum	<i>bring forth</i>
			-sum	
cādo	-ēre	cēcīdi	cāsum	<i>fall</i>
caedo	-ēre	cēcīdi	caesum	<i>beat, kill</i>
curro	-ēre	cucurri	cursum	<i>run</i>
fallo	-ēre	fēfelli	falsum	<i>deceive</i>
parco	-ēre	pēperci	parsum	<i>spare</i>
pello	-ēre	pēpūli	pulsum	<i>drive</i>
pendo	-ēre	pēpendi	pensum	<i>hang</i>
tundo	-ēre	tūtūdi	tūsum } tunsum }	<i>bruise</i>
		Compounds of dō		
abdo	-ēre	abdīdi	abdītum	<i>hide</i>
addo	-ēre	addīdi	addītum	<i>add</i>
condo	-ēre	condīdi	condītum	<i>found, hide</i>
crēdo	-ēre	crēdīdi	crēdītum	<i>believe</i>
dēdo	-ēre	dēdīdi	dēdītum	<i>give up</i>
ēdo	-ēre	ēdīdi	ēdītum	<i>give forth</i>
perdo	-ēre	perdīdi	perdītum	<i>lose</i>
prōdo	-ēre	prōdīdi	prōdītum	<i>betray</i>
reddo	-ēre	reddīdi	reddītum	<i>restore</i>
subdo	-ēre	subdīdi	subdītum	<i>substitute</i>
trādo	-ēre	trādīdi	trādītum	<i>deliver</i>
vendo	-ēre	vendīdi	vendītum	<i>sell</i>

*Note.*—Pereo, *perish*, veneo, *go for sale*, are used as Passives of perdo and vendo.

### Reduplicated from stō

sisto	-ēre	-stīti	-stātum	<i>make to stand</i>
		(b) Lengthened Stem,	-tum	
ēmo	-ēre	ēmi	emptum	<i>buy</i>
lēgo	-ēre	lēgi	lectum	<i>choose, read</i>
rumpo	-ēre	rūpi	ruptum	<i>break</i>
vinco	-ēre	vici	victum	<i>conquer</i>
linquo	-ēre	liqui	-lictum	<i>leave</i>
cāpio	-ēre	cēpi	captum	<i>take</i>
fūgio	-ēre	fūgi	fugitum	<i>fly</i>
āgo	-ēre	ēgi	actum	<i>do</i>
frango	-ēre	frēgi	fractum	<i>break (tr.)</i>
fācio	-ēre	fēci	factum	<i>make</i>
jācio	-ēre	jēci	jactum	<i>throw</i>

<i>Present</i>	<i>Infin.</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Supine</i>	
<b>Lengthened Stem -ī -sum</b>				
fundo	-ĕre	fūdi	fusum	<i>pour</i>
retundo	-ĕre	rettūdi	retusum	<i>beat back</i>
fōdio	-ĕre	fōdi	fossum	<i>dig</i>
ēdo	-ĕre	ēdi	esum	<i>eat</i>
<b>-ī -tum, -sum</b>				
bibo	-ĕre	bībi	bibitum	<i>drink</i>
ico	-ĕre	īci	ictum	<i>strike</i>
cūdo	-ĕre	cūdi	cusum	<i>stamp</i>
sīdo	-ĕre	sīdi	—	<i>settle</i>
viso	-ĕre	vīsi	visum	<i>visit</i>
psallo	-ĕre	psalli	—	<i>play on strings</i>
verro	-ĕre	verri	versum	<i>sweep</i>
verto	-ĕre	verti	versum	<i>turn (tr.)</i>
-cendo	-ĕre	-cendi	-censum	<i>kindle</i>
-fendo	-ĕre	-fendi	-fensum	<i>strike</i>
findo	-ĕre	fīdi	fissum	<i>cleave</i>
mando	-ĕre	mandi	mansum	<i>chew</i>
pando	-ĕre	pandi	pansum }	<i>open, spread</i>
prēhendo	-ĕre	prehendi	passum }	
scando	-ĕre	scandi	prehensum	<i>grasp</i>
scindo	-ĕre	scādi	scansum	<i>climb</i>
percello	-ĕre	percūli	scissum	<i>tear</i>
vello	-ĕre	velli (vulsi)	perculsum	<i>thrill</i>
			vulsum	<i>rend</i>
<b>U- Stems. -ī -tum</b>				
acūo	-ĕre	acūi	acūtum	<i>sharpen</i>
arguo	-ĕre	argui	argutum	<i>prove</i>
congruo	-ĕre	congrui	—	<i>come together</i>
exuo	-ĕre	exui	exutum	<i>put off</i>
induo	-ĕre	indui	indutum	<i>put on</i>
imbuo	-ĕre	imbui	imbutum	<i>tinge</i>
luo	-ĕre	lui	-lutum	<i>wash, atone</i>
mētuo	-ĕre	metui	—	<i>fear</i>
minuo	-ĕre	minui	minutum	<i>lessen</i>
adnuo	-ĕre	adnui	—	<i>nod</i>
pluo	-ĕre	plui }	—	<i>rain</i>
		pluvi }		
ruo	-ĕre	rui	rūtum }	<i>rush, fall</i>
			ruitum }	
spuo	-ĕre	spui	sputum	<i>spit</i>
statuo	-ĕre	statui	statutum	<i>set up</i>
sternuo	-ĕre	sternui	—	<i>sneeze</i>
suo	-ĕre	sui	sutum	<i>sew</i>
tribuo	-ĕre	tribui	tributum	<i>assign, render</i>
solvo	-ĕre	solvi	solutum	<i>loosen, pay</i>
vclvo	-ĕre	volvi	volutum	<i>roll (tr.)</i>



155

## IV. I- Stems.

<i>Present</i>	<i>Infin.</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Supine</i>	
		Usual Form.		
<b>-iō (-i-io)</b>	<b>-īre</b>	<b>-īvī</b>	<b>-ītum</b>	
audio	audīre	audivi	audītum	
Exceptions.				
		<b>-īvī</b>	<b>-tum</b>	
sēpēlio	-īre	sepelivi	sepultum	bury
		<b>-vī</b>	<b>-tum</b>	
scio	-īre	scivi	scitum	know
		<b>-uī</b>	<b>-tum</b>	
sālio	-īre	salui	—	dance
apērio	-īre	aperui	apertum	open
opērio	-īre	operui	opertum	cover
		<b>-sī</b>	<b>-tum</b>	
amīcio	-īre	amixi } amicui }	amictum	clothe
fulcio	-īre	fulsi	fultum	prop
haurio	-īre	hausi	haustum	drain
saepio	-īre	saepsi	saeptum	hedge in
sarcio	-īre	sarsi	sartum	patch
sancio	-īre	sanxi	sanctum	hallow
vincio	-īre	vinxi	vinetum	bind
		<b>-sī</b>	<b>-sum</b>	
sentio	-īre	sensi	sensum	feel
		<b>-ī</b>	<b>-tum</b>	
vēnio	-īre	vēni	ventum	come
compērio	-īre	comperi	compertum	find
repērio	-īre	repperi	repertum	discover

156

## DEPONENT VERBS.

## A- Stems (Perfect -ātus sum).

About 160, all regular.

157

## E- Stems (Perfect -ītus sum).

<i>Present</i>	<i>Infin.</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	
fāteor	-ēri	fassus sum	confess
liceor	-ēri	licitus sum	bid in auction
mēdeor	-ēri	—	heal
mēreor	-ēri	meritus sum	deserve
mīsēreor	-ēri	miseritus } misertus } sum	have pity on
tueor	-ēri	tuitus sum	protect
reor	-ēri	rātus sum	think

# 158 Semi-deponent Verbs.

<i>Present</i>	<i>Infin.</i>	<i>Perfect</i>		
audeo	-ēre	ausus sum	—	dare
gaudeo	-ēre	gāvisus sum	—	rejoice
sōleo	-ēre	sōlitus sum	—	be wont

# 159 Consonant and U- Stems (Perfect -tūs or -sūs sum).

amplector	-ī	amplexus sum		embrace
āpiscor	-ī	aptus sum		acquire
expergiscor	-ī	experrectus sum		waken
fātiscor	-ī	fessus sum		grow weary
fruor	-ī	fruitus sum		enjoy
fungor	-ī	functus sum		perform
grādiōr	-ī	gressus sum		step
īrascor	-ī	iratus sum		be angry
lābor	-ī	lapsus sum		glide
-miniscor	-ī	-mentus sum		have in mind
moriōr	-ī	mortuus sum		die
nanciscor	-ī	nactus	} sum	obtain
		nanctus		
nascor	-ī	natus sum		be born
nitor	-ī	nisus (nixus) sum		strive
pāciscor	-ī	pactus sum		bargain
pātior	-ī	passus sum		suffer
proficiscor	-ī	profectus sum		set out
quēror	-ī	questus sum		complain
ulciscor	-ī	ultus sum		avenge
vescor	-ī	—		feed on
līquor	-ī	—		melt
lōquor	-ī	locutus sum		speak
sēquor	-ī	secutus sum		follow

*Note.*—The form gressus is very rarely found except in Compounds. Morior has Future Participle moriturus.

# 160 Semi-deponent.

fido	-ēre	fisus sum	trust
------	------	-----------	-------

# 161 I- Stems (Perfect -ītus, -tus, or -sus sum).

blandior	-īrī	blanditus sum	flatter
expērior	-īrī	expertus sum	try
largior	-īrī	largitus sum	bestow
mōlior	-īrī	molitus sum	contrive
oppērior	-īrī	oppertus sum	wait for
ōrior	-īrī	ortus sum	arise
pōtior	-īrī	potitus sum	acquire
pūnior	-īrī	punitus sum	punish
sortior	-īrī	sortitus sum	take by lot
assentior	-īrī	assensus sum	agree
mētior	-īrī	mensus sum	measure
ordior	-īrī	orsus sum	begin

*Note.*—Orior has some forms like capior (133): orēris, orītur, ortus. Potior has potītur or potitur, potimur or potimur, potīrer or potērer.

162

## PARTICLES.

The Particles are for the most part old cases of Substantives or Adjectives, which have become limited to special uses as Adverbs, Prepositions or Conjunctions.

The oldest of these is the adverbial use, which was originally to limit or qualify the action expressed by the Verb, but was afterwards extended to qualify Adjectives, and sometimes other Adverbs.

Prepositions are Adverbs which have acquired the special use of standing before Nouns to express relations of place and time.

Many Conjunctions are also Adverbs which have come to be used merely as links between words or sentences.

163

## ADVERBS.

Adverbs are formed either from cases of Substantives, Adjectives or Participles, or from Pronoun roots. Those which are formed from Adjectives or Participles generally have comparison (85). Those which are derived from Pronoun roots have no comparison.

In regard to meaning, they are divided chiefly into Adverbs of (1) Manner; (2) Degree; (3) Cause; (4) Place; (5) Time; (6) Order.

The following are a few of each class :

164

## Adverbs of Manner :

<i>lentē, slowly.</i>		<i>celeriter, quickly.</i>
<i>facilē, easily.</i>		<i>sapienter, wisely.</i>
<i>falso, falsely.</i>		<i>vementer, strongly.</i>
<i>ultro, spontaneously.</i>		
<i>aequē,</i>	} <i>in like manner.</i>	<i>aliter, } otherwise.</i>
<i>perindē,</i>		<i>secus, } differently.</i>
<i>proindē,</i>		<i>ita, }</i>
<i>similiter,</i>		<i>sic, } so.</i>
<i>itīdem,</i>	} <i>in the same manner.</i>	<i>tam, }</i>
<i>quam, how?</i>		<i>adeo, so far.</i>
		<i>ut, as, how.</i>

165

## Adverbs of Degree :

<i>multum, much.</i>	<i>paullum, little.</i>
<i>quantum, how much.</i>	<i>tantum, so much.</i>
<i>satis, enough.</i>	<i>magis, more.</i>
<i>nimis,</i>	<i>potius, rather.</i>
<i>nimum,</i> } <i>too much.</i>	<i>potissimum, by preference.</i>
<i>valde, very.</i>	<i>parum, too little.</i>
<i>ferme,</i>	<i>magnopere, greatly.</i>
<i>fere,</i> } <i>almost.</i>	<i>vix,</i>
	<i>aegre,</i> } <i>scarcely.</i>

166

## Adverbs of Cause :

*ideo, idcirco, propterea, on that account.*

167

## Adverbs of Place:

Where: ubi, <i>where?</i>	hic, <i>here.</i>
ibi, } <i>there.</i>	ibidem, <i>in the same place.</i>
illic, }	alibi, <i>elsewhere.</i>
usquam, <i>anywhere.</i>	nusquam, <i>nowhere.</i>
Whither: quo, <i>whither?</i>	huc, <i>hither.</i>
eo, }	eodem, <i>to the same place.</i>
illuc, } <i>thither.</i>	usque, <i>so far.</i>
Whence: unde, <i>whence?</i>	hinc, <i>hence.</i>
inde, }	indidem, <i>from the same place.</i>
illinc, } <i>thence.</i>	hac, <i>by this way.</i>
quā, <i>by what way?</i>	eā, illac, <i>by that way.</i>

168

## Adverbs of Time:

When: quando, ubi, <i>when?</i>	tum, tunc, <i>then.</i>
nunc, modo, <i>now.</i>	jam, <i>now. already.</i>
simul, <i>at the same time.</i>	alias, <i>at another time.</i>
umquam, <i>ever.</i>	numquam, <i>never.</i>
semper, <i>always.</i>	interdum, <i>now and then.</i>
olim, }	mox, <i>by and bye.</i>
quondam, } <i>at some time.</i>	nuper, <i>lately.</i>
ante, <i>before.</i>	post, <i>after.</i>
demum, <i>at length.</i>	nondum, <i>not yet.</i>
How long: quam diu, <i>how long?</i>	tamdiu, <i>so long.</i>
diu, <i>long.</i>	usque, <i>continuously.</i>
jamdiu, <i>long since.</i>	
How often: quotiens, <i>how often?</i>	totiens, <i>so often.</i>
semel, <i>once.</i>	iterum, <i>a second time.</i>
saepe, <i>often.</i>	raro, <i>seldom.</i>
crebro, <i>frequently</i>	identidem, <i>repeatedly.</i>

169

## Adverbs of Order:

primum, <i>first.</i>	primo, <i>in the beginning.</i>
deinde, <i>in the next place.</i>	praeterea, }
deinceps, <i>afterwards.</i>	insuper, } <i>moreover.</i>
	denique, }
tertio, <i>thirdly.</i>	postremo, } <i>lastly.</i>

170

Sometimes an Adverb qualifies a sentence or phrase, rather than any particular word.

## Adverbs of

Affirmation: etiam, *also*; quidem, equidem, *indeed*; vero, *but*; plane, *quite*; sane, *certainly*; profecto, omnino, certe, *surely*, *by all means.*

Limitation: pariter, *alike*; simul, *together*; plerumque, *usually*; solum, tantum, modo, *only*; partim, *partly.*

Negation: non, haud, *not*; haudquaquam, neutiquam, *by no means.*

Doubt: fortasse, forean, forsitan, *perhaps*; forte, *by chance.*

Question: cur, quare, quamobrem? *why?* quomodo, quemadmodum, *quas, ut? how?*

171

## PREPOSITIONS.

Prepositions are placed before Nouns to show their relation to other words in the sentence. They are also compounded with Verbs to modify their meaning.

172 The following Prepositions are used with the Accusative :

ăd	to, at	juxtă	next to, beside
adversûs	{ towards, against	ôb	over against, on account of
adversum		pěněs	in the power of
antě	before	pěr	through
ăpūd	at, near, among	pōně	behind
circum	around	post	after, behind
circă, circîter	about	praetěr	beside, past
cîs, cîtră	on this side of	prōpě	near
contră	against	proptěr	near, on account of
ergă	towards	sēcundum	next, along, according to
extră	outside of, without	supră	above
infră	below	trans	across
întěr	between, amidst	ultră	beyond
întră	within	versûs, versum	towards

173 The following are used with the Ablative :

ă, ăb, abs	by, from	ex, ẽ	out of, from
absquẽ	without	palam	in sight of
clam	unknown to	prae	before, in front of
cōram	in the presence of	prō	before, for
cum	with	sîně	without
dẽ	from, concerning	tẽnũs	as far as, reaching to

*Note.*—Clam is also used with the accusative, but more rarely ; tẽnũs is placed after the Noun ; it is sometimes used with the Genitive.

174 The following take the Accusative when they denote motion towards, and the Ablative when they denote rest :

în	into, against, in, on	sũper	over, upon
sũb	up to, under	subtěr	under

175 Prepositions used only in Verb compounds are :

ambi, amb-, am-, an-	around	ambio,	go around
dis-	apart	dissolvo,	separate ; dirigo, direct
rẽd-, rẽ-	back, again	red-eo,	go back ; refero, bring back
sẽd-, sẽ-	apart	secedo,	step apart

176

## CONJUNCTIONS.

Conjunctions are : I. Co-ordinative (400); II. Subordinative (421-429).

177 I. Co-ordinative Conjunctions are :

Connective: et,  
-que,  
atque (adque), } *and*.  
ac,

neque, } *nor*.  
nec,  
etiam,  
quoque, } *also*.  
item,

Separative: aut, }  
vel, } *or, either*.  
-ve, }

sive, } *whether, or*.  
seu, }

Adversative: sed, } *but*.  
at (ast), }  
atqui, *but yet*.  
at enim, *but it will be said*.  
tamen, { *yet, however,*  
                  *nevertheless.*

autem, *but, now, however*.  
ceterum, }  
verum, } *but, moreover*.  
vero, }  
attamen, } *but never-*  
verumtamen, } *theless.*

Causal: nam, namque,  
enim, etenim, } *for*.

enimvero, *for indeed*.

Conclusive: ergo, }  
itaque, } *therefore*.  
igitur, }

quare, }  
quamobrem, } *wherefore*.  
quapropter, }  
quocirca, }

Comparative: ut, uti, }  
velut, veluti, } *as*  
sicut, sicuti, }  
ceu, }  
utpote, *as being*.

quomodo, } *as, how*.  
quemadmodum, }  
quam, *than, as*.

quasi, } *as it were*.  
tamquam, }

Interrogative: num, }  
-ne, }  
nonne, }

utrum—*an? whether—or*.

ne—*ne, or not?*

178 II. Subordinative Conjunctions are :

Consecutive: ut, *so that*.  
ut non, *so that not*.

quin, { *that not*.  
          *but that*.

Final: ut, *in order that*.  
neve, neu, { *and that not*.  
                  *and lest*.

ne, *lest*.

ut ne, *that not, lest*.

quo, { *whereby*.  
      *in order that*.

quominus, { *whereby not*.  
              *in order that*  
              *not.*



Causal: quod, <i>because</i> .		quia, <i>because</i> .	
cum, <i>since</i> .		quoniam, <i>since</i> .	
quippe, { <i>for as much as</i> . <i>seeing that</i> .		siquidem, <i>inasmuch as</i> .	
Temporal: cum (quum), <i>when</i> .		quando, <i>when</i> .	
ut, <i>when</i> .		ubi, <i>when</i> .	
dum, { <i>while</i> .		dum, { <i>until</i> .	
donec, { <i>so long as</i> .		donec, { <i>until</i> .	
quoad, { <i>so long as</i> .		quoad, { <i>until</i> .	
antequam, { <i>before that</i> .		quatenus, <i>how long</i> .	
priusquam, { <i>before that</i> .		postquam, <i>after that</i> .	
simul ac, <i>as soon as</i> .		quotiens, <i>as often as</i> .	
Conditional: si, <i>if</i> .		sin (si ne), <i>but if</i> .	
sive, { <i>whether</i> .		nisi, ni, <i>unless</i> .	
seu, { <i>or if</i> .		si non, <i>if not</i> .	
si modo, <i>if only</i> .		modo, { <i>only</i> .	
modo, dummodo, <i>provided that</i> .		tantum, { <i>only</i> .	
Concessive: etsi, { <i>even if, although</i> .		tametsi, <i>although</i> .	
etiamsi, { <i>even if, although</i> .		quamquam, { <i>however</i> .	
quamquam, { <i>however</i> .		utut, { <i>although</i> .	
utut, { <i>although</i> .		cum, <i>whereas, although</i> .	
cum, <i>whereas, although</i> .		ut, licet, <i>granting that, although</i> .	
Comparative: quasi (quam si), { <i>as if</i> .		ceu, { <i>as though</i> .	
ut si, { <i>as if</i> .		tamquam, { <i>as though</i> .	
velut si, { <i>as if</i> .			

179 The following pairs are often used as Correlatives :

et . . . et	} both . . . and	sive . . . sive	} whether . . . or
que . . . que		seu . . . seu	
que . . . et	} either . . . or	sic . . . ut,	so . . . as
aut . . . aut		ut . . . ita,	as . . . so
vel . . . vel	} neither . . . nor	ita . . . ut,	so . . . that
neque . neque		adeo . . . ut,	so far . . . that
nec . . . . . nec			
neve . . . neve			

180 INTERJECTIONS.

An Interjection is an exclamatory word, used either to draw attention or to express feeling. The most usual are :

O, O ! <i>oh !</i>	prō or prōh, <i>forbid it !</i>
A or āh, <i>alas !</i>	vae, <i>woe !</i>
ēheu, heu, ei, <i>alas !</i>	ēn, eccē, lo ! <i>behold !</i>



## SYNTAX.

### THE SIMPLE SENTENCE

#### Introductory Outline.

- 181** SYNTAX teaches how Sentences are made.  
Sentences are Simple or Compound.
- 182** A Simple Sentence has two parts :
1. The **Subject** : the person or thing spoken about ;
  2. The **Predicate** : that which is said about the Subject.
- 183** 1. The **Subject** must be a **Substantive**, or some word or words taking the place of a Substantive :
- A **Substantive** : *lex, the law* ;
- A **Substantive Pronoun** : *ego, I* ;
- An **Adjective, Participle, or Adjectival Pronoun** : *Romanus, a Roman* ; *iratus, an angry man* ; *ille, that (man)* ;
- A **Verb Noun Infinitive** : *navigare, to sail, or sailing* ;
- A **Phrase** : *satis temporis, enough time.*
- 184** 2. The **Predicate** must either be a **Verb** or contain a Verb, because it makes a statement or assertion about the Subject ; and it is usually a Verb Finite, which alone has the power of making direct statements.

185

## EXAMPLES OF THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

Subject.	Predicate.	Subject.	Predicate.
Lex	jubet.	Navigare	delectat.
Law	commands.	Sailing	delights.
Nos	paremus.	Satis temporis	datur.
We	obey.	Enough time	is given.

*Note.*—A single Verb may be a sentence. *Veni, vidi, vici, I came, I saw, I conquered*, comprises three sentences.

186

Some Verbs cannot by themselves form complete Predicates. The Verb *sum* is a complete Predicate only when it implies mere existence :

Seges	est	ubi.	Troja	fuit.	Ov.
Corn	is	where	Troy	was.	

It more often links the Subject with the Complement, which completes what is said about it.

187

Verbs which link a Subject and Complement are called **Copulative Verbs**.

Others besides *sum* are:—

appareo, <i>appear</i> ;	audio, <i>am called</i> ;	maneo, <i>remain</i> ;
evado, <i>existo, turn out</i> ;	videor, <i>seem</i> .	

The Passives of Verbs of *making, saying, thinking* (**Factitive Verbs\***) are also used as Copulative Verbs (206) :

fio (facio), <i>become or am made</i> ;	feror, <i>am reported</i> ;
appellor, <i>am called</i> ;	legor, <i>am chosen</i> ;
creor, <i>am created</i> ;	putor, <i>am thought</i> ;
declaror, <i>am declared</i> ;	vocor, <i>am called</i> .

188

Copulative Verbs have the same Case after them as before them.

\* These Verbs are called Factitive from *facere, to make*, because they contain the idea of making.

189 The Complement may be—

1. An **Adjective** or **Adjectival Word**.
2. A **Substantive**.

Subject.	Predicate.	
	Copulative Verb	Complement.
1. Leo <i>The lion</i>	est <i>is</i>	validus. <i>strong.</i>
2. Illi <i>They</i>	appellantur <i>are called</i>	philosophi. <i>philosophers.</i>

190 Many Verbs usually require another Verb in the Infinitive to carry on their construction; such are: soleo, *am wont*; possum, *am able*; queo, *can*; debeo, *ought*; volo, *wish*; conor, *endeavour*.

Solet legere.  
*He is wont to read.*

Possum ire.  
*I am able to go.*

These Verbs are called **Indeterminate**, and the Infinitive following them is called **Prolative**, because it carries on (proferit) their construction

191 A Simple Sentence may be enlarged in many ways.

The **Subject** may be qualified by Adjectives or Pronouns in Agreement, or may have words in Apposition added to it.

The **Verb** may be qualified by Adverbs or Adverbial phrases; it may have a Preposition with a Case, or some part of the Verb Infinitive depending on it; if Transitive, it has a Nearer Object and may have also a Remoter Object; if Intransitive, it may have a Remoter Object in the Dative.

The **Complement** may again be qualified by an Adjective or an Adverb, or by a Case of a Noun, or a Preposition with a Case.

## AGREEMENT.

## RULES OF THE FOUR CONCORDS.

- 192 I. A Verb agrees with its Subject in Number and Person :

Tempus fugit.  
*Time flies.*

Libri leguntur.  
*Books are read.*

- 193 II. An Adjective or Participle agrees in Gender, Number, and Case with the Substantive it qualifies :

Vir bonus bonam uxorem habet.  
*The good man has a good wife.*

Verae amicitiae sempiternae sunt. CIC.  
*True friendships are everlasting.*

- 194 III. When a Substantive or Pronoun is followed by another Substantive, so that the second explains or describes the first, and has the same relation to the rest of the sentence, the second Noun agrees in Case with the first, and is said to be in Apposition :

Nos liberi patrem Lollium imitabimur.  
*We children will imitate our father Lollius.*

Procas, rex Albanorum, duos filios, Numitorem et  
Amulium, habuit. LIV.  
*Procas, king of the Albans, had two sons, Numitor and Amulius.*

- 195 IV. The Relative qui, quae, quod, agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number and Person; in Case it takes its construction from its own clause (330) :

Amo te, mater, quae me amas.  
*I love you, mother, who love me.*

Quis hic est homo quem ante aedes video? PLAUT.  
*Who is this man whom I see before the house?*

Arbores multas serit agricola, quarum fructus non adspiciet. CIC.  
*The farmer plants many trees, of which he will not see the fruit.*



196 Notes on the Concords.

- I. 1.—The Verb *est, sunt*, is often understood, not expressed :

*Nihil bonum nisi quod honestum.* CIC.

*Nothing is good except what is virtuous.*

2. A Copulative Verb occasionally agrees with the Complement rather than with the Subject :

*Amantium irae amoris integratio est.* TER.

*The quarrels of lovers are the renewal of love.*

197 III. 1. A Substantive often agrees in Number and Gender with the Noun to which it is in apposition :

*Stilus, optimus et praestantissimus dicendi magister.* CIC.

*The pen, best and chief teacher of oratory.*

*Philosophia, vitae magistra.* CIC.

*Philosophy, the mistress of life.*

2. A Noun may be in apposition to a Personal Pronoun understood :

*Hannibal peto pacem.* LIV.

*I Hannibal sue for peace.*

COMPOSITE SUBJECT.

198 1. When two or more Nouns are united as the Subject, the Verb and Adjectives are usually in the Plural :

*Veneno absumpti sunt Hannibal et Philopoemen.* LIV.

*Hannibal and Philopoemen were cut off by poison.*

*Aetas, metus, magister eum cohibebant.* TER.

*Age, fear, and a tutor were restraining him.*

2. If the Persons of a Composite Subject are different, the Verb agrees with the first person rather than the second ; with the second rather than the third :

*Si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et Cicero valemus.* CIC.

*If you and Tullia are well, I and Cicero are well.*

3. When the Genders are different, Adjectives agree with the Masculine rather than with the Feminine :

Rex regiaque classis una profecti. LIV.  
*The king and the royal fleet set out together.*

4. If the things expressed are without life, the Adjectives are generally Neuter :

Regna, honores, divitiae, caduca et incerta sunt. CIC.  
*Kingdoms, honours, riches, are frail and fickle things.*

## 199

## Notes on the Composite Subject.

1. When several Subjects of the third person are united, the Verb is sometimes found in the Singular, agreeing with one only :

Nunc mihi nihil libri, nihil litterae, nihil doctrina prodest. CIC.  
*Now neither do books avail me, nor letters, nor does learning.*

2. If the union of two Subjects forms a single notion, the Verb may be Singular :

Senatus populusque Romanus intellegit. CIC.  
*The Roman senate and people understand.*

3. But sometimes when a Collective Noun is the Subject, although it is Singular in form, the Verb and Adjectives are Plural :

Pars militum capti, pars occisi sunt. LIV.  
*Part of the soldiers were taken captive, part were slain.*

Observe that the Adjectives agree in Gender with the individuals of which the Collective Noun is made up.

## THE CASES.

## THE NOMINATIVE AND VOCATIVE CASES.

## 200 The Subject of a Finite Verb is in the Nominative Case :

Anni fugiunt.

*Years flee.*

Labitur aetas. Ov.

*Time glides away.*

*Note.*—When an Infinitive, called Historic, is used for the Imperfect of a Finite Verb, the Nominative remains as the Subject (372):

Tum pius Aeneas umeris abscindere vestem. VERG.

*Then the pious Aeneas began to tear his vest from his shoulders.*

## 201 A Substantive joined to the Subject by a Copulative Verb is in the Nominative Case :

Cicero declaratus est consul. Cic.

*Cicero was declared consul.*

## 202 The Vocative stands apart from the construction of the sentence, with or without an Interjection (404) :

O sol pulcher, o laudande! HOR.

*O beauteous sun, worthy of praise!*

Pompei, meorum prime sodalium! HOR.

*O Pompeius, earliest of my comrades!*

*Note.*—The Nominative sometimes takes the place of the Vocative:

Audi, tu, populus Albanus. LIV.

*Hear, thou people of Alba.*

## THE ACCUSATIVE CASE.

## 203 The Accusative Case is used to express :

A. The Nearer Object of the Verb.

B. Place to which there is motion.

C. The idea contained in the Verb (Cognate Accusative).

D. Adverbial Relations.

### A. Accusative of Nearer Object.

- 204** The nearer Object of a Transitive Verb is in the Accusative Case :

*Agricola colit agros; uxor domum tuetur.*

*The farmer tills the fields; his wife takes care of the house.*

*Haec studia adulescentiam alunt, senectutem oblectant.*

*These studies nurture youth, and delight old age.* [Cic.]

- 205** *Note 1.*—Intransitive Verbs when compounded with Prepositions are often transitive :

*Antonius oppugnat Brutum, Mutinam circumsedet.* Cic.

*Antonius is making war on Brutus, and besieging Mutina.*

*Note 2.*—Some Compounds take two Accusatives :

*Caesar equites flumen transjecit.* CAES.

*Caesar threw his cavalry across the river.*

- 206** Factitive Verbs (verbs of *making, saying, thinking*) have a second Accusative in agreement with the Object :

*Ciceronem consulem populus declaravit.* SALL.

*The people declared Cicero consul.*

*Socrates totius se mundi civem arbitrabatur.* Cic.

*Socrates considered himself a citizen of the whole world.*

- 207** *Note.*—The Accusative is used as the Subject of the Infinitive to form a Clause which may be the Object of Verbs of *saying, thinking, and perceiving*, or the Subject of Impersonal Verbs (414).

*Solem fulgere videmus.*

*We see that the sun shines.*

- 208** Some Verbs of *teaching, asking, concealing* (*doceo, teach, flagito, demand, rogo, ask, oro, pray, celo, conceal*), take two Accusatives, one of the Person, the other of the Thing :

*Racilius primum me sententiam rogavit.* Cic.

*Racilius asked me first my opinion.*

Quid nunc te litteras doceam? CIRC.

*Why should I now teach you letters?*

Antigonus iter omnes celat. NEP.

*Antigonus conceals from all his line of march.*

in the Passive they keep the Accusative of the Thing:

Primus a Racilio sententiam rogatus sum.

*I was asked my opinion first by Racilius.*

*Note.*—Quaero, peto, take Ablative of the Person with a or ab: hoc a te peto, *this I ask of you.*

**209** *Note.*—Intransitive Verbs which express feeling sometimes take an Accusative of the Object which excites the feeling:

Non omnia quae dolemus queri possumus. CIRC.

*We cannot complain of all things which we grieve for.*

Virgas ac secures dictatoris horrent et tremunt. LIV.

*They shudder and tremble at the rods and axes of the dictator.*

*Note.*—An Accusative is used in exclamations, with or without an Interjection: Me miserum, *O wretched me!* O fragilem fortunam! *O fickle fortune!*

**210** *Note.*—Some Passive Verbs in poetry take an Accusative, when used reflexively. Such verbs are induor, *dress oneself*, exuor, *undress oneself*, cingor, *gird oneself*:

Inutile ferrum cingitur. VERG.

*He girds on the useless steel.*

Exuitur cornua. OV.

*She puts off her horns.*

A similar construction is frequently used with Passive Participles:

Virgines longam indutae vestem canentes ibant. LIV.

*Virgins marched singing, arrayed in long robes.*

Nascuntur flores inscripti nomina regum. VERG.

*Flowers spring up inscribed with names of kings.*

This construction is analogous to that of the Greek Middle Voice.

**211** B. Place to which Motion is directed is in the Accusative: eo Romam, *I go to Rome* (269, 273).

*Note.*—Similar are the phrases: pessum ire, *to go to the bad*; infitias ire, *to deny*; suppetias ire, *to march in aid*; venum ire, *to be sold*.

## C. Cognate Accusative.

- 212 Many Intransitive Verbs take an Accusative containing the same idea as the Verb, and often from the same stem :

Fortuna ludum insolentem ludit. HOR.  
*Fortune plays an insolent game.*

Modice et modeste melius est vitam vivere. PLAUT.  
*It is best to live one's life temperately and modestly.*

Itque reditque viam totiens. VERG.  
*He goes and returns the same way as often.*

*Note.*—The Cognate Accusative must have some more limited meaning than that which is contained in the Verb, either expressed by an Adjective or implied in the Noun itself : ludum insolentem ludere, *to play an insolent game* ; dicta dicere, *to say witty sayings*.

## D. Adverbial Accusative.

- 213 The Accusative of Respect is joined to Verbs and Adjectives, especially in poetry :

Tremet artus. VERG.                      Nūdæ lacertos. TAC.  
*He trembles in his limbs.              Bare as to the arms.*

Omnia Mercurio similis vocemque coloremque. VERG.  
*In all points like Mercury, both in voice and complexion.*

*Note 1.*—Adverbial Accusatives with Verbs and Nouns are very numerous : multum, *much* ; aliquid, *in some degree* ; cetera, *in other respects* ; id genus, *of that kind* ; id temporis, *at that time* : multum amare, *to love much* ; quid refert ? *what does it matter ?*

*Note 2.*—Neuter Adjectives and Pronouns are used in the Accusative by poets like Adverbs :

Dulce ridere.                      Lucidum fulgere. HOR.  
*To smile sweetly.                      To shine brightly.*

Dulce ridentem Lalagen amabo, dulce loquentem. HOR.  
*I will love the sweetly smiling, sweetly speaking Lalage.*

(For the Accusative of Extent see Time, 278, and Space, 281-3.)



THE DATIVE CASE.

**214** The Dative is the Case of the Person or Thing for whose interest anything exists or is done. It expresses :

- A. The person or thing *to* whom or which something is done : Dative of the Remoter Object.
- B. The person or thing *for* whom or which something is done : Dative of Advantage.

Special uses are : (a) Dative of Agent, (b) Ethic Dative, (c) Dative of Possessor, (d) Dative of Result, (e) Dative of Purpose.

A. Dative of the Remoter Object.

The Dative of the Remoter Object is used :

**215** 1. With Transitive Verbs of *giving, telling, showing, promising*, which take also an Accusative of the Nearer Object :

*Tibi librum sollicito damus aut fesso. HOR.*  
*We give you a book when you are anxious or weary.*

*Saepe tibi meum somnium narravi. CIC.*  
*I have often told you my dream.*

*Nobis spondet fortuna salutem. VERG.*  
*Fortune guarantees safety to us.*

**216** 2. With Intransitive Verbs of *pleasing, helping, sparing, pardoning, appearing, speaking, believing, obeying*, and their opposites. These Verbs have the Dative as their only Object :

*Victrix causa deis placuit sed victa Catoni. LUCAN.*  
*The conquering cause pleased the gods, but the conquered pleased Cato.*

*Imperio parent. CAES. Parce pio generi. VERG.*  
*They obey the command. Spare a pious race.*

*Imperat aut servit collecta pecunia cuique. HOR.*  
*Money amassed rules or serves every man.*

*Non possum dolori tanto resistere. CIC.*  
*I cannot withstand so great a sorrow.*

*Note.*— These Verbs contain the ideas of *being pleasing to, helpful to, obedient to, &c.*

- 217** Note.—Delecto, juvo, *delight*, laedo, *hurt*, gubernō, *govern*, rego, *rule*, jubeo, *command*, take an Accusative :

Multos castra juvant. HOR.      Animum rege. HOR.  
*The camp delights many.                      Rule the temper.*

Tempero, moderor, *govern*, *restrain*, take sometimes the Accusative, sometimes the Dative :

Hic moderatur equos qui non moderabitur irae. HOR.  
*This man controls horses who will not restrain his anger.*

- 218** 3. With Adjectives implying *nearness*, *fitness*, *likeness*, *help*, *kindness*, *trust*, *obedience*, or any opposite idea :

Hortus ubi et tecto vicinus jugis aquae fons. HOR.  
*Where is a garden, and near to the house a fount of flowing water.*

Quis amior quam frater fratri? SALL.  
*Who [is] more friendly than a brother to a brother ?*

Homini fidelissimi sunt equus et canis. PLIN.  
*The horse and the dog are most faithful to man.*

Turba gravis paci, placidaeque inimica quieti. LUCAN.  
*The crowd hostile to peace, unfriendly to tranquil rest.*

Note.—The following take Genitive or Dative: communis, *common*, proprius, *proper*. Affinis, *akin*, alienus, *foreign*, par, *equal*, sacer, *sacred*, superstes, *surviving*, take usually Dative, sometimes Genitive. Similis, *like*, takes usually Genitive, sometimes Dative. Adjectives of fitness as aptus, sometimes take Accusative with ad.

- 219** 4. More rarely with Substantives or Adverbs :

Nulla fides regni sociis. LUCAN.  
*No reliance is to be placed on partners in government.*

Justitia est obtemperatio legibus. CIC.  
*Justice is obedience to laws.*

Congruenter naturae vivendum est. CIC.  
*We must live agreeably to nature.*

Note 1.—Some Verbs, as credo, *believe*, entrust, fido, *trust*, suadeo, *persuade*, minor, *threaten*, gratulor, *congratulate*, are used both transitively and intransitively :

Perfidis se credidit hostibus. HOR.  
*He trusted himself to treacherous enemies.*

Non est, crede mihi, sapientis dicere: Vivam. MART.  
*It is not, believe me, the part of a wise man to say, 'I will live.'*

Note 2.—Nubo, *marry* (lit. *take the veil for*), and vaco, *have leisure for*, take the Dative :

His duobus fratribus duae Tulliae nupserant. LIV.  
*The two Tullias had married these two brothers.*  
 Philosophiae semper vaco. CIC.  
*I have always leisure for philosophy.*

Note 3.—The Verbs *irascor*, *feel angry*, *pugno*, *fight*, *certo*, *strive*, sometimes take a Dative : *sibi irascitur*, *he is angry with himself*.

220 Many Verbs, Transitive and Intransitive, are used with a Dative of the Remoter Object when compounded with the following Prepositions :

ad, ante, ab,	sub, super, ob,
in, inter, de,	con, post, and prae.

Also Verbs compounded with *bene*, *male*, *satis*.

(a) Transitive :

Gigantes bellum dis intulerunt. CIC.  
*The giants waged war against the gods.*  
 Praesentia confer praeteritis. LUCR.  
*Compare present things with past.*

(b) Intransitive :

His negotiis non interfuit solum sed praefuit. CIC.  
*He not only took part in these affairs, but directed them.*  
 Nullus in orbe sinus Baiis praelucet amoenis. HOR.  
*No bay in the world outshines the pleasant Baiae.*  
 Ceteris satisfacio semper, mihi numquam. CIC.  
*I always satisfy others, myself never.*

B. Dative of Advantage.

221 The person or thing for whose advantage or disadvantage something is done is in the Dative Case :

Tibi aras, tibi seris, tibi eidem metis. PLAUT.  
*For yourself you plough, for yourself you sow, for the same self you reap.*  
 Non solum nobis divites esse volumus. CIC.  
*We do not wish to be rich for ourselves alone.*  
 Sic vos non vobis mellificatis, apes! VERG.  
*Thus ye make honey not for yourselves, O bees!*

### Special Uses of the Dative.

- 222** (a) A Dative, commonly called the **Dative of the Agent**, is often used with the Gerundive, and occasionally with Passive Participles and with Adjectives in -bilis (381) :

Ut tibi ambulandum, sic mihi dormiendum est. Crc.  
*As you have to walk, I have to sleep.*

Magnus civis obit et formidatus Othoni. Juv.  
*A great citizen and one dreaded by Otho has died.*

Multis ille bonis flebilis occidit. Hor.  
*He died a cause of weeping to many good men.*

*Note.*—Rarely, in poetry, a Personal Passive takes a Dative :

Non intellegor ulli. Ov.  
*I am intelligible to none.*

- 223** (b) A Dative, called the **Ethic Dative**, is used, in familiar talk or writing, to express interest or call special attention :

Quid mihi Celsus agit? Hor.  
*Tell me what is Celsus about?*

Haec vobis per biduum eorum militia fuit. Liv.  
*This, mind you, was their style of fighting for two days.*

- 224** (c) The **Dative of the Possessor**, with esse, is used when emphasis is laid on the thing possessed, not on the possessor :

Est mihi plenus Albani cadus. Hor.  
*I have a cask full of Alban wine.*

Fons cui nomen Arethusa fuit. Crc.  
*A fountain of which the name was Arethusa.*

*Note.*—With such phrases as ‘cui nomen est’ a second Dative is sometimes joined by attraction: Volitans cui nomen asilo Romanum est (VERG.), *an insect of which the Roman name is ‘asilus.’* A like attraction occurs with other factitive and copulative verbs: Huic ego diei nomen Trinummo faciam (PLAUT.), *I will give to this day the name Trinummus.* Analogous to these are the attractions: Hoc mihi volenti est, non invito, *this is with my good will, not against it.* Mihi non licet esse neglegenti (Crc.), *I must not be negligent.*

- 225** (d) The Dative is used in connection with the Dative of the Person interested, to describe what some thing (or person) is or causes :

*Exitio est avidum mare nautis.* HOR.

*The greedy sea is a destruction to sailors.*

*L. Cassius quaerere solebat, 'cui bono fuisset.'* CIC.

*Lucius Cassius used to ask who had been the gainer (lit. 'to whom had it been for a good').*

*Note.*—The Dative of the Person interested is often not expressed.

*Nimia fiducia calamitati solet esse.* NEP.

*Too great confidence is wont to be a calamity (to men).*

*Exemplo est magni formica laboris.* HOR.

*The ant is an example of great industry.*

- 226** (e) The Dative may express the Purpose of action :

*Equitatum auxilio Caesari miserunt.* CAES.

*They sent the cavalry as a help to Caesar.*

*Note.*—Observe the phrases, *receptui canere*, to give the signal for retreat; *alimento serere*, to sow for food; *laudi vertere alicui*, to turn to the praise of someone; *vitio vertere alicui*, to impute as a fault to someone.

- 227** Sometimes the Dative is used in poetry for the place towards which there is motion :

*It clamor caelo,* VERG., a shout ascends towards heaven.

### THE ABLATIVE CASE.

- 228** The Ablative is the Case which defines circumstances; it is rendered by many Prepositions, *from*, *with*, *by*, *in*. Its uses may be divided into :

A. Ablative of Separation (*from*, *of*).

B. Ablative of Association (*with*).

C. Instrumental Ablative (*by*, *with*).

D. Ablative of 'Place where' (Locative, *in*, *at*).

## A. Pure Ablative.

- 229** 1. The **Ablative of Separation** is used with Verbs meaning *to remove, release, deprive*; with Adjectives such as *liber, free, solutus, released*, and also the Adverb *procul, far from*:

Cedes coemptis saltibus et domo. HOR.  
*You will depart from purchased glades and house.*

Populus Atheniensis Phocionem patriā pepulit. NEP.  
*The Athenian people drove Phocion from his country.*

Vacare culpā maximum est solacium. CIC.  
*To be free from blame is a very great comfort.*

Procul negotiis, solutus omni fenore. HOR.  
*Far from business, freed from all usury.*

- 230** 2. The **Ablative of Origin** is used with Verbs, chiefly Participles, implying descent or origin:

Atreus, Tantalo prognatus, Pelope natus. CIC.  
*Atreus, descended from Tantalus, and son of Pelops.*

- 231** 3. The **Ablative of Comparison** (expressing Difference) is used with Comparative Adjectives and Adverbs:

Nihil est amabilius virtute. CIC.  
*Nothing is more amiable than virtue.*

Neminem Lycurgo utiliorem Sparta genuit. VAL. MAX.  
*Sparta produced no man more serviceable than Lycurgus.*

*Note.*—This construction is equivalent to *quam, than*, with the Nominative or Accusative. 'Virtute' equals 'quam virtus'; 'Lycurgo,' 'quam Lycurgum.' With other cases than Nom. or Accus. *quam* must be used for comparison:

Nihilo amiciores Phaedriae quam Antiphoni. TER.  
*He is in no degree more friendly to Phaedria than to Antipho.*

(For 'Place whence' see 270, 274.)



## B. Ablative of Association.

**232** *Note.*—This includes the uses of an old case called the Sociative Case, expressing the circumstances associated with the Subject or the action of the Sentence.

**233** 1. The Ablative of Association is used with Verbs and Adjectives denoting *plenty, fulness, possession*: *abundo, abound, dono, present, praeditus, endowed with* (253):

*Villa abundat gallinā, lacte, caseo, melle.* CIC.

*The farm abounds in poultry, milk, cheese, honey.*

*Juvenem praestanti munere donat.* VERG.

*He presents the youth with a noble gift.*

*Legiones pulchris armis praeditae.* PLAUT.

*Legions furnished with splendid armour.*

*Note.*—*Dono* also takes the Accusative of the thing with Dative of the Person: *Caesar praedam militibus donat, Caesar gives the booty to the soldiers.*

**234** 2. The Ablative of Quality is used with an Adjective in agreement (255):

*Senex promissā barbā, horrenti capillo.* PLIN. MIN.

*An old man with long beard and rough hair.*

*Habuit fratrem Dumnorigem summā audaciā.* CAES.

*He had a brother Dumnorix of supreme audacity.*

**235** 3. Ablative of Respect:

*Pauci numero.*

*Few in number.*

*Natione Medus.*

*By birth a Mede.*

*Et corde et genibus tremit.* HOR.

*It trembles both in heart and knees.*

*Ennius, ingenio maximus, arte rudis.* OV.

*Ennius, mighty in genius, in art (is) rude.*

*Note.*—In the phrases *natu major, older, natu minor, younger, natu* is an Ablative of Respect.

**236** 4. The Ablative of the Manner in which something happens or is done has an Adjective in agreement with it; or it follows the Preposition *cum, with*:

*Jam veniet tacito curva senecta pede.* OV.

*Presently bent old age will come with silent foot.*

*Athenienses summā vi proelium commiserunt.* NEP.

*The Athenians began the battle with the greatest vigour.*

Magnā cum curā atque diligentia scripsit. CIC.  
*He wrote with great care and attention.*

*Note.*—More *majorum*, in the fashion of our ancestors, *pace tuā*, with your leave, *jure*, by right, *injuriā*, wrongfully, *ratione*, on principle, are Ablatives of Manner.

- 237** 5. The **Ablative Absolute** is a phrase, consisting of a Noun in the Ablative Case and a Participle, or another Noun, in agreement with it:

Regibus exactis consules creati sunt. LIV.  
*Kings having been abolished, consuls were elected.*

Pereunte obsequio imperium intercidit. TAC.  
*Obedience failing, government falls to pieces.*

Caesare venturo, Phosphore, redde diem. MART.  
*Caesar being on his way, star of morn, restore the day.*

Nil desperandum Teucro duce et auspice Teucro. HOR.  
*There must be no despair, Teucer being leader and Teucer omen-giver.*

Natus est Augustus consulibus Cicerone et Antonio. SUETON.  
*Augustus was born when Cicero and Antonius were consuls.*

Quid dicam hac juventute? CIC.  
*What can I say when our young men are of this stamp?*

*Note.*—The Ablative Absolute is equivalent to a shortened Adverbial Clause within the Sentence, serving to explain some circumstance which indirectly affects the action of the Sentence. It is called Absolute because it is independent in construction of the rest of the Sentence. A dependent clause joined to the Sentence by a Conjunction may be used instead of the Ablative Absolute. In the above example ‘Regibus exactis’ could be replaced by ‘Cum reges exacti essent,’ *when kings had been driven out.*

### C. Instrumental Ablative.

- 238** *Note.*—This Ablative includes the uses of the old Instrumental Case.

- 239** The **Agent** by whom something is done is in the Ablative Case, with the Preposition *a*, *ab*, after a Passive or Quasi-passive Verb (296, 300, 303).

- 240** 1. The **Instrument** by means of which something is done is in the Ablative Case without a Preposition :

*Hi jaculis, illi certant defendere saxis.* VERG.  
*These strive to defend with javelins, those with stones.*  
*Dente lupus, cornu taurus petit.* HOR.  
*The wolf attacks with his teeth, the bull with his horns.*  
*Opportuna loca armatis hominibus obsidet.* SALL.  
*He occupies convenient posts with armed men.*

- 241** 2. The **Ablative of the Cause** is used with Adjectives, Passive Participles, and Verbs :

*Coeptis immanibus effera Dido.* VERG.  
*Dido driven wild by her horrible designs.*  
*Oderunt peccare mali formidine poenae.* HOR.  
*The bad hate to sin through fear of punishment.*

- 242** 3. The **Deponent Verbs** *fungor*, *perform*, *fruor*, *enjoy*, *vescor*, *feed on*, *utor*, *use*, *potior*, *possess oneself of* (253). take an Ablative :

*Hannibal cum victoriā posset uti frui maluit.* LIV.  
*Hannibal, when he could use his victory, preferred to enjoy it.*  
*Numidae ferinā carne vescebantur.* SALL.  
*The Numidians used to feed on the flesh of wild animals.*

- 243** 4. The Adjectives *dignus*, *worthy*, *indignus*, *unworthy*, and the Transitive Verb *dignor*, *deem worthy*, also *contentus*, *contented*, and *fretus*, *relying on*, take an Ablative :

*Dignum laude virum Musa vetat mori.* HOR.  
*A man worthy of praise the Muse forbids to die.*  
*Haud equidem tali me dignor honore.* VERG.  
*I do not indeed deem myself worthy of such honour.*

*Note.*—*Opus est*, *usus est*, *there is need of*, take the Ablative.

*Ubi res adsunt, quid opus est verbis?* SALL.  
*When things are present, what is the need of words?*

- 244** 5. An **Ablative of the Measure** of difference is joined as an Adverb with Comparatives and Superlatives and, rarely, with Verbs :

*Sol multis partibus major est quam luna.* CIC.  
*The sun is many degrees larger than the moon.*

## Especially the Ablatives :

altero, hoc, eo, quo,  
nihilò and nimio,

dimidio, duplo, quanto, tanto,  
paullo, multo, aliquanto.

Quo plus habent, eo plus cupiunt.

*The more they have, the more they desire.*

Hibernia dimidio minor est quam Britannia. CAES.

*Ireland is smaller by half than Britain.*

**245** 6. The Ablative of Price is used with Verbs and Adjectives of *buying* and *selling* :

Vendidit hic auro patriam. VERG.

*This man sold his country for gold.*

Multorum sanguine victoria stetit. LIV.

*The victory cost (literally stood at) the blood of many.*

*Note.*—Ablatives of price are magno, *at a high price*; parvo, minime, vili, *at a low price* (257) :

Parvo fames constat, magno fastidium. SEN.

*Hunger costs little, daintiness much.*

## D. The Locative Ablative.

**246** The Locative is the Case of the Place at which something is or happens. Its distinct forms remain in the Singular in names of towns and small islands: Romae, *at Rome*; Corcyrae, *at Corcyra*; and in a few other words, as domi, *at home*. For the most part its uses have passed to the Ablative, and it is often difficult to distinguish between the two Cases, especially in the Plural, where their forms are identical. The Locative is sometimes used for a point of time: die septimi, *on the seventh day*; Kalendis, *on the Kalends*; Idibus, *on the Ides*.

*Note.*—The word animi in such phrases as anxius animi, *anxious*; pendere animi, *to waver in mind*, is probably Locative.

(For 'Place where,' see 268, 272[a].)

## THE GENITIVE CASE.

- 247** The Genitive is used to define or complete the meaning of another Noun on which it depends. It also follows certain Verbs.

The uses of the Genitive may be divided into :

- |                            |                        |
|----------------------------|------------------------|
| A. Genitive of Definition. | D. Partitive Genitive. |
| B. Possessive Genitive.    | E. Objective Genitive. |
| C. Genitive of Quality.    |                        |

## A. Genitive of Definition.

- 248** 1. The Genitive of Definition follows the Noun on which it depends :

Vox voluptatis.  
*The word pleasure.*

Nomen regis.  
*The name of king.*

*Note.*—But the name of a city is always placed in Apposition: *urbs Roma, the city of Rome.*

- 249** 2. The **Attributive Genitive** defines the Noun on which it depends like an Adjective :

Lux solis.  
*The light of the sun.*

Anni labor.  
*A year's toil.*

- 250** 3. The **Genitive of the Author** :

Ea statua dicebatur esse Myronis. Crc.  
*That statue was said to be Myro's.*

Legendi sunt vobis Platonis libri. Crc.  
*You should read the works of Plato.*

- 251** 4. The Genitive is often used in Impersonal construction with a Copulative Verb, followed by an Infinitive, where in English a word such as nature, part, characteristic, or mark, must be supplied to complete the meaning :

Cujusvis hominis est errare. Crc.  
*It is (the nature) of any man to err.*

Est adolescentis majores natu vereri. CIC.  
*It is a young man's (part) to reverence his elders.*

Tempori cedere habetur sapientis. CIC.  
*To yield to occasion is held (the mark) of a wise man.*

*Note.*—The word *proprium* is often used :

Sapientis est proprium nihil quod paenitere possit facere. CIC.  
*It is the characteristic of a wise man to do nothing which he may repent of.*

**252**     5. Verbs and Adjectives of *accusing, condemning, convicting, or acquitting* take a Genitive of the fault or crime :

Alter latrocinii reus, alter caedis convictus est. CIC.  
*The one was accused of robbery, the other was convicted of murder.*

Miltiades capitis absolutus pecunia multatus est. NEP.  
*Miltiades, acquitted of capital crime, was fined.*

*Note.*—Sometimes the Ablatives *nomine*, *on the ground of*, *crimine*, *on the charge of*, are used :

Themistocles crimine prodicionis absens damnatus est. NEP.  
*Themistocles was convicted while absent on the charge of treason.*

**253**     6. Verbs and Adjectives implying *want* and *fulness*, especially *egeo*, *indigeo*, *want*, *impleo*, *fill*, *potior*, *get possession of* (242), *plenus*, *full*, often take a Genitive (233) :

Virtus plurimae exercitationis indiget. CIC.  
*Virtue needs very much practice.*

Hanc juventutem spei animorumque implevere. LIV.  
*They filled these youths with hope and spirit.*

Romani signorum et armorum potiti sunt. SALL.  
*The Romans got possession of standards and arms.*

Acerra turis plena. HOR.  
*A pan full of incense.*



254

## B. Possessive Genitive.

Regis copiae. CIC.      Contempsi Catilinae gladios. CIC.  
*The king's forces.      I have braved the swords of Catiline.*

Singulorum opes divitiae sunt civitatis. CIC.  
*The means of individuals are the state's riches.*

Sometimes the Genitive depends on a Noun understood :

Hectoris Andromache. VERG.  
*Hector's (wife) Andromache.*

Ventum erat ad Vestae. HOR.  
*We had come to Vesta's (temple).*

## C. Genitive of Quality.

255

1. The Genitive of Quality has an Adjective in agreement :

Ingenui vultus puer ingenuique pudoris. JUV.  
*A boy of noble countenance and noble modesty.*

Memoriae felicioris est nomen Appii. LIV.  
*The name of Appius is of happier memory.*

256

2. Number and age are expressed by the Genitive :

Classis septuaginta navium.      Puer annorum novem.  
*A fleet of seventy ships.      A boy of nine years.*

257

3. Genitives of Value, magni, parvi, plurimi, minimi, nibili, are used with Verbs of *valuing* ; the Genitives tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris, are also used with Verbs of *buying* and *selling*, but not to express definite price.

Voluptatem virtus minimi facit.  
*Virtue accounts pleasure of very little value.*

Emit hortos tanti, quanti Pythius voluit. CIC.  
*He bought the gardens for as much as Pythius wished.*

Quanti id ēmit? Vili. PLAUT.  
*For how much did he buy it? For a low price.*

*Note.*—The Genitives flocci, nauci were used in the popular speech to express worthlessness, answering to the English expressions, *not worth a straw, a nut, &c.*

Judices rempublicam flocci non faciunt. CIC.  
*The judges make the republic of no account.*

## D. Partitive Genitive.

**258** The Genitive of a Noun which is distributed into parts is called a Partitive Genitive.

**259** 1. Any word denoting a definite part, whether Substantive, Adjective or Pronoun, is used with the Genitive of the whole of which it denotes a part.

(a) Substantives :

*Sic partem majorem copiarum Antonius amisit. CIC.*  
*Thus Antony lost the greater part of his forces.*

*Nemo mortalium omnibus horis sapit. PLIN.*  
*No one of mortals is wise at all times.*

(b) Pronouns or Pronominal Adjectives :

*Incertum est quam longa nostrum cujusque vita futura sit.*  
*It is uncertain how long the life of each one of us will be.*

*Elephanto beluarum nulla est prudentior. CIC.*  
*Of animals none is more sagacious than the elephant.*

(c) Numerals and Adjectives of number :

*Sulla centum viginti suorum amisit. EUTR.*  
*Sulla lost a hundred and twenty of his men.*

*Multae harum arborum mea manu sunt satae. CIC.*  
*Many of these trees were planted by my hand.*

(d) Comparatives and Superlatives :

*Major Neronum. HOR.*  
*The elder of the Neros.*

*Hoc ad te minime omnium pertinet. CIC.*  
*This belongs to you least of all men.*

*Totius Graeciae Plato doctissimus erat. CIC.*  
*Plato was the most learned man of all Greece.*

*Note 1.*—The Genitives *gentium*, of nations, *terrarum*, of countries, depend on Adverbs of Place: *ubi*, where, *eo*, thither, *quo*, whither, *longe*, far:

*Ubinam gentium sumus?* CIC.

*Where in the world are we?*

*Migrandum aliquo terrarum arbitror.* CIC.

*I think we must migrate to some part of the world.*

*Note 2.*—A Partitive Genitive is found in poetry with Verbs:

*Scribe tui gregis hunc.* HOR.

*Enlist this man in your train.*

*Fies nobilium tu quoque fontium.* HOR.

*Thou too shalt become one of famous fountains.*

**260**      2. Any word denoting quantity may be used with the Genitive of the whole in which such quantity is contained.

*Aliquid pristini roboris conservat.* CIC.

*He keeps somewhat of his old strength.*

*Dimidium facti qui coepit habet.* HOR.

*He has half done the work who has begun it.*

*Catilinae erat satis eloquentiae, sapientiae parum.* SALL.

*Catiline had plenty of eloquence, of wisdom too little.*

### E. The Objective Genitive.

**261**      *Note.*—The terms Subjective and Objective Genitive are used to express different relations of the Genitive to the Noun on which it depends. Thus *amor patris*, the love of a father, may mean either 'the love felt by a father' (where *patris* is a Subjective Genitive), or 'the love felt for a father' (where *patris* is an Objective Genitive).

**262**      An Objective Genitive is used with Verbal Substantives and Adjectives, especially Adjectives in -ax, and Participles which have the meaning of *love*, *desire*, *hope*, *fear*, *care*, *knowledge*, *ignorance*, *skill*, *power*.

(a) With Substantives:

*Erat insitus menti cognitionis amor.* CIC.

*Love of knowledge had been implanted in the mind.*

Difficilis est cura rerum alienarum. CIC.  
*The care of other people's affairs is difficult.*

(b) With Adjectives:

Avida est periculi virtus. SEN.  
*Valour is greedy of danger.*

Conscia mens recti famae mendacia risit. OV.  
*The mind conscious of right smiled at the lies of rumour.*

Homo multarum rerum peritus. CIC.  
*A man skilled in many things.*

Vir propositi tenax. HOR.  
*A man holding to his purpose.*

(c) With Participles:

Quis famulus amantior domini quam canis? COL.  
*What servant is fonder of his master than the dog is?*

**263** *Note.*—The Genitive of the Gerund is an Objective Genitive: *ars scribendi*, the art of writing. An Objective Genitive also follows the Ablatives *causā*, *gratiā*, *by reason of*, *by favour of*, *for the sake of*; *honoris causā*, *on the ground of honour*; *exempli gratiā*, *for an example*.

**264** *Mei*, of me, *tui*, of thee, *sui*, of him, *her*, *them*, *nostri*, of us, *vestri*, of you, are Objective Genitives:

Nicias tuā sui memoriā delectatur. CIC.  
*Nicias is delighted by your recollection of him.*

Si tibi cura mei, sit tibi cura tui. OV.  
*If you care for me, take care of yourself.*

The Possessive Pronouns, *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, *vester*, are used as Adjectives: *meus liber*, my book.

*Note.*—A Genitive understood in a Possessive Pronoun often has a Genitive agreeing with it:

Respublica meā unius operā salva erat. CIC.  
*The state was saved by my own unaided effort.*

- 265** Most Verbs of *remembering, forgetting, reminding, remembering, reminiscor, obliviscor*, usually take the Genitive, sometimes the Accusative. *Recordor* almost always takes the Accusative, rarely the Genitive.

Animus meminit praeteritorum. CIC.  
*The mind remembers past things.*

Res adversae admonent religionum. CIC.  
*Adversity reminds of religious duties.*

Nam modo vos animo dulces reminiscor, amici. OV.  
*For now I remember you, O friends, dear to my soul.*

The Adjectives corresponding to these Verbs, *memor, immemor*, always take a Genitive.

Omnes immemorem beneficii oderunt. CIC.  
*All hate one who is forgetful of a kindness.*

- 266** Verbs of *pitying, misereor, miserescor*, take a Genitive :

Nil nostri miserere. VERG.  
*You pity me not at all.*

Arcadii, quaeso, miserescite regis. VERG.  
*Take pity, I entreat, on the Arcadian king.*

Note 1.—*Miseror, commiseror* take an Accusative.

- 267** Note 2.—Verbs of *refraining and ceasing* and some Adjectives are used by poets with a Genitive in imitation of the Greek use ; especially by Horace :

Abstinet irarum. H <small>OR</small> .	Fessi rerum. V <small>ERG</small> .
<i>Refrain from angry words.</i>	<i>Weary of toil.</i>

Integer vitae, scelerisque purus. HOR.  
*Virtuous in life and pure from wrong.*

## PLACE, TIME, AND SPACE.

## Place.

- 268** Place where anything is or happens is generally in the Ablative case with a Preposition; sometimes without a Preposition (especially in poetry), an Adjective of place being attached to the Substantive:

Castra sunt in Italia contra rempublicam collocata. CIC.  
*A camp has been set up in Italy against the republic.*

Celsa sedet Aeolus arce. VERG.  
*Aeolus is seated on his high citadel.*

Medio sedet insula ponto. OV.  
*The island lies in mid ocean.*

- 269** Place whither is in the Accusative with a Preposition; but in poetry the Preposition is sometimes omitted:

Caesar in Italiam magnis itineribus contendit. CAES.  
*Caesar hastened with long marches into Italy.*

Italiam fato profugus Lavinaque venit litora. VERG.  
*Driven by fate he came to Italy and the Lavinian shores.*

- 270** Place whence is in the Ablative with *ab*, *ex*, or *de*:

Ex Asia transis in Europam. CURT.  
*Out of Asia you cross into Europe.*

- 271** In names of towns and small islands, also in *domus* and *rus*, Place where, whither, or whence is expressed by the Case without a Preposition.

- 272** (a) Place where, by the Locative:

Quid Romae faciam? JUV. | Is habitat Mileti. TER.  
*What am I to do at Rome? | He lives at Miletus.*

Philippus Neapoli est, Lentulus Puteolis. CIC.  
*Philip is at Naples, Lentulus at Puteoli.*

Si domi sum, foris est animus; sin foris sum, animus est domi. PLAUT.

*If I am at home, my mind is abroad: if I am abroad, my mind is at home.*



**273 (b) Place whither, by the Accusative :**

Regulus Carthaginem rediit. CIC.

*Regulus returned to Carthage.*

Vos ite domum; ego rus ibo.

*Go ye home; I will go into the country.*

**274 (c) Place whence, by the Ablative :**

Video rure redeuntem senem. TER.

*I see the old man returning from the country.*

Demaratus fugit Tarquinius Corintho. CIC.

*Demaratus fled from Corinth to Tarquinii.*

*Note.*—The Locative domi is used with a Genitive of the Possessor: domi Caesaris, *at the house of Caesar*; or with the Possessive: domi meae, *at my house*.

**275 The road by which one goes is in the Ablative :**

Ibam forte Viā Sacrā. HOR.

*I was going by chance along the Sacred Way.*

**Time.****276 Time at which, in answer to the question When? is expressed by the Ablative: hieme, in winter; solis occasu, at sunset :**

Ego Capuam veni eo ipso die. CIC.

*I came to Capua on that very day.*

**277 Time within which, generally by the Ablative :**

Quicquid est biduo sciemus. CIC.

*Whatever it is, we shall know in two days.*

**278 Time during which, generally by the Accusative :**

Pericles quadraginta annos praeftit Athenis. CIC.

*Pericles was leader of Athens forty years.*

*Note 1.*—Often by per with the Accusative: per triduum, *for three days*.

*Note 2.*—Age is expressed by the participle natus, *born*, used with the Accusative, sometimes with the Ablative :

Cato quinque et octoginta annos natus excessit e vita. CIC.

*Cato died aged eighty-five years.*

**279** How long ago, is in the Accusative or Ablative with *abhinc* :

Hoc factum est ferme abhinc biennium. PLAUT.

*This was done about two years ago.*

Comitia jam abhinc triginta diebus habita. CIC.

*The assembly was held thirty days ago.*

**280** To express **How long before, How long after**, the words *ante, before, post, after*, are used either with the Ablative as Adverbs, or with the Accusative as Prepositions, followed by *quam* :

Numa annis permultis ante fuit quam Pythagoras. CIC.

*Numa lived very many years before Pythagoras.*

(or, Numa ante permultos annos fuit quam.)

Post diem tertium gesta res est quam Clodius dixerat. CIC.

*The affair took place three days after Clodius had spoken.*

(or, Die tertio post gesta res est quam.)

**Space.****281** Space over which motion takes place, is in the Accusative :

Milia tum pransi tria repimus. HOR.

*Then having had luncheon we crawl three miles.*

**282** Space which lies between, is in the Accusative or in the Ablative :

Marathon abest ab Athenis circiter milia passuum decem. NER.

*Marathon is distant from Athens about ten miles.*

Aesculapii templum quinque milibus passuum ab Epidaurō distat. LIV.

*The temple of Aesculapius is five miles distant from Epidaurus.*

**283** Space of measurement, answering the questions how high ? how deep ? how broad ? how long ? is generally in the Accusative :

Erant muri Babylonis ducenos pedes alti. PLIN.

*The walls of Babylon were two hundred feet high.*

PREPOSITIONS.

**284** Prepositions, like the case-endings, shew the relations of Nouns to other words, and they are used where these relations cannot be clearly expressed by the case-endings alone. Almost all Prepositions take the Accusative or the Ablative case; they are usually placed before the Noun.

**285** Prepositions with Accusative.

**Ad**, *to, towards*, with Accusative of Motion *to*; *at*: *ad urbem ire, to go to the city*; *ad summam senectutem, to extreme old age*; *ad octingentos caesi, there were slain to the number of 800*; *pugna ad Alliam, the battle at the Allia*; *ad primam lucem, at daybreak*; *ad hoc, moreover*; *ad tempus, for a time*; *ad verbum, word for word*; *nihil ad Atticum, nothing to (in comparison with) Atticus*; *nihil ad rem, nothing to the purpose*.

**Adversus, Adversum**, *towards, against, opposite to*: *adversum Antipolim, opposite to Antipolis*; *reverentia adversus senes, respect towards the aged*.

**Apud**, *at, near* (used chiefly with persons, rarely with places): *apud me, at my house*; *apud veteres, among the ancients*; *apud Homerum, in Homer's works*; but in *Iliade Homeri, in Homer's Iliad*.

**Ante**, *before*: { *ante oculos, before one's eyes*; *ante meridiem, before noon*; *ante aliquem esse, to surpass someone*; *post*  
**Post**, *behind, after*: { *terga, behind the back*; *post mortem, after death*.

**Pone**, *behind*: *pone nos, behind us*.

**Circum, Circa**, *around, about* (in Place).

**Circa, Circiter**, *about* (in Time, Number).

*Circum caput, round the head*; *circa forum, around the forum*.

*Circa primam lucem, about daybreak*; *circa, circiter triginta, about thirty*.

**Cis, Citra**, *on this side of*: *cis Alpes, on this side of the Alps*.

**Trans**, *across*: *trans Rhenum ducere, to lead across the Rhine*; *trans Alpes, on the further side of the Alps*.

**Ultra**, *beyond*: *ultra Euphratem, beyond the Euphrates*; *ultra vires, beyond their powers*.

**Contra**, *against, opposite to*: *contra hostem, against the enemy*; *contra arcem, opposite to the citadel*.

**Erga**, *towards* (not used of Place): *erga aliquem benevolus, feeling kindly towards someone*.

**Extra**, *outside of, without*: *extra muros, outside the walls*; *extra culpam, free from blame*.

**Intra**, *within*: *intra muros, within the walls*; *intra viginti dies, within twenty days*.

**Inter**, *between* (in Place): *during* (in Time), *among*; *inter urbem et Tiberim, between the city and the Tiber*; *inter silvas, among the woods*; *inter cenandum, during dinner*; *constat inter omnes, all are agreed*; *inter nos, between ourselves*; *inter se amant, they love each other*.

- Infra**, *under, beneath*: *infra caelum, under the sky; infra dignitatem, beneath one's dignity.*
- Supra**, *over, above*: *supra terram, above the ground; supra milia viginti, more than twenty thousand.*
- Juxta**, *adjoining to, beside*: *juxta viam, adjoining the road; juxta deos, next to the gods.*
- Ob**, *over against, on account of*: *mihi ob oculos, before my eyes; quam ob rem, wherefore.*
- Penes**, *in the power of*: *penes me, in my power; penes te es? are you in your senses?*
- Per**, *through (by)*: *per vias, through the streets; per vim, by force; per me licet, I give leave; per te deos oro, I pray you by the gods; per exploratores certior fio, I ascertain through scouts.*
- Praeter**, *beside, past, along*: *praeter ripam, along the bank; praeter omnes, beyond all others; praeter me, except me; praeter opinionem, contrary to expectation.*
- Prope**, *near*: *prope amnem, near the river; prope lucem, towards day-break.*
- Propter**, *on account of, (rarely of Place) near, close to*: *propter aquam, close to the water's edge; propter hoc, on that account.*
- Secundum**, *next, along, according to (following)*: *secundum vos, next to (behind) you; secundum litus, along the shore; secundum legem, in accordance with the law; secundum nos, in our favour.*
- Versus**, *towards (following the Noun)*: *Italiam versus, towards Italy.*

## 286

## Prepositions with Ablative.

- A, ab**, *from, by*: *ab eo loco, from that place; ab ortu ad occasum, from East to West; procul a patria, far from one's country; prope abesse ab, to be near; a tergo, in the rear; a senatu stetit, he took the side of the senate; hoc a me est, this is in my favour; ab urbe condita, from the foundation of Rome; servus ab epistulis, secretary; non ab re fuerit, it will not be irrelevant; ab ira facere, to do in anger.*
- Absque**, *without (rare)*: *absque vobis esset, if it were not for you.*
- Clam**, *unknown to*: *clam vobis, unknown to you. Clam sometimes takes the Accusative: clam patrem.*
- Palam**, *in sight of*: *palam omnibus, in sight of all.*
- Coram**, *in the presence of*: *coram populo, in the presence of the people.*
- Cum**, *with*: *cum aliquo congruere, certare, to agree, strive with someone; magno cum periculo, with great danger; with me, te, nobis, vobis, often with quo, quibus, cum follows the Pronoun; mecum, with me.*
- Sine**, *without*: *sine regibus, without kings; sine dubio, without doubt.*
- De**, *from (down from), concerning*: *de monte, down from the mountain; de die, in the daytime; de die in diem, from day to day; unus de multis, one out of many; de marmore signum, a marble bust; de pace, concerning peace; quid de nobis fiet, what will become of us? de industria, on purpose; de more, according to custom; de integro, anew.*

**Ex, E,** *out of, from*: *ex urbe, out of the city*; *e longinquo, from far*; *ex equis pugnant, they fight on horseback*; *diem ex die, from day to day*; *ex eo audiui, I heard it from him*; *unus ex illis, one of those*; *ex quo, from the time when*; *e republica, for the good of the State*; *ex sententia, satisfactorily*; *ex parte, in part*; *ex occulto, secretly*.

**Prae,** *before, in front of (for)* (Place rarely, chiefly used in idioms): *prae se fert speciem viri boni, he wears the semblance of a good man*; *prae nobis beatus es, you are happy compared with us*; *prae gaudio ubi sim nescio, I do not know where I am for joy*.

**Pro,** *before, for*: *pro foribus, before the door*; *pro patria mori, to die for one's country (in defence of)*; *mihi pro parente fuit, he was in the place of a parent to me*; *pro certo hoc habui, I held this for certain*; *pro rata parte, in proportion*; *pro re, according to circumstances*.

*Note.*—**Prae** means *in advance of*; **pro**, *standing for, defending*.

**Tenus,** *as far as* (always following the Noun): *verbo tenus, so far as the word goes*. Sometimes with Genitive: *Corcyrae tenus, as far as Corcyra*; especially with a plural Noun: *crurum tenus, as far as the legs*.

## 287

## Prepositions with Accusative or Ablative.

**In,** *into, to, towards, against*; with Accusative: *ibo in Piraeum, I will go into the Piraeus*; *in orbem ire, to go round*; *liberalis in milites, liberal towards the troops*; *Cicero in Verrem dixit, Cicero spoke against Verres*; *in aeternum, for ever*; *in vicem, in turn*; *in poenam dare, to deliver to punishment*; *venire in conspectum, to come into sight*.

**In,** *in, among, on*; with Ablative: *in urbe Roma, in the city of Rome*; *in oculis esse, to be before one's eyes*; *in tempore, at the right time*; *in dicendo, while speaking*; *in bonis habere, to count among blessings*; *in Ganymede, in the case of Ganymede*; *in eo reprehendere quod, to blame on the score that*.

**Sub,** *up to*; with Accusative: *sub montem venire, to come close to the foot of the mountain*; *sub lucem, towards daybreak*; *sub haec dicta, just after these things were said*.

**Sub,** *under*; with Ablative: *sub terra, underground*; *sub monte esse, to be beneath the mountain*; *sub poena, under penalty of*.

**Subter,** *underneath*: with Acc., *subter murum venire, to come close to the wall*. Abl., *subter litore esse, to be close to the shore*.

**Super,** *over*; with Accusative: *super terram, over the ground*; *super omnia, above all*.

**Super,** *upon*; with Ablative: *super foco, on the hearth*; *super Hectore, about Hector*.



## IMPERSONAL VERBS.

## Case Construction.

- 288** The following verbs of *feeling* take an Accusative of the person with a Genitive of the cause: **miseret, piget, paenitet, pudet, taedet** :

Miseret te aliorum, tui te nec miseret nec pudet. PLAUT.  
*You pity others, for yourself you have neither pity nor shame.*

Me civitatis morum piget taedetque. SALL.  
*I am sick and weary of the morals of the state.*

- 289** **Decet, dedecet** take an Accusative of the person with an Infinitive :

Oratorem irasci minime decet, simulare non dedecet. CIC.  
*It by no means becomes an orator to feel anger, it is not unbecoming to feign it.*

Si me gemmantia dextrā sceptrā tenere decet. OV.  
*If it befits me to hold in my right hand the jewelled sceptre.*

- 290** **Libet, licet, liquet, contingit, convenit, evenit, expedit**, take a Dative :

Ne libeat tibi quod non licet. CIC.  
*Let not that please you which is not lawful.*

Licet nemini contra patriam ducere exercitum. CIC.  
*It is not lawful for anyone to lead an army against his country.*

- 291** **Interest**, *it is of importance, it concerns*, is used with the Genitive of the person or thing concerned, but with the feminine Ablatives *meā, tuā, suā, nostrā, vestrā* of the Possessive Pronouns :

Interest omnium recte facere. CIC.  
*It is for the good of all to do right.*

Et tuā et meā interest te valere. CIC.  
*It is of importance to you and to me that you should be well.*



- 292** *Rēfert, it concerns, it matters*, is also used with the feminine Ablatives of the Possessive Pronouns :

*Quid me ā rēfert cui serviam?* PHAED.

*What does it matter to me whom I serve?*

*Note 1.*—Rarely with a Genitive: *quorum nihil rēfert*, QUINT., *whom it does not at all concern.*

*Note 2.*—The Genitives of Value, *magni, parvi, tanti, quanti, pluris*, are often joined with interest and *rēfert* :

*Illud meā māgni interest te ut videam.* CIC.

*It is of great importance to me that I should see you.*

*Hoc non pluris rēfert quam si imbrem in cribrum geras.* PLAUT.

*This avails no more than if you pour rain-water into a sieve.*

- 293** *Pertinet, attinet* take an Accusative with *ad* :

*Nihil ad me attinet.* TER.

*It does not concern me at all.*

- 294** *Oportet* is used with the Accusative and Infinitive clause, or with the Conjunctive alone; rarely with the Prolative Infinitive (369) :

*Legem brevem esse oportet.* CIC.

*It behoves that a law be brief.*

*Me ipsum ames oportet, non mea.* CIC.

*You ought to love me, not my possessions.*

*Vivere naturae si convenienter oportet.* HOR.

*If it behoves to live agreeably to nature.*

- 295** *Note.*—*Coepit, debet, desinit, potest, solet* are used impersonally with an Impersonal Infinitive :

*Pigere eum facti coepit.* JUST.

*It began to repent him of his deed.*

*Perveniri ad summa sine industria non potest.* QUINT.

*One cannot reach the highest without industry.*

## **296** PASSIVE CONSTRUCTION.

When a sentence is changed from the Active to the Passive form :

- (a) The Object of a Transitive Verb becomes the Subject ; the Subject becomes the Agent in the Ablative with the Preposition *a* or *ab* :

{ *Numa leges dedit.* CIC.

*Numa gave laws.*

{ *Numa leges datae sunt.*

*Laws were given by Numa.*

- 297 (b) Factitive Verbs and Verbs of saying and thinking become Copulative :

{	Clodium plebs tribunum creavit.	<i>The plebs elected Clodius tribune.</i>
	Clodius a plebe creatus est tribunus.	<i>Clodius was elected tribune by the plebs.</i>

- 298 (c) Transitive Verbs which have two Objects in the Accusative, the Person and the Thing, keep the Accusative of the Thing in the Passive form :

{	Rogas me sententiam.	<i>You ask me my opinion.</i>
{	Rogor a te sententiam.	<i>I am asked by you my opinion.</i>

- 299 Intransitive Verbs are used impersonally in the Passive.

- 300 (a) The Subject of an Intransitive Verb in Passive construction becomes the Agent in the Ablative :

Nos currimus.	}	<i>We run.</i>
A nobis curritur.		

- 301 or the Agent may be omitted :

Sic imus ad astra.	}	<i>Thus we go to the stars.</i>
Sic itur ad astra. VERG.		

Acrius utrimque usque ad vesperum pugnatum est. CAES.  
*There was fierce fighting on both sides until the evening.*

- 302 (b) Intransitive Verbs which take the Dative keep it in the Passive :

Mihi isti nocere non possunt.	}	<i>They cannot hurt me.</i>
Mihi ab istis noceri non potest. CIC.		

Nihil facile persuadetur invitis. QUINT.  
*The unwilling are not easily persuaded of anything.*

- 203 Note.—The Ablative of the Agent is used with Quasi-Passive Verbs :

Malo a cive spoliari quam ab hoste vñire. QUINT.  
*I would rather be despoiled by a citizen than be sold by a foe.*

## ADJECTIVES.

- 304** Some Adjectives are used as Substantives to express persons or things: sapiens, *a wise man*; boni, *the good*; Romani, *the Romans*; omnia, *all things*; multa, *many things*; bona, *goods*.

Bonos boni diligunt. CIC.

*The good love the good.*

Aiunt multum legendum esse, non multa. CIC.

*They say that much should be read, not many things.*

- 305** Neuter Adjectives are used for Abstract Substantives: verum or vera, *the truth*.

Omne tulit punctum qui miscuit utile dulci. HOR.

*He who has combined the useful with the pleasing has won every vote.*

- 306** Some Adjectives, when used as Substantives, can be qualified by other Adjectives: amicus, *friend*; vicinus, *neighbour*; dextra, *right hand*; maiores, *ancestors*.

Vetus vicinus ac necessarius. CIC.

*An old neighbour and intimate acquaintance.*

- 307** Medius, *middle*, and superlatives of position in place and time, as summus, imus, primus, ultimus, are used with a partitive force: medio ponto, *in mid ocean*; ad imam quercum, *at the foot of the oak*:

Prima luce summus mons a Labieno tenebatur. CAES.

*At dawn of day the mountain top was held by Labienus.*

*Note.*—The singular forms of ceteri, *the rest* (of which the masc. nom. sing. is wanting), are similarly used with collective nouns: cetera turba, *the rest of the crowd*; a cetero exercitu, *by the rest of the army*.

- 308** Adjectives are used adverbially when they qualify the Verb rather than the Substantive:

Socrates laetus venenum hausit. SEN.

*Socrates drank the poison cheerfully.*

Matutinus ara. VERG.

*Plough at morn.*

Vespertinus pete tectum. HOR.

*At eventide go home.*

Hannibal primus in proelium ibat, ultimus excedebat. LIV.  
*Hannibal was the first to go into battle, the last to withdraw.*

### Comparative and Superlative Adjectives.

**309 Superlatives** often express a very high degree, and not the highest :

Ego sum miserior quam tu, quae es miserrima. CIC.  
*I am more wretched than you, who are very wretched.*

**310 Comparatives** may also express a certain degree, without special comparison : longior, *rather long* ; senior, *elderly*. After a Comparative with quam, a second Comparative is often used :

Aemilii contio fuit verior quam gratior populo. LIV.  
*The harangue of Aemilius was more truthful than popular.*

*Note.*—Comparatives and Superlatives are often strengthened by adverbs and adverbial phrases : multo carior, *much dearer* ; longe carissimus, *far dearest* ; vel minimus, *the very least* ; quam maximus, *the greatest possible*.

### Numeral Adjectives.

**311 Cardinals** : Unus, apart from other Numerals, is used only to give emphasis ; it often means *the one of all others* :

Demosthenes unus eminet inter omnes oratores. CIC.  
*Demosthenes is pre-eminent among all orators.*

Mille is used as an indeclinable Adjective ; sometimes as a Substantive taking the Genitive after it ; milia is always used as a Substantive, followed by a Genitive :

Mille greges illi. OV.                      Mille annorum. PLAUT.  
*He had a thousand flocks.              A thousand years.*

Quattuor milia hominum Capitolium occupavere. LIV.  
*Four thousand men seized the Capitol.*

If a smaller number is added to milia, the compound number becomes adjectival : tria milia et sexcenti homines, *three thousand six hundred men*.

**312 Ordinals** are used in expressing time : but in compound numbers unus is used for primus : uno et octogesimo anno, *in the eighty-first year* :

Octavus annus est ex quo Britanniam vicistis. TAC.  
*It is the eighth year since you conquered Britain.*

*Note.*—Unus, alter, tertius, &c., are used for *a first, a second, a third*, where the order is of no importance, as distinguished from the regular ordinals, primus, secundus, tertius, which can only mean *the first, the second, &c.*

### 313 Distributives express *how many each* or *at a time* :

Militibus quini et viceni denarii dati sunt. LIV.  
*Twenty-five denarii were given to each soldier.*

*Note 1.*—With a Substantive of plural form Distributives are used, but the plural of unus is used instead of singuli :

Una castra jam facta ex binis videbantur. CAES.  
*One camp now seemed to have been formed from two.*

*Note 2.*—Bini is used for a pair :

Pamphilus binos habebat scyphos sigillatos. CIC.  
*Pamphilus had in use a pair of embossed cups.*

### 314 After plus, amplius, minus, quam is often left out before Numerals :

Romani paulo plus sexcenti ceciderunt. LIV.  
*Rather more than six hundred Romans fell.*

## PRONOUNS.

### 315 The Personal Pronoun is usually expressed only by the Verb ending, but is sometimes added for emphasis :

Ego reges ejeci, vos tyrannos introducitis. CIC.  
*I expelled kings, ye are bringing in tyrants.*

*Note.*—Nos is often used for ego, and noster for meus, but vos is not used for tu, nor vester for tuus.

### 316 The Reflexive Pronoun se, sese, sui, sibi, refers to the Subject in a Simple Sentence (464) :

Fur telo se defendit. CIC.  
*The thief defends himself  
 with a weapon.*

Ira sui impotens est. SEN.  
*Anger is not master of itself.*



*Iratus cum ad se rediit, sibi tum irascitur.* PUBL. SYR.

*When an angry man has come to himself he is angry with himself.*

*Deforme est de se ipso praedicare.* CIC.

*It is bad taste to boast of oneself.*

*Note 1.*—There is no Reciprocal Pronoun in Latin; **se** with **inter** is used reciprocally: *inter se amant, they love each other.*

*Note 2.*—In the First and Second Persons, **me**, **te**, are used reflexively with **ipse**; *me ipse consolor, I console myself.*

- 317** The Possessive **suus**, formed from the Reflexive, is used to express *his own, their own*, when emphasis is required, and usually refers to the Subject of the Verb:

*Nemo rem suam emit.*

*No one buys what is his own.*

sometimes to other cases if the context shows that it cannot be referred to the Subject:

*Suis flammis delete Fidenas.* LIV.

*With its own flames destroy Fidenae.*

**Suus** is especially used in combination with **quisque**:

*Suus cuique erat locus attributus.* CAES.

*To each man his own place had been assigned.*

- 318** **Ejus** is the Possessive used of the Third Person where no emphasis is required, and does not refer to the Subject.

*Chilius te rogat, et ego ejus rogatu.* CIC.

*Chilius asks you, and I at his request.*

*Note.*—The Possessive Pronouns are often omitted when the meaning is clear without them: *fratrem amat, he loves his brother.*

- 319** **Hic, ille** are often used in contrast: **hic** usually meaning *the latter*, **ille** *the former*:

*Quocumque adspicio, nihil est nisi pontus et aer,  
nubibus hic tumidus, fluctibus ille minax.* OV.

*Whithersoever I look, there is nought but sea and sky,  
the latter heaped with clouds, the former threatening with billows.*

*Note.*—**Iste** is sometimes contemptuous: *quid sibi isti miseri volunt? What do those wretched ones want?* **Ille** may imply respect: *philosophus ille, that famous philosopher.* **Is** often is the antecedent to **qui**: *is cujus, he whose; eum cui, him to whom.*



- 320** *Ipse, self*, is of all the three Persons, with or without a Personal Pronoun: *ipse ibo, I will go myself*.

*Note.*—*Ipse* sometimes means of *one's own accord*: *ipsi veniunt, they come of their own accord*. *Ipse, ipsa*, also stand for the chief person (master, mistress): the scholars of Pythagoras used to say '*Ipse dixit*,' *The master himself said it*. Sometimes a superlative is formed: *ipsis-sima verba, the very exact words*.

- 321** *Idem, the same*, is of all the three Persons; with *qui* it expresses *the same . . . as*. It may often be translated *at the same time; also*:

Ego vir fortis, idemque philosophus. CIC.  
*I a brave man, and also a philosopher.*

- 322** Of the Indefinite Pronouns *Quis, siquis, numquis, quispiam, aliquis, quidam*, the most definite is *quidam*, the least so *quis*.

*Quis, qui, any*, cannot begin a sentence; they often follow *si, num, ne*.

Si mala condiderit in quem quis carmina jus est. HOR.  
*If anyone has composed malicious verses on another, there is a remedy at law.*

Si quid te volam, ubi eris? PLAUT.  
*If I want anything of you, where will you be?*

*Aliquis* means *some one*: *dicat aliquis, suppose some one to say; si vis esse aliquis, if you wish to be somebody*.

*Quidam* means *a certain person* (known but not named):

Accurrit quidam, notus mihi nomine tantum. HOR.  
*A certain man runs up, known to me only by name.*

*Nescio quis, some one or other (I know not who)*, used as if one word, forms an Indefinite Pronoun:

Nescio quid mihi animus praesagit mali. TER.  
*My mind forebodes I know not what evil.*

- 323** Quisquam (Substantive), } *any at all,*  
 Ullus (Adjective) :

are often used after a negative word, or a question expecting a negative answer :

*Nec amet quemquam nec ametur ab ullo.* JUV.

*Let him not love anyone nor be loved by any.*

*Non ullus aratro dignus honos.* VERG.

*Not any due honour (is given) to the plough.*

*Note.*—Quisquam and ullus are used after *si* when negation is implied, or with comparatives :

*Aut nemo aut, si quisquam, Cato sapiens fuit.* CIC.

*Either no man was wise, or, if any, Cato was.*

- 324** Quivis, quilibet, *any you like* :

*Quivis homo potest quemvis de quolibet rumorem proferre.* CIC.

*Any man can put forth any report of anybody.*

*Non cuivis homini contingit adire Corinthum.* HOR.

*It does not happen to every man to go to Corinth.*

- 325** Quisque, *each* (severally), is often used with *se, suus* :

*Sibi quisque habeant quod suum est.* PLAUT.

*Let them have each for himself what is his own.*

With Superlatives it expresses *every* :

*Epicureos doctissimus quisque contemnit.* CIC.

*All the most learned men despise the Epicureans.*

It also distributes Ordinal numbers :

*Quinto quoque anno Sicilia tota censetur.* CIC.

*A census of all Sicily is taken every fifth year.*

- 326** Uterque, *each* (of two), *both*, can be used with the Genitive of Pronouns ; but with Substantives it agrees in case :

*Uterque parens.* OV.

*Both father and mother.*

*Utroque vestrum delector.* CIC.

*I am delighted with both of you.*

- 327** Uter, *which* (of two), is Interrogative : *uter melior ? which is the better ?*

*Uter utri insidias fecit ?* CIC.

*Which of the two laid an ambush for which ?*

*Note.*—Utri, plural, is used for *which of two parties*, utrique for *both parties*. So *alteri . . . alteri*, *one party, the other party*.

**328** *Alter, the one, the other* (of two), *the second*, is the Demonstrative of *uter*: *alter ego, a second self.*

*Quicquid negat alter, et alter; affirmant pariter.* HOR.  
*Whatever the one denies, so does the other; they affirm alike.*

**329** *Alius, another* (of any number), *different*:

*Fortuna nunc mihi, nunc alii benigna.* HOR.  
*Fortune, kind now to me, now to another.*

*Alius, alius*, repeated in two clauses, mean *one . . . another; alii, alii* (plural), *some . . . others*:

*Aliud est maledicere, aliud accusare.* CIC.  
*It is one thing to speak evil, another to accuse.*

*Alii Demosthenem laudant, alii Ciceronem.*  
*Some praise Demosthenes, others Cicero.*

*Note 1.*—*Alius* repeated in different cases in the same sentence, or with one of its derived adverbs, has an idiomatic use:

*Alii alia sentiunt.*  
*Some think one thing, some another.*

*Illi alias aliud isdem de rebus judicant.* CIC.  
*They judge differently, at different times, about the same things.*

*Note 2.*—*Alius* expresses comparison and difference: *nil aliud quam* *nothing else than*; *alius Lysippo*, HOR., *other than Lysippus*.

**330** The Relative *qui, quae, quod*, is of all three Persons, and when the Antecedent is a Noun either expressed or understood, it may be regarded as standing between two Cases of the same Noun, and agreeing with the second Case.

(a) Sometimes both Cases are expressed:

*Erant itinera duo, quibus itineribus exire possent.* CAES.  
*There were two roads by which they might go forth.*

(b) usually the second is omitted:

*Animum rege qui, nisi paret, imperat.* HOR.  
*Rule the temper, which, unless it obeys, commands.*

(c) sometimes the first, in poetry:

*Sic tibi dent nymphae quae levet unda sitim.* OV.  
*So may the nymphs give thee water to assuage thirst.*

(d) sometimes both are omitted :

Sunt quibus in satira videor nimis acer. HOR.  
*There are some to whom I seem too keen in satire.*

**331** The following scheme shows this principle fully :

- (1) vir quem virum vides rex est (both Cases expressed).
- (2) vir quem . . . . . vides rex est (second Case omitted) (usual form).
- (3) . . . quem virum vides rex est (first Case omitted).
- (4) . . . quem . . . . . vides rex est (both Cases omitted).

**332** Note 1.—If the Relative is the Subject of a Copulative Verb, it often agrees in Gender and Number with the Complement :

Thebae, quod Boeotiae caput est. LIV.  
*Thebes, which is the capital of Boeotia.*

Note 2.—When an Adjective qualifying the Antecedent is emphatic, as unus, solus, or is a Superlative, it is often attracted to the Clause of the Relative, agreeing with it in Case :

Si veniat Caesar cum copiis quas habet firmissimas. CIC.  
*Should Caesar come with the very strong forces that he has.*

Note 3.—If the Antecedent consists of two or more Nouns, or is a Collective Noun, the rules for the Agreement of the Relative are the same as for the Agreement of Adjectives with the Composite Subject (see 198, 199).

Note 4.—If the Relative refers to a Sentence or Clause it is Neuter; sometimes id quod is used, id being in apposition to the Clause :

Diem consumi volebat, id quod est factum. CIC.  
*He wished the day to be wasted, which came to pass.*

Note 5.—The Relative clause sometimes comes first :

Quam quisque norit artem, in hac se exerceat. CIC.  
*Let everyone practise the art which he knows.*

(For other uses of the Relative see 403, 450, 451.)

### CORRELATION.

**333** Pronouns and Pronominal Adverbs are said to be Correlatives when they correspond to one another as Antecedent and Relative (102).

**334** The Pronoun Antecedent to qui is usually the Demonstrative is; sometimes hic, ille, idem :

Is minimo eget qui minimum cupit. PUB. SYR.  
*He wants for least who desires least.*

**335** **Talis . . . qualis**, means *of such a kind . . . as*; **tantus . . . quantus**, as *much* or *as great . . . as*: **tot . . . quot**, as *many . . . as*:

**Talis** est qualem tu eum esse scripsisti. **CIC.**

*He is such as you wrote word that he was.*

**Tanto** brevius omne, **quanto** felicius tempus. **PLIN.**

*The happier a time is, so much the shorter is it.*

**Quot** homines, **tot** sententiae. **TER.**

*So many men, so many minds.*

**Tam . . . quam**, means *so . . . as* or *as . . . as*; **ut . . . ita**, means *as . . . so*:

**Tam** ego ante fui liber **quam** gnatus tuus. **PLAUT.**

*I was formerly as free as your son.*

**Ut** optasti, **ita** est. **CIC.**

*As you wished, so it is.*

#### TENSES.

**336** The **Present** expresses:

- (1) What happens at the present moment: **jacio**, *I throw*.
- (2) What is going on at the present time: **scribo**, *I am writing*.
- (3) What is habitually or always: **quod semper movetur aeternum est**, *that which is always in motion is eternal*.

**337** The **Historic Present** is used for a Past by orators, historians, and poets, to give variety, or call up a vivid picture:

**Dimisso** senatu **decemviri** **prodeunt** in contionem **abdicant** que se magistratu. **LIV.**

*When the senate was dismissed the decemvirs go forth to the assembled people and resign office.*

**338** *Note.*—**Dum**, *while*, is used with the **Historic Present** in speaking of Past Time: **Dum** Romani consultant, **Saguntum** oppugnabatur, **LIV.**, *While the Romans were consulting, Saguntum was being besieged* (see 430). With **jam**, **jamdiu** (**dudum**, **pridem**) the **Present** expresses what has long been and still continues: **Jamdudum** video, **HOR.**, *I have seen it this long time*.



**339** The **Perfect** expresses :

As Primary, from the point of the present moment  
what has just been done : scripsi, *I have written.*

As Historic, simply a past action, which happened at  
some indefinite time : scripsi, *I wrote.*

*Note.*—The Perfect is used in poetry to express past existence which has ceased : Fuimus Troes ; fuit Ilium, VERG., *We Trojans were* (i.e. are no longer) ; *Troy was* (exists no longer).

**340** The **Imperfect** expresses what was continued or repeated in past time, as opposed to the completed or momentary past :

Aequi se in oppida receperunt murisque se tenebant. LIV.  
*The Aequi retreated into their towns and remained within their walls.*

Carthagine quotannis bini reges creabantur. NEP.  
*At Carthage two rulers were elected annually.*

**341** The **Future Simple** is used in Latin where in English the Present is used with Future meaning :

Ut voles me esse, ita ero. PLAUT.  
*As you wish me to be, so I shall be.*

**342** The **Future Perfect** expresses action to be completed in the future ; if two actions are spoken of, one of which will take place before the other, the prior one is in the Future Perfect :

Ut sementem feceris, ita metes. CIC.  
*As you shall have sown, so will you reap.*

**343** *Note.*—The Romans, in writing letters, often speak of the time of writing in a Past Tense, because it would be past when a letter would be received.

Res, cum haec scribebam, erat in extremum adducta discrimen. CIC.  
*At the time I write, the affair has been brought to a crisis.*



## MOODS.

**344** The **Indicative** is the Mood which makes a statement with regard to a fact, or to something which is dealt with by the speaker as a fact.

**345** *Note.*—Verbs expressing *duty, fitness, possibility*, as *possum, debeo, decet, licet, oportet*, are often used in the Indicative tenses of past time, to express that it was proper or possible at that time to do something which in fact was not done. Phrases such as *necesse est, fuit; aequum, longum, melius, satius est, fuit*, are similarly used in the Indicative (**440 c**):

*Hic tamen hanc mecum poteras requiescere noctem.* VERG.

*Yet you might have rested here with me this night.*

*Et vellem et fuerat melius.* VERG.

*I should have wished, and it would have been better.*

*Longum est ea dicere: sed hoc breve dicam.* CIC.

*It would be tedious to speak of those things, but this little I will say.*

Compare with these:

*Non Asiae nomen obiciendum Murenæ fuit.* CIC.

*Murena should not have been reproached with the mention of Asia.*

**346** The **Imperative** is the Mood of positive command or direct request:

*I, sequere Italiam.* VERG.

*Go, seek Italy.*

*Pergite, adulescentes.* CIC.

*Proceed, O youths.*

**347** Prohibitions in the second person are expressed by *noli* with the Infinitive; or, more peremptorily, by *ne* with the Perfect Conjunctive:

*Nolite id velle quod fieri non potest.* CIC.

*Do not wish what cannot be.*

*Ne feceris quod dubitas.* PLIN.

*Never do anything about which you are doubtful.*

**348** but in poetry *ne* is often used with the Imperative:

*Equo ne credite, Teucri.* VERG.

*Do not trust the horse, O Trojans.*

- 349** The forms in **-to**, **-tote** are specially used in laws; but they are also often used for emphasis.

Regio imperio duo sunt o, iique consules appellantur. Cic.  
*Let there be two with royal power, and let them be called consuls.*

- 350** *Note 1.*—The following Imperatives are joined with the Infinitive or Conjunctive of other Verbs to form Imperatives; fac, fac ut, cura ut, with the Conjunctive; memento with Infinitive or Conjunctive. In prohibitions fac ne, cave, take the Conjunctive; and in poetry fuge, mitte, parce, take the Infinitive:

Magnum fac animum habetas. Cic.  
*Mind you have a lofty spirit.*

*Note 2.*—For a courteous Imperative the Future Indicative is often used: facies ut sciam, Cic., *you will please let me know.*

- 351** The **Conjunctive Mood** makes a statement or asks a question, not so much with regard to a fact as with regard to something thought of or imagined by the speaker, often with some condition expressed or implied. It expresses a modified or conditional command or desire.

*Note.*—The Conjunctive is so called because it joins with the other moods and adds to their power of expression.

The Conjunctive has two general uses:

- 352** Pure or Independent: velim, *I could wish*; vellem, *I could have wished*.
- 353** Subjunctive or Dependent on another Verb: cura ut facias, *take care that you do it*.
- 354** The Pure Conjunctive must generally be rendered in English with auxiliaries, *may, might, could, would, should*.

*Note.*—The Conjunctive makes a Statement:

- 355** (a) With a condition expressed or implied (Conditional use):  
 Ita amicos pares. Cic.  
*Thus you may get friends.*  
 Crederes victos. Liv.  
*You would have supposed them conquered (from their appearance).*
- 356** (b) Or in a modified tone, to avoid positiveness (Potential use):  
 Dubitem haud equidem. Verg.  
*For my part I should not hesitate.*

The Perfect Conjunctive is especially so used :

Forsitan quispiam dixerit. CIC.

*Perhaps someone may say.*

**357** (c) Conveying an admission or supposition (Concessive use):

Haec sint falsa sane. CIC. Fuerit malus civis. CIC.

*Granting this to be quite untrue. Suppose he was a bad citizen.*

**358** It asks a Question (Deliberative use):

Faveas tu hosti? CIC. Quid facerem? VERG.

*Would you befriend an enemy? What was I to do?*

It expresses a Desire or Command :

**359** (a) A Wish or Prayer (Optative use): often with *utinam*, *Oh that!*

Sis felix. HOR. Utinam potuissem.

*May you be happy. Oh that I had been able.*

Doceas iter et sacra ostia pandas. VERG.

*Pray shew me the road and open the sacred doors.*

**360** (b) An Exhortation (Hortative use) chiefly in the 1st Person Plural

Amemus patriam, pareamus senatui. CIC.

*Let us love our country, let us obey the senate.*

**361** (c) A modified Command (Jussive use) in the 3rd Person :

Sit sermo lenis. CIC.

*Let speech be calm.*

Vilicus ne sit ambulator. CATO.

*Let not a steward be a loiterer.*

**362** From the Jussive use comes a further use of the Conjunctive, by which the expression of a wish is conveyed into past time. This use is chiefly in the 2nd Person, but extends also to the others :

Rem tuam curares. TER.

*You should have been minding your own business.*

Restitisses, repugnasses, mortem oppetisses. CIC.

*You should have resisted, fought against it, braved death.*

**363** The use of the 2nd Person in the Pres. Conj. is often indefinite, not addressed to anyone in particular, but expressing a general maxim :

Agere decet quod agas considerate. CIC.

*Whatever you do, it is proper to do it with consideration.*

## THE VERB INFINITIVE.

- 364** The parts of the Verb Infinitive have some of the uses of Verbs, some of the uses of Nouns.

## THE INFINITIVE.

- 365** The **Infinitive** as a Verb has Tenses, Present, Past, or Future, it governs cases and is qualified by Adverbs; as a Noun it is neuter, indeclinable, used only as Nominative or Accusative.
- 366** The **Infinitive** in the Nominative may be the Subject of Impersonal Verbs, or of verbs used impersonally:

Juvat ire et Dorica castra visere. VERG.

*It is pleasant to go and view the Doric camp.*

Ipsium philosophari nunc displicet. CIC.

*The very study of philosophy now displeases.*

Dulce et decorum est pro patria mori. HOR.

*To die for one's country is sweet and seemly.*

Non vivere bonum est sed bene vivere. SEN.

*It is not living which is a good, but living well.*

*Note.*—Occasionally the Infinitive is the Complement:

Homo cui vivere est cogitare. CIC.

*Man to whom to live is to think.*

- 367** The **Infinitive** is often one of the two Accusatives depending on an Active Verb of *saying* or *thinking*:

Errare, nescire, decipi et malum et turpe ducimus. CIC.

*To err, to be ignorant, to be deceived, we deem both unfortunate and disgraceful.*

- 368** *Note.*—Sometimes, though rarely, it is a simple Object:

Hoc ridere meum nulla tibi vendo Iliade. PERS.

*This laughter of mine I won't sell you for an Iliad.*

**369** The **Prolative Infinitive** is used to carry on the construction of Indeterminate and some other Verbs (190) :

Verbs of *possibility, duty, habit*: possum, queo, nequeo, debeo, soleo ;

„ of *wishing, purposing*: volo, nolo, malo, cupio, opto, statuo ;

„ of *beginning, ceasing, endeavouring, continuing, hastening*; coepi, begin; desino, *cease*; conor, try; pergo, *proceed* ;

„ of *knowing, teaching, learning*: scio, disco, doceo.

Ego plus quam feci facere non possum. Cic.

*I cannot do more than I have done.*

Solent diu cogitare qui magna volunt gerere. Cic.

*They are wont to reflect long who wish to do great things.*

Praecedere coepit. Hor.

*He begins to walk on.*

Sapere aude. Hor.

*Dare to be wise.*

*Note.*—The **Infinitive** of a Copulative Verb used Prolatively is followed by a Complement in the Nominative :

Socrates parens philosophiae jure dici potest. Cic.

*Socrates may rightly be called the parent of philosophy.*

Vis formosa videri. Hor.

*You wish to seem beautiful.*

**370** The **Prolative Infinitive** is also used with the Passives of Verbs of saying and thinking :

Barbara narratur venisse venefica tecum. Ov.

*A barbarian sorceress is said to have come with thee.*

Aristides unus omnium justissimus fuisse traditur. Cic.

*Aristides is recorded to have been the one man of all most just.*

*Note.*—This construction is called the Nominative with Infinitive, and is used with most Passive Verbs of saying and thinking. A few, however, narror, nuntior, trador, are used Impersonally—always in the Perfect, and often in the Present and Imperfect :

Galbam et Africanum doctos fuisse traditum est. Cic.

*It has been handed down that Galba and Africanus were learned.*

**371** With an Infinitive Perfect Passive *esse* is often omitted :

Pons in Ibero prope effectus nuntiabatur. CAES.

*The bridge over the Ebro was announced to be nearly finished.*

Titus Manlius ita locutus fertur. LIV.

*Titus Manlius is reported to have thus spoken.*

**372** The Historic Infinitive is the Present Infinitive used by historians in vivid description for the Imperfect Indicative :

Multi sequi, fugere, occidi, capi. SALL.

*Many were following, flying, being slain, being captured.*

**373** An Infinitive often follows an Adjective Prolatively, chiefly in poetry :

Audax omnia perpeti. HOR. | Insuetus vinci. LIV.

*Bold to endure all things. | Unused to be conquered.*

Figere doctus erat sed tendere doctior arcūs. OV.

*He was skilled in piercing (with a dart), but more skilled in bending the bow.*

### GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

**374** The Genitive, Dative, and Ablative of the Gerund, and the Accusative with a Preposition, are used as Cases of the Infinitive.

**375** The Accusative of the Gerund follows some Prepositions, especially *ad*, *ob*, *inter* :

Ad bene vivendum breve tempus satis est longum. CIC.

*For living well a short time is long enough.*

Mores puerorum se inter ludendum detegunt. QUINT.

*The characters of boys show themselves in their play.*

**376** The Genitive of the Gerund depends on some Abstract Substantives, and Adjectives which take a Genitive :

Ars scribendi discitur.

*The art of writing is learnt.*

Cupidus te audiendi sum. CIC.

*I am desirous of hearing you.*



- 377** The **Dative** of the Gerund follows a few Verbs, Adjectives, and Substantives implying *help, use, fitness* :

Par est disserendo. Crc.		Dat operam legendo.
<i>He is equal to arguing.</i>		<i>He gives attention to reading.</i>

*Note.*—Observe the phrase: *solvendo non est, he is insolvent.*

- 378** The **Ablative** of the Gerund is of Cause or Manner, or it follows one of the Prepositions *ab, de, ex, in, cum* :

Fugiendo vincimus.		De pugnando deliberant.
<i>We conquer by flying.</i>		<i>They deliberate about fighting.</i>

- 379** If the Verb is Transitive, the **Gerundive** is more often used than the Gerund, agreeing with the Object as an Adjective. It takes the Gender and Number of the Object, but the Object is drawn into the Case of the Gerundive.

The following examples show how the Gerundive takes the place of the Gerund.

<i>Gerund</i>		<i>Gerundive</i>	
Ad petendum pacem	} becomes	ad petendam pacem	<i>in order to seek peace.</i>
Petendi pacem		petendae pacis	<i>of seeking peace.</i>
Petendo pacem		petendae paci	<i>for seeking peace.</i>
Petendo pacem		petendā pace	<i>by seeking peace.</i>
Ad mutandum leges		ad mutandas leges	<i>in order to change laws</i>
Mutandi leges		mutandarum legum	<i>of changing laws.</i>
Mutando leges		mutandis legibus	<i>for or by changing laws.</i>

*Note 1.*—*In order to seek peace* may also be rendered by the Genitive of the Gerund or Gerundive with *causā* or *gratiā*: *pacem petendi causā* or *petendae pacis causā*. (See 423, note 3.)

- 380** *Note 2.*—The Dative of the Gerundive is used with names of office to show the purpose of the office :

Comitia regi creando. LIV.  
*An assembly for electing a king.*

Tres viri agris dividendis. FLORUS.  
*Three commissioners for dividing lands.*

**381** The Gerund and Gerundive are often used to express that something ought or is to be done, the Dative of the Agent being expressed or understood (222).

**382** If the Verb is **Intransitive** the Gerund is used impersonally :

Eundum est.		Mihi eundum est.
<i>One must go.</i>		<i>I must go.</i>
Suo cuique iudicio est utendum. CIC.		
<i>Each must use his own judgment.</i>		

**383** If the Verb is **Transitive** the Gerundive is used in agreement :

Caesari omnia uno tempore erant agenda. CAES.  
*All things had to be done by Caesar at one time.*  
 Principio sedes apibus statioque petenda. VERG.  
*First of all a site and station must be sought for the bees.*

*Note 1.*—If an Intransitive Verb has an Object in the Dative, the Agent is in the Ablative with the preposition *a* or *ab*: patriae est a te consulendum, *you must consult for your country.*

**384** *Note 2.*—After some Verbs, as *do, trado, curo*, the Gerundive is used in the Accusative to express that something is caused to be done :

Caesar pontem faciendum curat. CAES.  
*Caesar causes a bridge to be made.*

### SUPINES.

**385** The Supines are also used as Cases of the Infinitive :

**386** The Supine in **-um** is an Accusative after Verbs of motion, expressing the purpose :

Lusum it Maecenas, dormitum ego. HOR.  
*Maecenas goes to play, I to sleep.*  
 Athenienses miserunt Delphos consultum. NEP.  
*The Athenians sent to Delphi to consult.*

**387** with the Infinitive *iri*, used impersonally, it forms a Future Passive Infinitive :

Aiunt urbem captum iri.  
*They say that the city will be taken.*

*Note.*—Literally, *they say there is a going to take the city.*

- 388** The Supine in -u (Dative and Ablative) is used with some Adjectives, such as *facilis, dulcis, turpis*, and the Substantives *fas, nefas* : *turpe factu, disgraceful to do*.

Hoc fas est dictu.		Libertas, dulce auditu nomen. LIV.
<i>It is lawful to say this.</i>		<i>Freedom, a name sweet to hear.</i>

Nec visu facilis, nec dictu affabilis ulli. VERG.  
*One not easy for any to gaze on, or to address.*

## PARTICIPLES.

- 389** The Present and Perfect Participles of some Verbs are used as Adjectives :

Homo frugi ac diligens. CIC.		Odorata cedrus. VERG.
<i>A thrifty and industrious man.</i>		<i>The fragrant cedar.</i>

- 390** Most Participles which can be used as Adjectives have Comparison : *pietate praestantior, more excellent in piety* ; *nocentissima victoria, a very hurtful victory*.

- 391** A Participle, agreeing with a Noun in any Case, often expresses within one sentence what might be expressed by a dependent or a co-ordinate clause :

Saepe sequens agnam lupus est a voce retentus. OV.  
*Often, when following a lamb, the wolf has been held back by his voice.*

Elephantes, amnem transitori, minimos praemittunt. PLIN.  
*Elephants, intending to cross a river, send forward the smallest ones.*

Timotheus a patre acceptam gloriam multis auxit virtutibus. NEP.  
*Timotheus increased by many virtues the glory which he had received from his father.*

Sacras jaculatus arces terruit urbem. HOR.  
*He has smitten the sacred towers and terrified the city.*

Caesar milites hortatus castra movit. CAES.  
*Caesar addressed the soldiers, and moved his camp.*

- 392** Note 1.—Only Deponent Verbs have an Active Perfect Participle; in other Verbs its place is supplied either by a Finite Verb Active with the Relative or a Participle, or by the Ablative Absolute Passive:

*The enemy, having thrown away their arms, fled,*  
can be expressed in Latin by

Hostes  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{qui arma abjecerant,} \\ \text{cum arma abjecissent} \\ \text{armis abjectis} \end{array} \right\} \text{terga verterunt.}$

- 393** Note 2.—Sometimes when a Substantive has a Perfect Participle in agreement, the Substantive must be rendered in English by a Genitive, the Participle by a Substantive: *ademptus Hector, the removal of Hector*; *ante urbem conditam, before the foundation of the city.*

*Terra mutata non mutat mores. Liv.*

*Change of country does not change character.*

### Note on the Verb Infinitive.

- 394** The Infinitive, the Gerund, the Supine in -um and the Participles govern the same Cases as the Finite Verbs to which they belong.

*Ingenuas didicisse fideliter artes emollit mores. Ov.*

*To have truly learned the liberal arts refines the character.*

*Cupio satisfacere reipublicae. Cic.*

*I desire to do my duty to the republic.*

*Romae privatis jus non erat vocandi senatum. Liv.*

*At Rome private persons had not the right of summoning the senate.*

*Ast ego non Graiis servitum matribus ibo. Verg.*

*But I will not go to be a slave to Greek matrons.*

*Ausi omnes immane nefas, ausoque potiti. Verg.*

*All having dared monstrous impiety and having accomplished what they dared.*

### ADVERBS.

- 395** Adverbs show how, when, and where the action of the Verb takes place; they also qualify Adjectives or other Adverbs: *recte facere, to do rightly*; *huc nunc venire, to come hither now*; *facile primus, easily first*; *valde celeriter, very swiftly.*

Many words are both Adverbs and Prepositions, as *ante, before, post, after*:

Adverbs: *multo ante, long before*; *paullo post, shortly after.*

Prepositions : ante oculos, *before one's eyes* ; post tergum, *behind one's back*.

Joined with quam they form Conjunctions : antequam, *before that* . . . postquam, *after that* . . . (see 428, 431).

### 396 Negative Adverbs are non, haud, ne.

Non, not, is simply negative :

Nives in alto mari non cadunt. PLIN.

*No snow falls on the high seas.*

Haud, not, is used with Adjectives, with other Adverbs, and a few Verbs of knowing and thinking : haud aliter, *haud secus*, *not otherwise* ; res haud dubia, *no doubtful matter* ; haud scio an verum sit, *I am inclined to think it is true*.

Ne is used with the second person of the Perfect Conjunctive for prohibitions (347) : ne transieris Hiberum (LIV.), *do not cross the Ebro*. With the second person of the Present Conjunctive ne often means *lest* : ne forte credas (HOR.), *lest by chance you believe*, or *that you may not by chance believe*.

### 397 Two Negatives make an Affirmative, as in English : non sum nescius, *I am not unaware*, that is *I am aware*. Non nemo means, *somebody* ; nemo non, *everybody* ; non-nihil, *something* ; nihil non, *everything*.

In ipsa curia non nemo hostis est. CIC.

*In the very senate-house there is some enemy.*

Nemo Arpinas non Plancio studuit. CIC.

*Every citizen of Arpinum was zealous for Plancius.*

Note 1.—Neque, nec, nor (Conjunction) is used for *and not* :

Rapimur in errorem, neque vera cernimus. CIC.

*We are hurried into error, and do not perceive truth.*

So also are generally rendered :

<i>and no one,</i>	nec quisquam, nec ullus ;
<i>and nothing,</i>	nec quidquam ;
<i>and never, nowhere,</i>	nec umquam, nec usquam.



**398** Note 2.—**Ne** is used with **quidem** to express *not even*, and the word or words on which emphasis is laid comes between them :

*Ne ad Catonem quidem provocabo. Cic.*

*Not to Cato even will I appeal.*

'*Not only not . . . , but not even*' is *non modo non . . . sed ne . . . quidem* (or *ne . . . quidem, non modo non*).

*Non modo tibi non irascor, sed ne reprehendo quidem factum tuum. Cic.*

*I am not only not angry with you, but do not even blame your act.*

If the predicate of both clauses is the same, it is often expressed only in the second clause with *ne . . . quidem*, and also the negative is omitted in the first clause—*i.e.* *non modo* is used rather than *non modo non*.

*Assentatio non modo amico, sed ne libero quidem digna est. Cic.*

*Flattering is unworthy, not only of a friend, but even of a free man.*

## CONJUNCTIONS.

**399** Conjunctions connect words, sentences, and clauses.

**400** (1) **Co-ordinative** Conjunctions connect two or more Nouns in the same case :

*Miratur portas strepitumque et strata viarum. Verg.*

*He marvels at the gates and the noise and the pavements.*

*Et nostra respublica et omnia regna. Cic.*

*Both our own republic and all kingdoms.*

*Sine imperio nec domus ulla nec civitas stare potest. Cic.*

*Without government neither any house nor any State can be stable.*

Or they join two or more Simple Sentences (402) :

Note 1.—**Aut . . . aut** are used to mark an emphatic distinction ; **vel . . . vel** where the distinction is of little importance :

*Aut Caesar aut nullus.*

*Either Caesar or nobody.*

*Vel magna, vel potius maxima. Cic.*

*Great, or rather very great.*

Note 2.—**Sed** distinguishes with more or less opposition, or passes to a fresh point ; while **autem** corrects slightly or continues :

*Non scholæ sed vitæ discimus. Sen.*

*We learn not for the school but for life.*



*Note 3.—Autem, enim, quidem, vero, never begin a sentence :*

*Neque enim tu is es qui quid sis nescias. Cic.*

*For you are not the man to be ignorant of your own nature.*

- 401** (2) **Subordinative Conjunctions** join **Dependent Clauses** to the **Principal Sentence**. (See **Compound Sentence**.)

### Co-ordination.

- 402** When two or more **Sentences** are joined together by **Co-ordinative Conjunctions**, so as to form part of one **Sentence**, they are said to be **Co-ordinate Sentences**, and each is independent in its construction.

*Et mihi sunt vires et mea tela nocent. Ov.*

*I too am not powerless, and my weapons hurt.*

*Gyges a nullo videbatur, ipse autem omnia videbat. Cic.*

*Gyges was seen by no one, but he himself saw all things.*

- 403** The **Relative Pronoun** with a **Verb** in the **Indicative** often forms a **Co-ordinate Sentence** :

*Res loquitur ipsa, quæ semper valet plurimum. Cic.*

*The fact itself speaks, and this always avails most.*

*Constantes amici sunt eligendi, cujus generis magna est penuria. Cic.*

*Firm friends are to be chosen, but of such there is great scarcity.*

### INTERJECTIONS.

- 404** **Interjections** are apart from the construction of the sentence. O, ah, eheu, heu, pro, are used with the **Vocative**, **Nominative**, or **Accusative** ; en, ecce, with the **Nominative** or **Accusative** ; ei, vae, with the **Dative** only :

*O formose puer, nimium ne crede colori. Verg.*

*O beautiful boy, trust not too much to complexion.*

*O fortunatam Romam ! Cic.*

*O fortunate Rome !*

*En ego vester Ascanius ! Verg.*

*Lo here am I your Ascanius !*

Ei misero mihi!  
*Alas! wretched me.*

Vae victis! Liv.  
*Woe to the vanquished!*

### QUESTION AND ANSWER.

#### 405 (a) Single Questions are asked by:

nonnē, expecting the answer *yes*.

num,           "           "           "           *no*.

-nē, expecting either answer.

an, expressing surprise and expecting answer *no*.

Canis nonne similis lupo est? Cic.  
*Is not a dog like a wolf?*

Num negare audes? Cic.           Potesne dicere? Cic.  
*Do you venture to deny?           Can you say?*

An tu me tristem esse putas? PLAUT.  
*Do you think I am sad?*

*Note.*—Questions are also asked by Interrogative Pronouns (95, 100, 102, 327) and Adverbs (167, 168).

#### 406 (b) Alternative Questions are asked by:

utrum . . . . an (*or*).

num . . . . an (*or*).

-nē . . . . an (*or*).

. . . . an, annē (*or*).

Haec utrum abundantis an egentis signa sunt? Cic.  
*Are these the tokens of one who abounds or lacks?*

Num duas habetis patrias an est illa patria communis? Cic.  
*Have you two countries, or is that your common country?*

Romamne venio, an hic maneo, an Arpinum fugio? Cic.  
*Do I come to Rome, or stay here, or flee to Arpinum?*

*Note.*—A single question is sometimes asked without any particle:

Infelix est Fabricius quod rus suum fodit? SEN.  
*Is Fabricius unhappy because he digs his land?*

**407** For **Deliberative Questions** the Present or Imperfect Conjunctive is used :

*Quid faciam? roger anne rogem? Ov.*

*What shall I do? Shall I be asked or ask?*

*Tibi ego irascerer, mi frater? tibi ego possem irasci? Cic.*

*Should I be angry with you, my brother? Could I be angry with you?*

**408** **Answer Affirmative** is expressed :

(a) By repeating the emphatic word of the question, sometimes with *vero, sane, inquam.*

<i>Estne? . . . est. Liv.</i>		<i>Dasne? . . . Do sane. Cic.</i>
<i>Is it? . . . it is.</i>		<i>Do you grant? . I grant indeed.</i>

(b) By *ita, ita est, etiam, sane, sane quidem . . . :*

*Visne potiora tantum interrogem? . . . Sane. Cic.*

*Would you have me ask only the principal matters? . . . Certainly.*

**409** **Answer Negative** is expressed :

(a) By repeating the emphatic Verb with *non.*

*Estne frater intus? . . Non est. TER.*

*Is my brother within? . . No.*

(b) By *non, non ita, minime, minime vero :*

*Venitne? . . . Non. PLAUT.*

*Did he come? . . . No.*

*Non pudet vanitatis? . . . Minime.*

*Are you not ashamed of your folly? . . . Not at all.*

*Note.*—*Immo, nay rather, yes even,* is used in answers to correct or modify, either by contradicting, or by strengthening :

*Ubi fuit Sulla, num Romae? . . . Immo longe afuit. Cic.*

*Where was Sulla? at Rome? . . . Nay, he was far away from it.*

*Tenaxne est? . . . Immo pertinax. PLAUT.*

*Is he tenacious? . . . Yes even pertinacious.*

## 410 THE COMPOUND SENTENCE.

A **Compound Sentence** consists of a Principal Sentence with one or more Subordinate Clauses.

Subordinate Clauses depend in their construction on the Principal Sentence. They are divided into :

### I. Substantival.      II. Adverbial.      III. Adjectival.

I. A Substantival Clause stands, like a Substantive, as Subject or Object of a Verb, or in Apposition.

II. An Adverbial Clause qualifies the Principal Sentence like an Adverb, answering the questions *how? why? when?* Adverbial Clauses are introduced by Subordinative Conjunctions, and are (1) Consecutive (*so that*) ; (2) Final (*in order that*) ; (3) Causal (*because, since*) ; (4) Temporal (*when, while, until*) ; (5) Conditional (*if, unless*) ; (6) Concessive (*although, even if*) ; (7) Comparative (*as if, as though*).

III. An Adjectival Clause qualifies the Principal Sentence like an Adjective. It is introduced by the Relative *qui* or by a Relative Particle, as *ubi* (*where*), *unde* (*whence*), *quo* (*whither*).

## 411

## Sequence of Tenses.

The general rule for the Sequence of Tenses is that a Primary Tense in the Principal Sentence is followed by a Primary Tense in the Clause, a Historic Tense by a Historic Tense.

## PRIMARY.

<i>Simple Pres.</i> rogo <i>I ask</i>	<i>Act.</i> quid agas	<i>} what you are</i>
<i>Pres. Perf.</i> rogavi <i>I have</i> <i>asked</i>	<i>Pass.</i> quid a te agatur	<i>} doing.</i>
<i>Simple Fut.</i> rogabo	<i>Act.</i> quid egeris	<i>} what you have</i>
<i>Fut. Perf.</i> rogavero	<i>Pass.</i> quid a te actum sit	<i>} done.</i>
	<i>Act.</i> quid acturus sis	<i>what you are</i> <i>going to do.</i>

## HISTORIC.

<i>Imperf.</i> rogabam	<i>Act.</i> quid ageres	<i>} what you were</i>
<i>Perf.</i> rogavi <i>I</i> <i>asked</i>	<i>Pass.</i> quid a te ageretur	<i>} doing.</i>
<i>Pluperf.</i> rogaveram	<i>Act.</i> quid egisses	<i>} what you had</i>
	<i>Pass.</i> quid a te actum esset	<i>} done.</i>
	<i>Act.</i> quid acturus esses	<i>what you were</i> <i>going to do.</i>

*Note.*—The Historic Present and Historic Infinitive are generally used with Historic Sequence. The Primary Perfect Indicative has Primary Sequence in most writers, but Cicero often gives it Historic Sequence. The Perfect Conjunctive in its Pure use is always Primary; in its Dependent use, it is generally Primary, sometimes Historic.

## 412

## Tenses of the Infinitive in Oratio Obliqua.

If the time of the Clause is the same as that of the Principal Verb, the Present Infinitive is used.

If the time is before that of the Principal Verb, the Perfect Infinitive.

If the time follows that of the Principal Verb, the Future Infinitive.

<i>Scio</i> <i>I know</i>	<i>eum amare</i> <i>that he is loving</i>	<i>amavisse</i> <i>has loved</i>	<i>amaturum esse</i> <i>will love</i>
	<i>copias mitti</i> <i>that forces are being sent</i>	<i>missas esse</i> <i>have been sent</i>	<i>missum iri</i> <i>will be sent</i>
<i>Sciebam</i> <i>I knew</i>	<i>eum amare</i> <i>that he was loving</i>	<i>amavisse</i> <i>had loved</i>	<i>amaturum esse</i> <i>would love</i>
	<i>copias mitti</i> <i>that forces were being sent</i>	<i>missas esse</i> <i>had been sent</i>	<i>missum iri</i> <i>would be sent</i>

*Note.*—For the Supine in -um with iri, may be substituted fore or futurum ut with the Conjunctive: fore (futurum esse), ut copiae mittantur ut copiae mitterentur.

## I. SUBSTANTIVAL CLAUSES.

**413** Substantival Clauses are Indirect Speech (*Oratio Obliqua*). Their forms correspond to the three direct forms of the Simple Sentence.

## 1. Direct Statement.

Valeo.  
*I am well.*  
Calet ignis.  
*Fire is hot.*

## 2. Direct Positive Command or Request.

Vale.  
*Farewell.*  
Mane in sententia.  
*Keep firm in your opinion.*

## 3. Direct Question.

Valesne?  
*Are you well?*  
Quis est?  
*Who is he?*

1. Indirect Statement (*Enuntiatio Obliqua*).

Scis me valere.  
*You know that I am well.*  
Sentimus calere ignem.  
*We feel that fire is hot.*

2. Indirect Command or Request (*Petitio Obliqua*).

Cura ut valeas.  
*Take care that you keep well.*  
Oro maneat in sententia.  
*I beg that you keep firm in your opinion.*

3. Indirect Question (*Interrogatio Obliqua*).

Quaero an valeas.  
*I ask whether you are well.*  
Incertum est quis sit.  
*It is doubtful who he is.*

## 1. Indirect Statement.

**414** The Accusative with Infinitive is the most usual form of Indirect Statement. It may stand:

(a) As the **Subject** of an Impersonal Verb, or of *est* with an Abstract Substantive or Neuter Adjective:

Constat leges ad salutem civium inventas esse. Crc.  
*It is agreed that laws were devised for the safety of citizens.*

Nuntiatum est Scipionem adesse. CAES.  
*It was announced that Scipio was at hand.*

Rem te valde bene gessisse rumor erat. Crc.  
*There was a report that you had conducted the affair very well.*

Verum est amicitiam nisi inter bonos esse non posse. Crc.  
*It is true that friendship cannot exist except between the good.*



- (b) As **Object**, after Verbs of *saying, thinking, feeling, perceiving, knowing, believing, denying* :

Democritus dicit innumerabiles esse mundos. CIC.

*Democritus says that there are countless worlds.*

Pompeios desedissee terrae motu audivimus. SEN.

*We have heard that Pompeii has perished in an earthquake.*

- (c) In **Apposition** :

Illud temere dictum, sapientes omnes esse bonos. CIC.

*It was rashly said that all wise men are good.*

*Note.*—Verbs of *hoping, promising, swearing, threatening* generally take the Accusative with Future Infinitive :

Sperabam id me assecuturum. CIC.

*I hoped to attain this.*

Pollicebatur pecuniam se esse redditurum. CIC.

*He promised that he would return the money.*

- 415 A Clause formed by **Ut** with the **Conjunctive** is used as Subject with Impersonal Verbs or phrases which express fact or occurrence ; it is also used in Apposition, but it seldom stands as Object :

Expediit ut civitates sua jura habeant. LIV.

*That states should have their own laws is expedient.*

Mos erat ut in pace Jani templum clauderetur. LIV.

*It was the custom that in time of peace the temple of Janus was shut.*

Extremum illud est ut te obsecrem. CIC.

*The last thing is for me to beseech you.*

*Note.*—The Accusative with Infinitive, or the Ut Clause, used Interrogatively, sometimes expresses indignation :

Mene incepto desistere victam? VERG.

*What ! I to be vanquished and abandon my design !*

Te ut ulla res frangat? CIC.

*Can anything break your pride ?*

- 416 A Clause formed by **Quod** with the **Indicative** is used as Subject, or in Apposition, where a fact is to be dwelt on :

Accedit huc quod postridie ille venit. CIC.

*Add to this that he came the next day.*

Hoc praestamus maxime feris, quod loquimur. CIC.

*We excel beasts most in this respect, that we speak.*

Rarely as Object, after Verbs such as *addo*, *mitto*, *omitto*, *praetereo* :

*Adde quod idem non horam tecum esse potes.* HOR.

*Add moreover that you cannot keep your own company for an hour.*

It is also used with Verbs of *rejoicing* and *grieving* :

*Dolet mihi quod tu stomacharis.* CIC.

*It grieves me that you are angry.*

*Gaude, quod spectant oculi te mille loquentem.* HOR.

*Rejoice, that a thousand eyes behold you speaking.*

*Note.*—With Verbs of *rejoicing* and *grieving*, the Accusative with Infinitive or the Quod Clause may be used : *Salvum te advenire gaudeo* (PLAUT.), *I rejoice that you arrive in health* ; might be, ‘ *Gaudeo quod salvus advenis.*’

## 2. Indirect Command, Request or Prohibition.

**417** A Clause depending on a Verb of *commanding*, *wishing*, *exhorting*, *entreating*, is in the Conjunctive : if positive, with *ut* ; if negative, with *ne*. The Clause may stand

(a) as Subject ; (b) as Object ; (c) in Apposition :

(a) *Postulatur ab amico ut sit sincerus.* CIC.

*It is required of a friend that he be sincere.*

*Nuntiatum est Antonio ne Brutum obsideret.* CIC.

*An order was sent to Antony that he should not besiege Brutus.*

(b) *Etiam atque etiam te rogo atque oro ut eum juves.* CIC.

*I urgently beg and pray you to help him.*

*Mihi ne abscedam imperat.* TER.

*He commands me not to go away.*

(c) *Hoc te rogo, ne dimittas animum.* CIC.

*This I beg you, not to lose heart.*

*Note 1.*—With *oro*, *rogo*, *moneo*, *suadeo*, *sino*, *impero*, *curo*, *volo*, *nolo*, *malo*, and some other verbs, *ut* is often omitted. With *licet* *oportet* it is not used. *Idque sinas oro* ; and *I pray that you grant that.*

*Haec omnia praetermittas licet.* CIC.

*It is allowable to omit all these things.*

*Note 2.*—Verbs of *willing* and *desiring*, *volo*, *nolo*, *cupio*, also *jubeo* and many others, frequently take the Accusative with Infinitive :

*Eas res jactari nolebat.* CAES.

*He was unwilling to have those things discussed.*

*Eos suum adventum expectare jussit.* CAES.

*He desired them to await his arrival.*

*Note 3.*—Verbs of *taking care, effecting, causing*, are used with *ut* ; verbs of *guarding against*, with *ne* :

*Cura et provide ut nequid ei desit. Cic.*

*Take care and provide that nothing be wanting to him.*

*Sol efficit ut omnia floreant. Cic.*

*The sun causes all things to bloom.*

*Cave, beware lest*, with *ne* or without a Conjunction ; *cave, take care that*, is used with *ut* :

*Cave ne portus occupet alter. Hor.*

*Beware lest another forestall you in occupying the harbour.*

*Note 4.*—Verbs of *fearing* take the Conjunction : with *ne* to express fear that something *will* happen ; with *ut* or *ne non* to express fear that something *will not* happen :

*Metuo ne faciat.*

*I fear he may do it.*

*Metuo ut faciat (or ne non faciat).*

*I fear he may not do it.*

**418** *Quominus*, *that not* (literally *by which the less*), with the Conjunction, forms a Clause depending on a Verb or phrase which expresses *hindrance* or *prevention* :

*Senectus non impedit quominus litterarum studia teneamus.*

*Cic.*

*Age does not prevent our continuing literary pursuits.*

*Neque repugnabo quominus omnia legant. Cic.*

*Nor will I oppose their reading all things.*

*Per Afranium stetit quominus proelio dimicaretur. CAES.*

*It was owing to Afranius that no battle was fought.*

**419** *Quin*, *that not*, with the Conjunction, follows many of the same Verbs, and phrases of similar meaning :

*Nihil abest quin sim miserrimus. Cic.*

*Nothing is wanting to my being most miserable.*

*Aegre sunt retenti quin oppidum irrumperent. CAES.*

*They were hardly withheld from bursting into the city.*

*Note 1.*—The sentence on which *quominus* depends is generally negative or interrogative, but it may be positive ; the sentence on which *quin* depends is always negative, or virtually negative.

*Note 2.*—Many of these Verbs take *ne* :

*Atticus, ne qua sibi statua poneretur, restitit. NEP.*

*Atticus opposed having any statue raised to him.*

*Prohibeo* takes *quominus* or *ne*, *veto* more often *ne*, and both take Accusative with Infinitive.

## 3. Indirect Question.

**420** Indirect Question is formed by a dependent Interrogative Pronoun or Particle with a Verb in the Conjunctive.

The Clause of the Indirect Question may be (a) Subject or (b) Object or (c) in Apposition, and the Question may be single or alternative :

(a) Videndum est, quando, et cui, et quemadmodum, et quare demus. Crc.

*Care must be taken, when, to whom, how, and why we give.*

Demus, necne demus, in nostra potestate est. Crc.

*Whether we give or do not give is in our own power.*

(b) Fac me certiore quando adfuturus sis. Crc.

*Let me know when you will be here.*

Haud scio an quae dixit sint vera omnia. TER.

*I am inclined to think that all he has said is the truth.*

(c) Ipse quis sit, utrum sit, an non sit, id quoque nescit. CATULL.

*He knows not even this, who he himself is, whether he is or is not.*

## II. ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

## 1. Consecutive Clauses.

**421** Consecutive Clauses define the consequence of what is stated in the Principal Sentence. They are introduced by *ut*, with a Verb in the Conjunctive ; if negative, by *ut non*, *ut nihil*, *ut nullus*, &c.

*Ut*, in Consecutive Clauses, usually follows a Demonstrative, *adeo*, *eo*, *huc*, *ita*, *tam*, *sic*, *tantus*, *tot* :

Non sum ita hebes ut istud dicam. Crc.

*I am not so stupid as to say that.*

Quis tam demens est ut sua voluntate maereat? Crc.

*Who is so mad as to mourn of his own free will?*

Nemo adeo ferus est ut non mitescere possit. HOR.

*No one is so savage that he cannot soften.*

*Note.*—Sometimes the Demonstrative is omitted :

Arboribus consita Italia est, ut tota pomarium videatur. VARRO.  
*Italy is planted with trees, so as to seem one orchard.*

Clare, et ut audiat hospes. PERS.  
*Aloud, and so that a bystander may hear.*

**Ut** is used in a restrictive sense after **ita** :

Litterarum ita studiosus erat ut poetas omnino neglegeret. CIC.  
*He was fond of literature, with the reservation that he cared nothing for poetry.*

**Ut Consecutive** sometimes follows **quam** with a Comparative :

Isocrates majore ingenio est quam ut cum Lysia comparetur. CIC.  
*Isocrates is of too great genius to be compared with Lysias.*

**422** **Quin**, *but that*, with the Conjunctive, follows phrases and questions such as **non**, or **haud dubium est** ; **quis dubitat** ?

Non dubium erat quin totius Galliae plurimum Helvetii posent. CAES.  
*There was no doubt that in the whole of Gaul the Helvetii were the most powerful.*

Quis dubitet quin in virtute divitiae positae sint? CIC.  
*Who would doubt that riches consist in virtue?*

*Note 1.*—A Consecutive **ut** clause sometimes depends on the phrase **tantum abest** followed by a Substantival **ut** clause, the meaning being *so far from . . . that . . .*

Tantum abest ut nostra miremur, ut nobis non satisfaciatur ipse Demosthenes. CIC.  
*So far am I from admiring my own productions, that Demosthenes himself does not satisfy me.*

*Note 2.*—In Consecutive Clauses the Sequence of Tenses sometimes varies from the general rule. If it is intended to mark the consequence as something exceptional, the Primary Perfect in the Clause may follow the Imperfect or Historic Perfect in the Principal Sentence.

Non adeo virtutum sterile erat saeculum ut non et bona exempla prodiderit. TAC.  
*The age was not so bare of virtues that it has not furnished some good examples.*

(For Consecutive Clauses with **Qui**, see **452**.)



## 2. Final Clauses.

**423** Final Clauses express the aim or purpose of the action of the Principal Sentence. They are formed by *ut*, or, if negative, by *ne*, *ut ne*, with the Conjunctive :

Venio ut videam.

*I come that I may see.*

Abii ne viderem.

*I went away that I might not see.*

Ut jugulent homines surgunt de nocte latrones. Juv.

*Robbers rise by night that they may kill men.*

Scipio rus abiit ne ad causam dicendam adesset. Cic.

*Scipio went into the country that he might not be present to defend his cause.*

Ut, with a Final Clause, often corresponds to the Demonstratives *eo*, *ideo*, *idcirco*, *propterea*, *ob eam rem* :

Legum idcirco servi sumus ut liberi esse possimus. Cic.

*We are the bondmen of the law in order that we may be free.*

*Note 1.*—A Final Clause with *ut* or *ne* is used parenthetically in such phrases as: *ut ita dicam*, *so to say*; *ne longus sim*, *not to be tedious*.

*Note 2.*—*Nedum*, *much less* (*not to say*), may take a Verb in the Conjunctive :

Mortalia facta peribunt,

Nedum sermonum stet honos et gratia vivax. Hor.

*Mortal deeds will perish, much less can the honour and popularity of words be lasting.*

*Note 3.*—The purpose of action is expressed in many ways, all equivalent to *ut* with a Final Clause. *He sent ambassadors to seek peace* may be rendered :

Legatos misit ut pacem peterent.

„ „ qui pacem peterent.

„ „ ad petendam pacem.

„ „ petendi pacem causā.

„ „ petendae pacis causā.

„ „ petitum pacem.

*Note 4.*—The Sequence of Tenses in Final Clauses always follows the general rule.

(For Final Clauses with *Qui*, see 453.)



## 3. Causal Clauses.

**424** Causal Clauses assign a reason for the statement made in the Principal Sentence.

**425** When an actual reason for a fact is given, *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, *quando*, *quandoquidem*, *quatenus*, *siquidem*, are used with the Indicative : \*

*Adsunt propterea quod officium sequuntur; tacent quia periculum metuunt.* CIC.

*They are present because they follow duty; they are silent because they fear danger.*

*Vos, Quirites, quoniam jam nox est, in vestra tecta discedite.* LIV.

*Since it is already night, depart, ye Quirites, to your tents.*

*Geramus, dis bene juvantibus, quando ita videtur, bellum.* LIV.  
*Let us wage war, the gods helping us, since so it seems good.*

*Note.*—*Quod*, *quia*, *quoniam* correspond to *eo*, *ideo*, *idcirco*, *propterea*; *ideo quia uxor ruri est* (TER.); *for the reason that my wife is in the country.*

**426** *Cum*, *since*, with a Causal Clause takes the Conjunctive ;

*Quae cum ita sint, ab Jove pacem ac veniam peto.* CIC.  
*Since these things are so, I ask of Jupiter peace and pardon.*

*Note 1.*—After *gratulor*, *laudo*, *gaudeo*, *doleo*, *cum*, *for the reason that*, takes the Indicative, if the Verb is in the first person :

*Gratulor tibi cum tantum vales apud Dolabellam.* CIC.  
*I congratulate you that you have so much weight with Dolabella.*

*Note 2.*—*Non quod*, *non quia* take the Indicative when they refer to the actual cause of a fact; if they refer to a cause thought of, not actual, they take the Conjunctive, and a following clause, with *sed*, gives the true reason :

*Non quia salvos vellet, sed quia perire causa indicta nolebat.* LIV.

*Not because he wished them to be saved, but because he did not wish them to die without trial.*

(For Causal Clauses with *Qui*, see 454.)

\* Clauses in *Oratio Obliqua* must be understood to be excepted from this and all following rules for the use of the Indicative.

## 4. Temporal Clauses.

**427** Temporal Clauses define the time when anything has happened, is happening, or will happen.

The Mood of a Temporal Clause is Indicative if its Connection with the Principal Sentence is one of time only, and if the time of each is independent of the other; but, if the time of the Clause is thought of as depending on the time of the Principal Sentence, the Mood of the Clause is Conjunctive.

**428** Ubi, ut, postquam, simulac, quando, quotiens, cum primum are generally used with the Indicative:

*Olea ubi matura erit quam primum cogi oportet. CATO.*

*When the olive is (shall be) ripe, it must be gathered in as soon as possible.*

*Ut Hostus cecidit, confestim Romana inclinatur acies. LIV.*

*When Hostus fell, immediately the Roman line gave way.*

*Eo postquam Caesar pervenit, obsides, arma poposcit. CAES.*

*After Caesar had arrived there, he demanded hostages and arms.*

**429** Dum, donec, quoad, while, as long as, take the Indicative:

*Homines dum docent discunt. SEN.*

*Men learn while they teach.*

*Dum haec Veiiis agebantur, interim Capitolium in ingenti periculo fuit. LIV.*

*While these things were being done at Veii, the Capitol was meanwhile in dire peril.*

*Cato, quoad vixit, virtutum laude crevit. NEP.*

*Cato increased in the renown of virtue as long as he lived.*

**430** Dum is used with the Historic Present, the Verb of the Principal Sentence being in a Historic tense:

*Dum haec in colloquio geruntur, Caesari nuntiatum est equites accedere. CAES.*

*While this parley was being carried on, it was announced to Caesar that the cavalry were approaching.*

- 431** **Dum, donec, quoad, until, and antequam, priusquam, before** *that*, take the Indicative when the only idea conveyed is that of time :

Milo in senatu fuit eo die, quoad senatus dimissus est. Crc.  
*On that day Milo was in the Senate until the Senate was dismissed.*

Priusquam de ceteris rebus respondeo, de amicitia pauca dicam. Crc.  
*Before I answer about other matters, I will say a few things about friendship.*

- 432** But when the idea of expecting or waiting for something comes in, they take the Conjunctive :

Expectate dum consul aut dictator fiat Kaeso. Lrv.  
*Wait till Kaeso become consul or dictator.*

- 433** **Cum**, if it expresses only the time when something happens, is used with the Indicative :

De te cum quiescunt probant, cum tacent clamant. Crc.  
*Concerning you, when they are quiet they approve, when they are silent they cry aloud.*

Cum Caesar in Galliam venit, alterius factionis principes erant Haedui, alterius Sequani. CAES.  
*When Caesar came into Gaul, the Haedui were chiefs of one faction, the Sequani of another.*

The addition of the Demonstratives **tum, tunc**, marks that the times of the Principal Sentence and Clause correspond more exactly :

Lituo Romulus regiones direxit tum cum urbem condidit. Crc.  
*Romulus marked out the districts with a staff at the time when he founded the city.*

Tum cum in Asia res amiserant, scimus Romae fidem concidisse. Crc.  
*At the time when they had lost their power in Asia, we know that credit sank at Rome.*

- 434** If the action of the Clause with **cum** takes place while that of the Principal Sentence is continuing, or if it quickly follows it, the Clause sometimes contains the main statement, while the Principal Sentence defines the time (**inverse cum**):

*Jam ver appetebat cum Hannibal ex hibernis movit. Liv.*  
*Spring was already approaching when Hannibal moved out of his winter quarters.*

*Commodum discesserat Hilarus cum venit tabellarius. Cic.*  
*Hilarus had just departed, when the letter-carrier came.*

*Note.*—**Cum** with the Indicative sometimes expresses what has long been and still continues:

*Multi anni sunt cum Fabius in aere meo est. Cic.*  
*For many years past Fabius has been in my debt.*

- 435** **Cum** is used in narrative with the Imperfect or Pluperfect Conjunctive, the Verb of the Principal Sentence being in the Perfect or the Historic Present (**historic cum**):

*Note.*—It is used with the Imperfect for contemporary time, with the Pluperfect for prior time.

*Cum triginta tyranni oppressas tenerent Athenas, Thrasybulus his bellum indixit. Nep.*  
*When the thirty tyrants were oppressing Athens, Thrasybulus declared war against them.*

*Cum Pausanias de templo elatus esset, confestim animam efflavit. Nep.*  
*When Pausanias had been carried down from the temple, he immediately expired.*

*Cum hostes adessent, in urbem pro se quisque ex agris demigrant. Liv.*  
*On the approach of the enemy, they move, each as he best can, from the country into the city.*

- 436** *Note.*—In and after the Augustan age the Conjunctive is used in Temporal Clauses for repeated action like the Greek Optative :

*Id fetialis ubi dixisset, hastam in fines hostium mittebat. LIV.*  
*As soon as a fetial had thus spoken, he used to fling a spear within the enemy's boundaries.*

*Saepe cum aliquem videret minus bene vestitum, suum amiculum dedit. NEP.*

*Often when he saw someone ill dressed, he gave him his own cloak.*

But *cum* is used down to the time of Cicero and Caesar (inclusive) with the Indicative for repeated action; in reference to present time with the Perfect, in reference to past time with the Pluperfect :

*Verres cum rosam viderat, tum ver esse arbitrabatur. CIC.*

*Whenever Verres had seen a rose, he considered that it was spring.*

## 5. Conditional Clauses.

- 437** **Conditional Statements** consist of a Clause introduced by *si*, *nisi*, containing the preliminary condition, which is called the Protasis, and a Principal Sentence, containing that which follows from the condition, which is called the Apodosis.

They have two chief forms :

(1) where the Indicative is used in both Protasis and Apodosis ;

(2) where the Conjunctive is used in both.

A Primary tense in the Protasis is usually followed by a Primary in the Apodosis, and a Historic by a Historic.

- 438** (1) The Indicative is used in the *si*-Clause and in the Principal Sentence when the truth of the one statement depends on the truth of the other ; if one is a fact, the other is also a fact :

*Si vales, bene est. CIC.*

*If you are in good health, all is well.*

*Parvi sunt foris arma, nisi est consilium domi. CIC.*

*Arms are of little avail abroad, unless there is counsel at home.*

*Si feceris id quod ostendis, magnam habebo gratiam. CIC.*

*If you shall have done what you offer, I shall be very grateful.*

Siquod erat grande vas, laeti afferebant. CIC.  
*If there was any large vessel, they gladly produced it.*

Si licuit, patris pecuniam recte abstulit filius. CIC.  
*If it was lawful, the son rightly took his father's money.*

*Note 1.*—A si-Clause with the Indicative is often used with the Imperative:

Si me amas, paullum hic ades. HOR.  
*If you love me, stand by me here a short time.*

Causam investigato, si poteris. CIC.  
*Search out the cause if you can.*

*Note 2.*—A si-Clause with the Indicative also follows a Conjunctive (Optative use):

Moriar, si vera non loquor. CIC.  
*May I die if I am not speaking the truth.*

**439** (2) The Conjunctive is used both in the si-Clause and in the Principal Sentence when the condition is imaginary:

(a) The Present Conjunctive is used when the statements are thought of as possible, more or less probable:

Sexcenta memorem, si sit otium. PLAUT.  
*I could mention endless things, had I leisure.*

Si a corona relictus sim, non queam dicere. CIC.  
*If I were forsaken by my circle of hearers I should not be able to speak.*

(b) The Historic Conjunctive is used when the statements are purely imaginary; when there is no possibility of their becoming actual:

Si foret in terris, rideret Democritus. HOR.  
*Democritus would be laughing, if he were upon earth.*

Si id scissem, numquam huc tulissem pedem. TER.  
*If I had known that, I should never have come hither.*

Magis id diceres, si adfuisses. CIC.  
*You would have said so all the more, had you been present.*



**440** *Note.*—The Indicative may be used in the Principal Sentence with a si-Clause in the Conjunctive,

- (a) When the truth of the statement in the Principal Sentence is less closely dependent on the si-Clause :

*Te neque debent adjuvare si possint, neque possunt si velint.* CIC.

*They neither ought to help you if they could, nor can if they would.*

- (b) When the Principal Sentence expresses action begun, but hindered by the condition in the si-Clause :

*Numeros memini si verba tenerem.* VERG.

*I remember the measure if I could recall the words.*

- (c) With the past tenses of Verbs of duty and possibility :

*Poterat utrumque praeclare fieri, si esset fides in hominibus consularibus.* CIC.

*Both might have been done admirably if there had been honour in men of consular rank.*

- (d) With the past tenses of esse, especially in Periphrastic conjugation :

*Si unum diem morati essetis, moriendum omnibus fuit.* LIV.

*If you had delayed a single day, you must all have died.*

*Et factura fuit, pactus nisi Juppiter esset . . .* OV.

*And she would have done it, if Jupiter had not agreed . . .*

**441** *Note 1.*—Si is sometimes omitted :

*Ait quis, aio ; negat, nego.* TER.

*If anyone affirms, I affirm ; if anyone denies, I deny.*

*Note 2.*—Nisi forte, nisi vero are ironical. Si non throws the emphasis of the negative on a single word :

*Si non feceris, ignoscam.*

*If you have not done it, I will pardon.*

*Note 3.*—Sive . . . sive, seu . . . seu, whether . . . or, or if, are used for alternative conditions :

*Sive retractabis, sive properabis.*

*Whether you delay or hasten (it).*

**442** Dum, dummodo, modo, if only, provided that, take the Conjunctive :

*Oderint dum metuant.* SÆT.

*Let them hate provided they fear.*

*Modo ne laudarent iracundiam.* CIC.

*If only they did not praise wrath.*

**443** Note 1.—The following table shows how to convert Conditional Sentences into Oratio Obliqua when the Apodosis becomes an Infinitive Clause, and the Protasis is subordinate to it.

		<i>After a Primary Tense.</i>	
1. Si peccas (peccasti), doles.		1. si pecces (peccaveris), dolere.	
2. Si peccabis, dolebis.	Aio te,	2. si { pecces, } doliturum	
3. Si peccaveris, dolueris. }		3. si { peccaveris, } esse.	
4. Si pecces, doleas.		4. si { peccaturus sis, }	
5. Si peccares, doleres.		5. si peccares, doliturum esse.	
6. Si peccavisses, } doliuisses.	Aiebam te,	6. si { peccavisses, } doliturum	
7. Si peccares, }		7. si { peccares, } fuisse.	
8. Si peccavisses, doleres.		8. si peccavisses, doliturum fore.	

*After a Historic Tense.*

1. si peccares (peccavisses), dolere.	Aiebam te,		
2. si { peccares, }			
3. si { peccavisses, }			
4. si { peccaturus esses, }			

The other four forms remain unchanged.

Note 2. Si peccavisses, doliuisses is equivalent to si peccavisses, doliturus fuisti; and this may either be converted, as above, into the Infinitive Clause, or into the Conjunctive:

Aio te, si peccavisses, doliturum fuisse.

Haec talia sunt ut, si peccavisses, doliturus fueris.

## 6. Concessive Clauses.

**444** Concessive Clauses are introduced by *etsi*, *etiamsi*, *tametsi*, *quamquam*, *quamvis*, *licet*.

Note.—A Concessive Clause is so called because it concedes, or allows, an objection to the statement in the Principal Sentence. The rule for mood is the same as in Conditional Clauses.

**445** *Etsi*, *etiamsi*, *tametsi* are used (a) with the Indicative, (b) with the Conjunctive:

(a) *Etiamsi* tacent, satis dicunt. Cic.

*Even if they are silent, they say enough.*

(b) *Etiamsi* non is esset Caesar qui est, tamen ornandus videretur. Cic.

*Even if Caesar were not what he is, yet he would be considered worthy of honour.*

**446** *Quamquam* is used with the Indicative:

*Quamquam* festinas, non est mora longa. Hor.

*Although you are in haste, the delay is not long.*

**447** *Quamvis*, *licet* are used with the Conjunctive:

*Quamvis* non fueris suaser, approbator fuisti. Cic.

*Although you did not make the suggestion, you have given your approval.*

Licet vitium sit ambitio, frequenter tamen causa virtutum est. QUINT.

*Granted that ambition be a fault, yet often it is a cause of virtues.*

**448** Note 1.—*Quamquam* is used by later writers with the Conjunctive, and *quamvis* is often found in poets with the Indicative.

Note 2.—*Ut, ne, cum* are occasionally used in a Concessive sense, and take the Conjunctive :

Ut desint vires, tamen est laudanda voluntas. OV.

*Though strength be wanting, yet must the will be praised.*

Ne sit summum malum dolor, malum certe est. CIC.

*Granted that pain be not the greatest evil, it surely is an evil.*

His, cum facere non possent, loqui tamen et scribere honeste et magnifice licebat. CIC.

*These, though they could not so act, were yet at liberty to speak and write virtuously and loftily.*

Note 3.—Concessive Clauses are sometimes formed without Conjunctions.

Naturam expellas furca, tamen usque recurret. HOR.

*Though you drive out Nature with a pitchfork, yet she will always come back.*

## **449** 7. Comparative Clauses.

In **Comparative** Clauses the action or fact of the Principal Sentence is compared with a supposed condition ; they are formed by *quasi* (*quamsi*), *tamquam*, *tamquam si*, *ut si*, *velut si*, *ac si* with the Conjunctive :

Assimulabo quasi nunc exeam. TER.

*I will pretend to be just going out.*

Tamquam de regno dimicaretur ita concurrerunt. LIV.

*They joined battle as if it were a struggle for the kingdom.*

Tamquam si claudus sim, cum fusti est ambulandum. PLAUT.

*I must walk with a stick as if I were lame.*

Ejus negotium sic velim cures, ut si esset res mea. CIC.

*I would wish you to care for his business just as if it were my affair.*

Note.—The Demonstratives are *ita*, *sic*, *perinde*, *proinde*, *aeque*, *similiter*.

## III. ADJECTIVAL CLAUSES.

**450**    **The Relative qui in its simple use takes the Indicative :**

Est in Britannia flumen, quod appellatur Tamesis. **CAES.**

*There is in Britain a river which is called the Thames.*

Quis fuit horrendos primus qui protulit enses? **OV.**

*Who was (the man) who first invented terrible swords?*

*Note.*—This rule applies to Correlatives, qualis, quantus, quot, and to Universals, quisquis, quicumque, &c.

Non sum qualis eram. **HOR.**

*I am not what I was.*

Quidquid erit, tibi erit. **CIC.**

*Whatever there is will be for you.*

**451**    **But the Relative often introduces a Clause Consecutive, Final or Causal, with the Conjunctive, corresponding to the Adverbial Clauses with similar meaning.****452**    **Qui with the Conjunctive forms a Consecutive Clause with the meaning of such a kind that :****(a) After a Demonstrative :**

Non sum is qui his rebus delecter. **CIC.**

*I am not one to delight in these things.*

Ea est Romana gens quae victa quiescere nesciat. **LIV.**

*The Roman race is such that it knows not how to rest quiet under defeat.*

Nihil tanti fuit quo venderemus fidem nostram et libertatem.

**CIC.**

*Nothing was of such value that we should sell for it our faith and freedom.*

**(b) After Indefinite and Interrogative Pronouns, or Negatives, nemo, nihil, nullus :**

Est aliquid quod non oporteat, etiamsi licet. **CIC.**

*There is something which is not fitting, even if it is lawful.*

Quis est cui non possit malum evenire? **CIC.**

*Who is there to whom evil may not happen?*

Nihil est quod tam deceat quam constantia. **CIC.**

*Nothing is so becoming as consistency.*

*Note.*—**Quin** for **qui non** is similarly used :

*Nemo est quin audierit quemadmodum captae sint Syracusae.*  
Cic.

*There is no one who has not heard how Syracuse was taken.*

(c) After Impersonal *est*, *there is*, *sunt*, *there are* :

*Sunt qui duos tantum in sacro monte creatos tribunos esse dicant.* Liv.

*There are who say that only two tribunes were elected on the sacred mount.*

but *est qui*, *sunt qui* take the Indicative if they refer to  
Definite Antecedents :

*Sunt item quae appellantur alces.* CAES.

*There are also (some animals) which are called elks.*

(d) After Comparatives with *quam* :

*Majora deliquerant quam quibus ignosci posset.* Liv.

*They had committed greater offences than could be pardoned.*

(e) After *dignus*, *indignus* :

*Dignus est qui imperet.* Cic.

*He is worthy to govern.*

**453** **Qui** with the Conjunctive forms a **Final Clause**, *in order that* :

*Clusini legatos Romam, qui auxilium a senatu peterent, misere.*  
Liv.

*The Clusini sent ambassadors to Rome to seek aid from the senate.*

**Quo** with a Comparative introduces a **Final Clause**, and  
takes the Conjunctive :

*Solon furere se simulavit, quo tutior ejus vita esset.* Cic.

*Solon pretended to be mad in order that his life might be the safer.*

**454** **Qui** introduces a **Causal Clause**, and usually takes the Con-  
junctive :

*Miseret tui me qui hunc facias inimicum tibi.* TER.

*I pity you for making this man your enemy.*

*Note 1.*—**Qui** causal is sometimes strengthened by *quippe*, *ut*, *utpote*.

*Note 2.*—**Non quo** is sometimes used for **non quod** : **non quo** *quemquam*  
*plus amem, eo feci* (TER.), *I have not done it because I love anyone more.*

*Note 3.*—**Qui** with the Indicative forms a **Causal Clause** as a paren-  
thesis :

*Quā es prudentiā, nihil te fugiet.* Cic.

*Such is your prudence, nothing will escape you.*



- 455** The rules for the use of *qui* with Indicative or Conjunctive apply also to the Relative particles *quo* (*whither*), *qua* (*where, in what way*), *ubi* (*where*), *unde* (*whence*).

*Locus, quo exercitui aditus non erat.* CAES.

*A place whither there was no approach for the army.*

*Colles, unde erat despectus in mare.* CAES.

*The hills, from which there was a view over the sea.*

*Qua ducitis, adsum.* VERG.

*Where you lead, I am present.*

*Ne illi sit cera, ubi facere possit litteras.* PLAUT.

*Let him have no wax on which to write.*

A clause introduced by a Relative particle may be adverbial, unless the clause distinctly qualifies a noun in the Principal Sentence :

*Antonius quo se verteret non habebat.* CIC.

*Antony had no place whither he could turn.*

- 456** *Note.*—*Qui* with the Conjunctive sometimes limits a statement: *quod sciam, so far as I know*; *omnium, quos quidem cognoverim, of all those at least whom I have known.*

- 457** *Note.*—The Relative is often used at the beginning of a Principal Sentence to show the connexion with something which has gone before; *quo facto, this being done*; *quā de causā, for which reason*; *quod dicis, as to that which you say.*

#### ORATIO OBLIQUA.

- 458** *Oratio Obliqua* is used in reports, whether short or long, of speeches, letters, &c. Indirect Statement, Command, and Question are often contained in the report of one speech by historians, especially by Caesar, Livy, and Tacitus.

- 459** In *Indirect Statement* the Principal Verbs are changed from the Indicative to the Infinitive in the same tense :

*Direct.*  
Romulus urbem condidit.  
*Romulus founded the city.*

*Indirect.*  
Narrant Romulum urbem condidisse.  
*They say that Romulus founded the city.*

- 460** *Note.*—If the actual words of the speaker or writer are quoted, they are often introduced with *inquit, he says*, following the first word :

*Romulus haec precatus, 'hinc,' inquit, 'Romani, Juppiter iterare pugnam jubet.'* LIV.

*When Romulus had thus prayed, 'Hence,' he says, 'Romans, Jupiter commands (you) to renew the battle.'*



**461** In Indirect Commands, the Conjunctive (usually in the Imperfect, but sometimes in the Present Tense) takes the place of the Imperative of Direct Commands :

*Direct.*

Ite, inquit, create consules ex plebe.

*Go, he says, and elect consuls from the plebs.*

*Indirect.*

(Hortatus est :) irent crearent consules ex plebe.

**462** In Indirect Questions in the Second Person, the Verbs are in the Conjunctive (usually in the Imperfect or Pluperfect Tense, but sometimes in the Present or Perfect) :

*Direct.*

Quid agis? inquit. Cur non antea pugnam commisisti?

*What are you about? he says. Why have you not joined battle before?*

*Indirect.*

Quid ageret? Cur non antea pugnam commisisset?

**463** Indirect Questions in the First or Third Person are generally expressed by the Accusative and Infinitive :\*

*Direct.*

Cur ego pro hominibus ignavis sanguinem profudi? Num semper hostes ad pugnam cessabunt?

*Why have I shed my blood for cowards? Will the enemy always be slow to fight?*

*Indirect.*

Cur se pro hominibus ignavis sanguinem profudisse? Num semper hostes ad pugnam cessaturos?

**464** The Pronouns ego, me, nos, meus, noster of Oratio Recta are converted in Oratio Obliqua into se, suus; tu, te, vos, tuus, vester, are converted into ille, illum, illi, illos, illius, illorum :

Ego te pro hoste habebo; socii quoque nostri amicitiam tuam exuent.

*I shall regard you as an enemy; our allies also will throw off your friendship.*

Se illum pro hoste habiturum; socios quoque suos illius amicitiam exuturos.

\* Such Questions are really Statements put for rhetorical effect in an Interrogative form. 'Why have I shed my blood for cowards?' means, 'I have shed my blood for cowards—why?' I have shed my blood

for cowards to no purpose. 'Will the enemy always be slow to fight?' means, 'The enemy will not always be slow to fight.'

- 465** The Reflexive Pronoun, *se suus*, in Compound Sentences is often used to refer, not to the Subject of the Principal Sentence (316), but to the Subject of the Clause in which it stands :

*Nervios hortatur ne sui liberandi occasionem dimittant.*  
CAES.

*He urges the Nervii that they should not lose the opportunity of freeing themselves.*

*Rex supplicem monuit ut consuleret sibi.*

*The king warned the suppliant that he should take heed to himself.*

- 466** Sometimes *ipse* is used for the sake of clear distinction. Caesar asked the soldiers :—

*Quid tandem vererentur aut cur de sua virtute aut de ipsius diligentia desperarent?* CAES.

*What cause had they to fear, why did they despair either of their own bravery or of his carefulness?*

#### SUBORDINATE CLAUSES IN ORATIO OBLIQUA.

- 467** Substantival Clauses may have Clauses subordinate to them ; if the Verb in such Clauses is Finite, it is generally in the Conjunctive Mood, and the construction is called Suboblique.

This construction is seen in the following examples :

*Caesar ad me scripsit gratissimum sibi esse quod quieverim.*  
CIC.

*Caesar has written to me that it is very pleasing to him that I have remained quiet.*

*Ais, quoniam sit natura mortalis, immortalem etiam esse oportere.* CIC.

*You say that, since there is a mortal nature, there must also be an immortal one.*

*Quotiens patriam videret, totiens se beneficium meum videre dixit.* CIC.

*He said that, as often as he saw his country, so often did he see my service.*

*Sapientissimum esse dicunt eum, cui, quod opus sit, ipsi veniat in mentem; proxime accedere illum, qui alterius bene inventis obtemperet.* CIC.

*They say that the wisest man is he to whose mind whatever is needful occurs; that the next to him is he who turns to account the useful discoveries of another.*

*Note 1.*—A Relative Clause in Oratio Obliqua, if added merely by way of explanation, may be in the Indicative :

Xerxes certiore[m] feci id agi ut pons, quem in Hellesponto fecerat, dissolveretur. NEP.

*I sent Xerxes word that a plot was being arranged that the bridge (which he had made over the Hellespont) might be broken down.*

The words '*which he had made over the Hellespont*' were not part of the message to Xerxes, but are added by the writer for explanation.

*Note 2.*—Dum, while, is used with the Indicative, even in Oratio Obliqua :

Vident se, dum libertatem sectantur, in servitutem prolapsos.  
*They see that, while striving for liberty, they have themselves fallen into slavery.*

**468** A Finite Verb subordinate to a Conjunctive is usually in the Conjunctive :

Miraris si nemo praestet quem non merearis amorem? HOR.  
*Are you surprised if no one shows you the love which you do not deserve?*

Utinam tunc essem natus quando Romani dona accipere coepissent. SALL.

*Would that I had been born when the Romans began to receive gifts.*

**469** A Clause may be virtually oblique, with the Verb in the Conjunctive (Virtual Oratio Obliqua), when it contains the speaker's statement of another person's words or opinions, for which he does not make himself responsible. If the speaker made the statement his own, as being one of fact, the Verb would be in the Indicative :

Laudat Africanum Panaetius quod fuerit abstinens. CIC.  
*Panaetius praises Africanus because (as he says) he was temperate.*

Caesar Haeduos frumentum, quod polliciti essent, flagitabat. CAES.

*Caesar demanded of the Haedui the corn which (he reminded them) they had promised.*

Themistocles noctu ambulabat, quod somnum capere non posset. CIC.

*Themistocles used to walk at night because (as he said) he could not sleep.*

Alium rogantes regem misere ad Jovem,  
Inutilis quoniam esset qui fuerat datus. PHAEDR.  
*They (the frogs) sent envoys to Jupiter to ask for another king, since (as they complained) the one who had been given was useless.*

## NARRATIVE IN ORATIO OBLIQUA.

470

## Direct Statement.

(1) Ars earum rerum est quae sciuntur; oratoris autem omnis actio opinionibus, non scientia, continetur; nam et apud eos dicimus qui nesciunt, et ea dicimus quae nescimus ipsi. Cic.

*Art belongs to the things which are known; but the whole sphere of an orator is in opinion, not in knowledge; for we both speak in the presence of those who know not, and speak of that which we ourselves know not.*

(2) Cum Germanis Haedui semel atque iterum armis contenderunt; magnam calamitatem pulsati acceperunt, omnem nobilitatem, omnem equitatum amiserunt. Sed pejus victoribus Sequanis quam Haeduis victis accidit; propterea quod Ariovistus, rex Germanorum, in eorum finibus consedit, tertiamque partem agri Sequani, qui est optimus totius Galliae, occupavit. Ariovistus barbarus, iracundus, temerarius est, non possunt ejus imperia diutius sustineri.

## Indirect Statement.

(Antonius apud Ciceronem docet:)

Artem earum rerum esse quae sciantur;  
oratoris autem omnem actionem opinione, non scientia, contineri;  
quia et apud eos dicat qui nesciant;  
et ea dicat quae ipse nesciat.

(Antonius teaches in Cicero:)

*That art belongs to the things which are known;  
but that the whole sphere of an orator is in opinion, not in knowledge;  
because he both speaks before those who know not;  
and speaks of that which he himself knows not.*

Locutus est pro Haeduis Divitiacus: Cum Germanis Haedui semel atque iterum armis contendisse; magnam calamitatem pulsos accepisse, omnem nobilitatem, omnem equitatum amisisse. Sed pejus victoribus Sequanis quam Haeduis victis accidisse; propterea quod Ariovistus, rex Germanorum, in eorum finibus consedisset, tertiamque partem agri Sequani, qui esset optimus totius Galliae, occupavisset. Ariovistum esse barbarum, iracundum, temerarium, non posse ejus imperia diutius sustineri.

*The Haedui have repeatedly fought with the Germans; they have been defeated and have suffered great misfortune; they have lost all their nobles and all their cavalry. But worse has befallen the conquering Sequani than the conquered Haedui, for Ariovistus, king of the Germans, has settled in their dominions and occupied a third part of their territory, which is the best in all Gaul. Ariovistus is barbarous, passionate and violent; his commands can no longer be endured.*

(3) Consules scripta ad Caesarem mandata remittunt, quorum haec erat summa :

*'In Galliam revertere, Arimino excede, exercitus dimitte; quae si feceris, Pompeius in Hispanias ibit.'*

*The Consuls sent back to Caesar written instructions, of which this was the sum total : 'Return into Gaul, quit Ariminum, and disband your armies; when you have done these things, Pompey will go into Spain.'*

(4) Thrasybulus, cum exercitus triginta tyrannorum fugeret, magna voce exclamat :

*'Cur me victorem fugitis? Civium hanc mementote aciem, non hostium esse; triginta ego dominis, non civitati, bellum infero.'*

*Thrasybulus, when the army of the thirty tyrants was in flight, cried aloud : 'Why do you fly from me as your conqueror? Remember that this is an army of fellow-citizens, not of foreign enemies; I am waging war on the thirty tyrants, not on the community.'*

*Divitiacus said on behalf of the Haedui: 'That the Haedui had fought repeatedly with the Germans; that, having been defeated, they had suffered great misfortune (and) had lost all their nobles, all their cavalry. But that worse had befallen the conquering Sequani than the conquered Haedui, for Ariovistus, king of the Germans, had settled in their dominions and had occupied a third part of their territory, which was the best in all Gaul. Ariovistus was barbarous, passionate, violent; his commands could no longer be endured.'*

*In Galliam reverteretur, Arimino excederet, exercitus dimitteret; quae si fecisset, Pompeium in Hispanias iturum.*

*Cur se victorem fugiant? Civium illam meminerint aciem, non hostium esse; triginta se dominis, non civitati, bellum inferre.*



(5) Oro vos, Veientes (inquit), ne me extorrem egentem, ex tanto modo regno cum liberis adolescentibus ante oculos vestros perire sinatis. Alii peregre in regnum Romam acciti sunt; ego rex, augens bello Romanum imperium, a proximis scelerata conjuratione pulsus sum. Patriam regnumque meum repetere, et persequi ingratos cives volo. Ferte opem, adjuvate; vestras quoque veteres injurias ultum ite, totiens caesas legiones, agrum ademptum.

*I entreat you, men of Veii (said Tarquin), not to let me with my young children die before your eyes, banished in destitution from a kingdom lately so great. Others were fetched to Rome from abroad to reign. I, their king, while enlarging by war the Roman empire, was expelled by a wicked conspiracy of my nearest kinsmen. I wish to reclaim my country and my kingdom, and to punish ungrateful citizens. Give me help, assist me: hasten to avenge also your own old wrongs, your legions so often slaughtered, your land taken from you.*

Orat Tarquinius Veientes ne se extorrem egentem ex tanto modo regno cum liberis adolescentibus ante oculos suos perire sinerent: alios peregre in regnum Romam accitos; se regem augmentem bello Romanum imperium, a proximis scelerata conjuratione pulsum: . . patriam se regnumque suum repetere et persequi ingratos cives velle: ferrent opem, adjuvarent; suas quoque veteres injurias ultum irent, totiens caesas legiones, agrum ademptum.  
Liv.



## PROSODY.

**471** PROSODY treats of the Quantity of Syllables and the Laws of Metre.

### I. GENERAL RULES OF QUANTITY.

1. A syllable is short when it contains a short vowel followed by a simple consonant or by another vowel: as *pāter*, *dēus*.

2. A syllable is long when it contains a long vowel or diphthong: *frātēr*, *cāedēs*, *nēmo*.

3. A vowel short by nature becomes long by position when it is followed by two consonants, or by *x* or *z*: *cānto*, *sīmplēx*, *orȳza*.

*Exception.*—A short vowel before a mute followed by a liquid becomes doubtful: *lugūbre*, *tenēbrae*, *trīplex*.

4. A long vowel or diphthong becomes short before another vowel, or before *h* followed by a vowel: *prōavus*, *trāho*, *prāeesse*.

But in Greek words the vowel or diphthong keeps its length: *āer*, *Aenēas*, *Enȳo*, *Melibōeus*.

*Exceptions.*—In *fīo*, *Gāius*, *Pompēi*, *dīus*, *diēi*, *Rhēa* (*Silvia*), the vowel remains long.

*Note.*—*Prae* in compounds is the only Latin word in which a diphthong occurs before a vowel.

5. A syllable is called doubtful when it is found in poetry to be sometimes long, sometimes short: *Dīana*, *fidēi*, *rēi*, and genitives in *-ius*, as *illīus*, *except alius*, *alterius*.

6. The quantity of a stem syllable is kept, as a rule, in compounds and derivatives: *cādo occīdo*, *rātus irrītus*, *flūmēn flūmīneus*.

Exceptions to this rule are numerous, *lūceo*, *lūcerna*.

**472**

### II. RULE FOR MONOSYLLABLES.

Most monosyllables are long: *dā*, *dēs*, *mē*, *vēr*, *sī*, *sīs*, *sōl*, *nōs*, *tū*, *vīc*, *mūs*.

*Exceptions:*

Substantives: *cōr*, *fēl*, *mēl*, *ōs* (*bone*), *vīr*.

Pronouns: *īs*, *īd*, *quā* (*any*), *quīs*, *quid*, *quōd*, *quōt*, *tōt*.

Verbs: *dāt*, *dēt*, *īt*, *scīt*, *sīt*, *stāt*, *stēt*, *fāc*, *fēr*, *ēs* (from *sum*).

Particles: *āb*, *ād*, *ān*, *āt*, *bīs*, *cīs*, *ēt*, *īn*, *nēc*, *ōb*, *pēr*, *pōl*, *sāt*, *sēd*, *šūb*, *ūt*, *vēl*.

and the enclitics *-nē*, *-quē*, *-vē*.

## III. RULES FOR FINAL SYLLABLES.

## 1. A final is short.

*Exceptions.*—Ablatives of decl. 1. *mensā, bonā*; Vocative of Greek names in *as, Aeneā*; and of some in *es, Anchisā*; Indeclinable Numerals, *trigintā*; Imperatives of conj. 1. *amā* (but *putā*); most Particles in *a*; *frustrā, intereā* (but *itā, quiā*, short).

2. E final is short: *legē, timetē, carerē*.

*Exceptions.*—Ablatives of declension 5. *rē, diē*, with the derivatives *quarē, hodiē*. Cases of many Greek nouns; also *famē*. Adverbs formed from Adjectives; *miserē*; also *ferē, fermē* (but *benē, malē, facilē, impunē, temērē*, short). Imperatives of conj. 2. *monē* (but *cavē* is doubtful). Also the Interjection *ohē*.

3. I final is long: *dici, plebi, doli*.

*Exceptions.*—Vocatives and Datives of Greek nouns; *Chlori, Thysidi*; but Datives sometimes long: *Paridi*. Particles; *sicubi, necubi, nisi, quasi*. *Mihī, tibi, sibi, ubi*, and *ibi* are doubtful.

4. O final is long: *virgō, multō, juvō*.

*Exceptions.*—*Duō, octō, egō, modō, citō*, and a few verbs: *putō, sciō, nesciō*. In the Silver age *o* was often shortened in Verbs and Nouns.

5. U final is long: *cantū, dictū, diū*.6. Finals in *e* are long: *illie*; except *nēc* and *donēc*.7. Finals in *l, d, t* are short: *Hannibāl, illūd, amavīt*.8. Finals in *n* are short: *Iliōn, agmēn*.

*Exceptions.*—Many Greek words: *Hymēn, Ammōn*.

9. Finals in *r* are short: *calcār, amabitūr, Hectōr*.

*Exceptions.*—Many Greek words: *aēr, cratēr*; and compounds of *pār*: *dispār, impār*.

10. Finals in *as* are long: *terrās, Menalcās*.

*Exceptions.*—Greek nouns of decl. 3. *Arcās* (gen. *-ādis*) and acc. pl. *lampadās*; *anās, a duck*.

11. Finals in *ēs* are long: *nubēs, viderēs*.

*Exceptions.*—Cases of Greek nouns: *Arcadēs, Naiadēs*. Nominatives of a few substantives and adjectives with dental stems in *ēt, it, or id*: *segēs, pedēs, obsēs*; also *penēs*. Compounds of *ēs*: *adēs, potēs*.

12. Finals in *is* are short: *diceris, utilis, ensis*.

*Exceptions.*—Datives and Ablatives in *is*, including *gratis, foris*. Accusatives in *is*: *navis*; some Greek Nouns in *is*: *Salamis, Sanguis, pulvis*, are doubtful. 2nd Pers. Sing. Pres. Ind. conj. 4. *audis*; compounds of *vis, sis*; also *velis, malis, nolis*. In 2nd Pers. Sin. Fut. Perf. the ending is doubtful: *dixeris*.

13. Finals in **os** are long : ventōs, custōs, sacerdotōs.

*Exceptions.*—Greek words in ōs (os) : Delōs, Arcadōs; also compōs, impōs, exōs.

14. Finals in **us** are short : holūs, intūs, amamūs.

*Exceptions.*—Nominatives from long stems of decl. 3. are long : virtūs, tellūs, incūs, juventūs; the contracted cases of decl. 4. : artūs, gradūs; and a few Greek words : Didūs, Sapphūs (genitive).

15. The Greek words chelŷs, Tiphŷs, Erinŷs have the final syllable short and the vocative ending ŷ.

474

#### IV. ON THE LAWS OF METRE.

A Verse (versus, *line*) is composed of a certain number of Feet.

A Foot consists of two or more syllables, of which one has the ictus or principal accent, said to be in *arsis*; the other syllable or syllables are said to be in *thēsis*.

The principal feet in Latin poetry are the following :

**Iambus**, one short and one long syllable (◡—), cārō.

**Trochee**, one long and one short syllable (—◡), ārmă.

**Dactyl**, one long and two short syllables (—◡◡), litōră.

**Anapaest**, two short and one long syllable (◡◡—), pătŭlăe.

**Spondee**, two long syllables (— —), fătō.

**Tribrach**, three short syllables (◡◡◡), tēmĕrĕ.

The Spondee often takes the place of the Dactyl in Dactylic verse. It may also take the place of the Iambus or Trochee in certain parts of an Iambic or Trochaic verse.

The Tribrach can take the place of the Iambus or the Trochee in any place but the last, but is more rarely used.

*Note.*—A short syllable in versification constitutes one ‘mora,’ or ‘time.’ A long syllable (=two short) constitutes two ‘morae,’ or ‘times.’

The Iambus, Trochee, Tribrach are feet of three ‘times;’ Dactyl, Anapaest, Spondee, are feet of four ‘times.’

A vowel is cut off at the end of a word if there be a vowel at the beginning of the next word : ‘Phyllid’ ām’ ant’ āliās,’ for ‘Phyllida amo ante alias;’ this is called Elision (Synaloepha).

A vowel and **m** are cut off at the end of a word if there be a vowel at the beginning of the next word : ‘Ō cŭras hōmīn’—Ō quant’—est in rĕbŭs inane,’ for ‘hominum,’ ‘quantum.’ This is called Ecthlipsis.

A vowel unelided in such a position is said to be in Hiatus.

Tēr sŭnt|cōnă|tī im|pōnĕrĕ|Pĕliō|Ossam.

475

## V. METRE AND RHYTHM.

4. Metre (metrum, *measure*) is used in two different senses.

- i. It means any system of versification : which may take its name either (1) from the Foot which prevails in it : Dactylic (Iambic, Trochaic, Anapaestic) metre ; or (2) from the subjects of which it treats : Heroic (Elegiac) metre ; or (3) from the musical instrument to which it was sung : Lyric metres ; or (4) from the poet who is said to have invented or chiefly used it : Alcaic metre (from Alcaeus), Sapphic (from Sappho), etc.
- ii. Some part of a Verse is called 'a metre.' In Dactylic and some other verses each foot constitutes 'a metre.' In Iambic, Trochaic, and Anapaestic verses, two feet constitute 'a metre.'

*Note.*—Hence a verse gains a name from the number of such metres.

A verse with two metres is called Dimeter.

„	„	three	„	„	Trimeter.
„	„	four	„	„	Tetrameter.
„	„	five	„	„	Pentameter.
„	„	six	„	„	Hexameter.

A verse which has its metres complete is said to be acatalectic (unclipt). If its metres are incomplete, it is catalectic (clipt).

476

*B.*—Harmonious order of words is called Rhythm. Prose has rhythm as well as verse ; but that of verse is called Poetic Rhythm. The dividing of a verse according to rhythm is called scanning or scansion. The method of scansion may be shown by two Dactylic Hexameters of Vergil :

1	2	3	4	5	6
(a) Tītŷrĕ   tū    pātŭ lae    rĕcŭ bāns    sŭb   tĕgmĭnĕ   fāgī					
(b) Fōrmō sām    rĕsō nārĕ    dō cēs    Amā rŷllidā   silvās.					

*Note.*—The numerals and single strokes show the six feet or metres of the Hexameter.

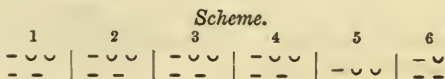
Caesura means the division of a word before the ending of a foot. There are three caesuras in each of the verses (a), (b), marked by a short double stroke. A verse without caesura is unrhythmical and inadmissible. Caesura after a long syllable is called strong, and is most frequent. Caesura after a short syllable is called weak, as that in the third foot of (b) after -nārĕ. (See 'Dactylic Hexameter.') The ending of word and foot together is called Dialysis :—Tityre, tegmine.

## VI. DACTYLIC, IAMBIC AND SOME LYRIC SYSTEMS OF VERSE.

477

## A. Dactylic Hexameter :

This Metre has six feet. The first four may be Dactyls or Spondees. The fifth must be a Dactyl (rarely a Spondee). The sixth a Spondee or Trochee (the last syllable in a verse being doubtful).



(See the Examples, *a*, *b*, 476).

*Note.*—A verse called Hypermeter (a syllable over-measure) is occasionally found, the syllable in excess being elided before the initial vowel of the next line:

Āerēā cui grādibūs sūrgēbānt liminā nēxāē|que  
 Āerē trābēs . . .

The Caesura by far most common in Dactylic Hexameters is that in the third foot (called Penthemimeral), which is generally strong, as in (*a*) after *patulae*, but occasionally weak, as in (*b*) after *resonare*.

Next in importance is that in the fourth foot, called Hephthemimeral, which is sometimes the chief caesura of the verse: as

(*c*) clāmōr|ēs simūl | hōrrēn|dōs || ād | sidērā | tōllit.

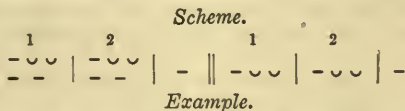
The Trihemimeral Caesura in the second foot often contributes to the rhythm usefully, as after *clamores* (*c*).

*Note.*—Hemimeris means ‘a half.’ Hence ‘Trihemimeral’ means ‘after three half-feet’: *cla-mor-es*; ‘Penthemimeral’ means ‘after five half-feet’: *hic il-lum vi-di*; ‘Hephthemimeral’ means ‘after seven half-feet’: *quam Juno fertur terris*. This notation counts two short syllables as one half-foot: *Titŭrē tū pātŭ-lae rēcŭ-bans*.

The Heroic Measure of Epic poets, Vergil, Lucan, &c., consists of Dactylic Hexameters only.

## 478 B. Dactylic Pentameter:

This Verse consists of two parts, called Penthemimers, which are kept distinct. The first Penthemimer contains two feet (Dactyls or Spondees) and a long syllable. The second contains also two feet (both Dactyls) and a long syllable.



tū dōmī|nūs tū|vīr || tū mīhī | frātēr ē|rās.

This Verse is not used alone, but follows an Hexameter in the Elegiac Distich:

Dōnēc ēris fēlix, mūltōs nūmērābīs āmicos,  
 Tēmporā sī fŭērīnt nūbīlā, sōlūs ēris.

The chief Elegiac poets are Ovid, Tibullus, and Propertius.

## 479 C. Iambic Trimeter or Senarius:

This Metre has six feet. Each may be an Iambus:

Sŭis | ēt i|psā Rō|mā vī|ribūs | rūit.



But a Spondee may stand in the first, third, and fifth foot; and (rarely) a Dactyl or Anapaest in the first. A Tribrach sometimes takes the place of an Iambus, except in the two last feet.

*Scheme.*

1	2	3	4	5	6
υ -	υ -	υ -	υ -	υ -	υ -
- -		- -		- -	
υ υ υ	υ υ υ	υ υ υ	υ υ υ		
- υ υ					
υ υ -					

*Examples.*

lābūn|tūr āl|tis ॥ in|tērīm | rīpīs | āquae.  
 Cānīdī|ā brēvī|būs ॥ im|plicā|tā vī|pēris.  
 pōsītōs|quē vēr|nās ॥ dī|tis ēx|āmēn | dōmus.

The usual Caesura is after the first syllable of the third foot. Another less usual, is after the first syllable of the fourth foot; as,

Ībē|rīcis | pērūs|tē ॥ fū|nībūs | lātus.

The Trimeter may form a distinct measure.

#### 480 D. Iambic Dimeter:

This Verse leaves out the third and fourth feet of the Trimeter, with which it is used to form an Iambic Distich:

pātēr|nā rū|rā bō|būs ēx|ērcēt | sūis,  
 sōlū|tūs ōm|nī fē|nōre.

Horace uses this Distich oftener in his Epodes than any other measure.

#### 481 E. Strophic Metres:

The lyric poets Horace and Catullus have used more than twenty metres. But we shall notice here only the Sapphic and Alcaic Stanzas, each of four lines.

*Note.*—Anacrusis is a short or long syllable, which introduces the scansion of a verse.

Base is a foot of two syllables (Spondee, Iambus or Trochee) which introduces the scansion.

These may be represented in English:

Anacrusis	1	2	3
	O	Mari on's a	bonnie   lass
Base	1	2	3
	O my	Mari on's a	bonnie   lass

A double base means two feet, each of two syllables, introducing the scansion.



482 1. The Sapphic Stanza :

The Stanza is scientifically scanned in Latin by three verses of this form :

Donble Base	Dactyl	Trochee	Trochee
- - - -	- - -	- -	- -

followed by a verse called Adonius,

Dactyl	Trochee
- - -	- -

1. Tērrūit gēn|tēs grāvē | nē rē|dīret
2. Sāēcūlūm Pŷr|rhāē nōvā | mōnstrā | quēstae
3. Ōmnē cūm Prō|tēūs pēcūs | ēgīt | āltos
4. Visērē | mōntes.

Sappho used two Trochees as the double base ; but Latin poets always lengthened the fourth syllable.

The strong Caesura after the fifth syllable is most frequent, but the weak Caesura after the sixth is occasionally used for variety.

Nōn sēmēl dicēmūs || Īō triūmphe.

The Adonian verse is so closely united with the third line that Hiatus at the close of this line is unusual, and words are sometimes divided between the two :

Thrāciō bācchāntē mīgīs sūb inter-  
lūniā vēnto.

*Note.*—A Hypermeter also occurs (477, *note*).

Dīssīdēns plēbī nūmērō bēātō | rum  
Ēxīmīt vīrtūs.

483 2. The Alcaic Stanza :

Anacr.	Double Base	Dactyl	Troch.
1. -	- - - -	- - -	- -   -
2. -	- - - -	- - -	- -   -

Anacr.	Troch.	Spond.	Troch.	Troch.
3. -	- -	- -	- -	- -
4. - - -	- - -	- -	- -	- -

1. Quī | rōrē pūrō | Cāstālī | āē lā|vīt
2. Crī|nēs sōlūtōs | quī Lŷcī|āē tē|net
3. Dū|mētā | nātā|lēmqūe | silvam
4. Dēliūs | ēt Pātā|reus Ā|pōllo.

### Rules for the Rhythm of the Alcaic Stanza.

#### (a) *First and Second Lines.*

- (1) A short syllable at the beginning is rare.
- (2) The fifth syllable generally ends a word ; but an Elision often occurs after it : as

Quō Stŷx ēt invīs|i hōrrīdā Tāēnāri.

- (3) The fifth and the last syllables are rarely monosyllables.

#### (b) *Third Line.*

- (1) The first syllable is seldom short.
- (2) The line rarely begins with a word of four syllables, and only when Elision follows : as

Fūnālia ēt vēctēs ēt ārcus.

never with two dissyllables.

- (3) The line should not end with a word of four syllables : rarely with two dissyllables.
- (4) No monosyllable should end the line except (rarely) et or in, with an Elision :

Cūm flōrē Māēcēnās rōsārum, et  
Īncūdē diffīngās rētūsum in

#### (c) *Fourth Line.*

- (1) If the first Dactyl ends a word, the second should end in the middle of a word.
- (2) A weak Caesura in the second Dactyl should be avoided, but is sometimes justified by the sense of the passage :

Jūppītēr ipsē rūēns tūmūltu.  
Stēsichōriqūe grāvēs Cāmēnae.

*Note.*—Hypermetrics occur only twice in Horace :

Sōrs ēxītūra, ēt nōs in aēter|num  
Ēxīlium impōsitūrā cymbae.  
Cūm pācē dēlābētīs Etru|scum  
In mārē.

But in his third and fourth books he avoids ending a verse with a vowel or m before a verse in the same stanza beginning with a vowel.

## APPENDIX I.

## DERIVED AND COMPOUNDED WORDS.

SUBSTANTIVES are derived from Verbs, Adjectives and other Substantives. The chief classes of Substantives derived from Verbs are the following :—

## From the Verb-Stem:

## With Suffix

- a, denoting the agent: *scriba, notary* (scribo); *advena, new comer* (advenio); *conviva, guest* (con-vivo).
- or, abstract words denoting action or feeling: *amor, love* (amo); *timor, fear* (timeo); *clamor, outcry* (clamo); *terror, terror* (terreo).
- ium, denoting action or effect: *gaudium, joy* (gaudeo); *ingenium, mind* (ingigno); *judicium, judgment* (judico, for jus-dico); *naufragium, shipwreck* (naufragio, formed from the Stems of *navis, ship*, and *frango, break*).
- ies, denoting a thing formed: *acies, line of battle* (aceo); *facies, face, form* (facio); *effigies, likeness* (effingo); *species, appearance* (specio); *series, order* (sero).
- es: *sedes, seat* (sedeo); *nubes, cloud* (nubo).
- io, denoting the thing acted on: *regio, region* (rego); *legio, legion* (lego); *opinio, opinion* (opino).
- men, denoting the instrument or the thing done: *agmen, column* (ago); *tegmen, covering* (tego); *unguen, ointment* (unguo).
- mentum: *documentum, document* (doceo); *instrumentum, instrument* (instruo).
- bulum, -brum, denoting the instrument or object: *vocabulum, name* (voco); *venabulum, hunting-spear* (venor); *flabrum, blast* (flo, Stem *fla-*).
- culum, -crum: *curriculum, course* (curro); *spectaculum, spectacle* (specto); *sepulcrum, tomb* (sepelio).
- ile, denoting the instrument: *sedile, seat* (sedeo); *cubile, couch* (cubo).

## From the Supine Stem:

- tor, -sor, denoting the agent: *arator, ploughman* (aro); *auctor, author* (augeo); *victor, victor* (vinco); *auditor, hearer* (audio); *dictator, dictator* (dicto); *sponsor, surety* (spondeo); *cursor, runner* (curro).
- A few Nouns in -tor form a feminine in -trix, as *victrix*.

## With Suffix

- tus, -sus, denoting action : *eventus*, *event* (e-venio) ; *motus*, *motion*, (moveo) ; *sonitus*, *sound* (sono) ; *cursus*, *running* (curro) ; *plausus*, *clapping* (plaudo) ; *lusus*, *game* (ludo).
- tura, -sura, denoting function or result of action : *dictatura*, *dictatorship* (dicto) ; *cultura*, *culture* (colo) ; *pictura*, *picture* (pingo) ; *tonsura*, *tonsure* (tondeo) ; *caesura*, *dividing* (caedo).
- tio, -sio, abstract : *actio*, *action* (ago) ; *cogitatio*, *thought* (cogito) ; *relatio*, *relation* (refero) ; *visio*, *sight* (video) ; *pensio*, *payment* (pendo).

## Substantives derived from Adjectives :

- ia : *memoria*, *memory* (memor) ; *concordia*, *peace* (concor) ; *sapientia*, *wisdom* (sapient) ; *divitiae*, pl., *riches* (dives).
- itia : *laetitia*, *joyfulness* (laetus) ; *amicitia*, *friendship* (amicus) ; *mollitia*, also *mollities*, *softness* (mollis).
- tas : *libertas*, *freedom* (liber) ; *veritas*, *truth* (verus) ; *felicitas*, *happiness* (felix).
- tudo : *fortitudo*, *valour* (fortis) ; *multitudo*, *multitude* (multus).
- monia : *acrimonia*, *sharpness* (acer) ; *sanctimonia*, *sanctity* (sanctus) ; *parcimonia*, *parsimony* (parcus).

## Substantives derived from Substantives :

- tor : *viator*, *traveller* (via) ; *janitor*, *doorkeeper* (janua) ; *balneator*, *bath-keeper* (balneum). The feminines *janitrix*, *balneatrix* are used.
- atus : *senatus*, *senate* (senex) ; *magistratus*, *magistracy* (magister) ; *consulatus*, *consulship* (consul).
- io, -o : *ludio*, *player* (ludus) ; *pellio*, *furrier* (pellis) ; *centurio*, *captain of a hundred* (centum, centuria) ; *praedo*, *robber* (praeda).
- arius : *aquarius*, *water-carrier* (aqua) ; *tabularius*, *registry* (tabula). A secondary derivative is *tabellarius*, *letter-carrier* (tabella).
- arium : *granarium*, *granary* (granum) ; *tabularium*, *archives* (tabula).
- etum, -tum : *olivetum*, *olive-grove* (oliva) ; *rosetum*, *rose-garden* (rosa) ; *arbustum*, *shrubby* ; also the later form *arboretum* (stem arbor-, arbor-) ; *salictum*, *willow-ground* (salix).
- ina, -inum : *textrina*, *weaver's shop* (textor) ; *pistrinum*, *bakehouse* (pistor).
- ulus -olus, -a, -um : *anulus*, *little ring* (annus) ; *gladiolus*, *little sword* (gladius) ; *formula*, *little form* (forma) ; *lineola*, *little line* (linea) ; *scutulum*, *little shield* (scutum) ; *palliolum*, *little cloak* (pallium).
- ellus, -a, -um : *agellus*, *small field* (ager) ; *fabella*, *short story* (fabula) ; *flagellum*, *little whip* (flagrum) ; *corolla*, *chaplet* (corona).
- culus, -a, -um : *versiculus*, *little verse* (versus) ; *matercula*, *little mother* (mater) ; *reticulum*, *little net* (rete).

## Adjectives derived from Verbs :

## With Suffix

- ax : audax, *daring* (audeo) ; rapax, *grasping* (rapio) ; tenax, *tenacious* (teneo) ; ferax, *fruitful* (fero).
- bundus, -cundus : furibundus, *raging* (furo) ; moribundus, *dying* (morio) ; jucundus, *pleasant* (juvo).
- uus : continuus, *continuous* (con-tineo) ; vacuus, *empty* (vacuo) ; assiduus, *persevering* (assideo).
- ulus : tremulus, *trembling* (tremo) ; querulus, *complaining* (queror) ; credulus, *trustful* (credo).
- idus, -idis : calidus, *hot* (caleo) ; pavidus, *timid* (paveo) ; viridis, *green* (vireo).
- ilis : utilis, *useful* (utor) ; facilis, *easy* (facio) ; docilis, *teachable* (doceo).
- bilis : penetrabilis, *penetrable* (penetro) ; flebilis, *lamentable* (fleo) ; but sometimes active ; penetrabile frigus, *penetrating cold*.
- ivus, joined to the Supine Stem : captivus, *captive* (capio) ; nativus, *native* (nascor) ; fugitivus, *fugitive* (fugio).

## Adjectives derived from Nouns :

- ius : regius, *royal* (rex) ; plebeius, *plebeian* (plebs) ; egregius, *out of the common* (grex).
- icus : bellicus, *warlike* (bellum) ; barbaricus, *barbarous* (barbarus) ; Gallicus, *Gaulish* ; civicus, *civic* (civis).
- ticus : rusticus, *belonging to the country* (rus) ; domesticus, *domestic* (domus).
- anus, -ianus : humanus, *human* (homo) ; urbanus, *urban* (urbs) ; Romanus, *Roman* (Roma) ; Africanus, *African* ; praetorianus, *praetorian* (praetor).
- nus : fraternus, *fraternal* (frater) ; aeternus, *eternal* (aetas) ; externus, *external* (exter) ; alternus, *alternate* (alter).
- inus : marinus, *marine* (mare) ; Latinus, *Latin* ; palatinus, *belonging to the palace* (palatium).
- estis : caelestis, *heavenly* (caelum) ; agrestis, *rural* (ager).
- ensis : forensis, *belonging to the forum* ; castrensis, *belonging to the camp* (castra).
- alis, -aris : naturalis, *natural* (natura) ; generalis, *general* (genus) ; regalis, *kingly* (rex) ; vulgaris, *common* (vulgus) ; salutaris, *healthful* (salus). (See 20.)
- osus : formosus, *beautiful* (forma) ; gloriosus, *glorious* (gloria).
- lentus : fraudulentus, *deceitful* (fraus) ; turbulentus, *noisy* (turba).
- bris, -cris : funebris, *funereal* (funus) ; mediocris, *middling* (medius).
- eus : aureus, *golden* (aurum) ; ferreus, *iron* (ferrum).
- ulus : parvulus (parvus).
- ellus : misellus (miser).



## With Suffix

-tus : modestus, *moderate* (modus) ; robustus, *strong* (robur) ; vetustus, *aged* (vetus).

-tinus : crastinus, *of to-morrow* (cras) ; diutinus, *lasting* (diu).

## DERIVED VERBS.

## Verbs derived from Nouns.

<b>A-Stems</b>	curo, <i>take care</i> (cura) ; onero, <i>burden</i> (onus) ; paco, <i>pacify</i> (pax). Deponents: moror, <i>delay</i> (mora) ; dignor, <i>deem worthy</i> (dignus) ; miseror, <i>pity</i> (miser).
<b>E-Stems</b>	floreo, <i>bloom</i> (flos) ; luceo, <i>shine</i> (lux) ; flaveo, <i>am yellow</i> (flavus).
<b>U-Stems</b>	metuo, <i>fear</i> (metus) ; minuo, <i>diminish</i> (minus).
<b>I-Stems</b>	finio, <i>limit</i> (finis) ; servio, <i>am a slave</i> (servus) ; largior, <i>bestow</i> (largus).

## VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH PREPOSITIONS.

<b>a, ab, abs-</b>	a-vertō, <i>turn away</i> ; ab-sum, <i>am absent</i> ; abs-terreo, <i>frighten away</i> .
<b>ad</b>	ad-eo, <i>go to</i> ; ad-spicio, <i>look at</i> ; accipio, <i>accept</i> ; affero, <i>carry to</i> ; alloquor, <i>address</i> ; appono, <i>place near</i> ; arripio, <i>seize</i> ; assentior, <i>agree</i> ; attraho, <i>attract</i> .
<b>ambi</b>	amb-io, <i>go around</i> .
<b>con</b>	con-traho, <i>contract</i> ; compono, <i>compose</i> ; committo, <i>commit</i> ; colligo, <i>collect</i> ; corripio, <i>seize violently</i> ; confido, <i>rely on</i> .
<b>de</b>	de-cedo, <i>depart</i> ; decipio, <i>deceive</i> ; descendo, <i>come down</i> .
<b>e, ex</b>	e-duco, <i>lead forth</i> ; e-loquor, <i>utter</i> ; e-voco, <i>evoke</i> ; effundo, <i>pour out</i> ; ex-eo, <i>go forth</i> ; ex-pello, <i>expel</i> .
<b>in</b>	in-fero, <i>bring into</i> ; impero, <i>command</i> ; immineo, <i>overhang</i> ; illigo, <i>bind on</i> ; irrigo, <i>water</i> ; induro, <i>make hard</i> .
<b>inter</b>	inter-sum, <i>am among</i> ; interrogo, <i>question</i> ; intellego, <i>understand</i> .
<b>ob</b>	ob-tineo, <i>maintain</i> ; offero, <i>offer</i> ; oppono, <i>oppose</i> ; occurro, <i>meet, occur</i> .
<b>per</b>	per-mitto, <i>let go, permit</i> ; pereo, <i>perish</i> ; pelluceo, <i>shine through, am transparent</i> ; perterreo, <i>frighten greatly</i> .
<b>post</b>	post-pono, <i>put after</i> .
<b>prae</b>	prae-cedo, <i>go before</i> ; praefero, <i>prefer</i> ; praesto, <i>excel</i> .
<b>praeter</b>	praeter-eo, <i>pass by</i> .
<b>pro, prod-</b>	prod-eo, <i>go or come forth</i> ; pro-cedo, <i>proceed</i> ; pro-pono, <i>propose</i> ; promo, <i>produce</i> .
<b>red-, re-</b>	red-eo, <i>return</i> ; re-cordor, <i>remember</i> ; re-fero, <i>refer</i> ; restituo, <i>restore</i> .
<b>sed-, se-</b>	sed-eo, <i>sit</i> ; se-cerno, <i>separate</i> ; se-cludo, <i>shut up, seclude</i> .
<b>sub</b>	sub-do, <i>subdue</i> ; sub-mergo, <i>submerge</i> ; suc-curro, <i>succour</i> ; suf-fero, <i>suffer</i> ; sug-gero, <i>suggest</i> ; sup-plico, <i>supplicate</i> ; sur-ripio, <i>steal</i> ; suspicio, <i>look up at, suspect</i> .
<b>trans, tra-</b>	trans-mitto, <i>transmit</i> ; trans-porto, <i>transport</i> ; traduco, <i>lead across</i> ; traicio, <i>throw across</i> .



A few Verbs are compounded with Adverbs, as :

benedico, *commend* (bene dico) ; benefacio, *benefit* (bene facio)  
 maledico, *speak ill (of)* (male dico) ; malefacio, *do evil (to)* (male facio).  
 satisfacio, *satisfy* (satis facio) ; satisdo, *give bail* (satis do).

The following are a few specimens of compound words :

**Noun and Verb.**

auceps, *birdcatcher* (avis avi-, capio).  
 agricola, *husbandman* (ager agro-, colo).  
 fidicen, *lute-player* { fides fidi- }  
 tibicen, *flute-player* { tibia tibia- } cano  
 tubicen, *trumpeter* { tuba tuba- }  
 artifex, *artisan* (ars arti-, facio).  
 Lucifer, *morning star* (lux luc-, fero) ; frugifer, -a, -um, *fruit-bearing*  
 (frux frug-, fero).  
 Grajūgēna, *Greek* (Graius Graio-, gigno).  
 armiger, *armour-bearer* (arma armo-, gero).  
 jusjurandum, *oath* (jus-, juro).  
 senatusconsultum, *decree of the senate* (senatus senatu-, consultum  
 consulto-, from consulo).

**Two Substantives, or Substantive and Adjective.**

paterfamilias, *father of a family* (pater, familias, an old genitive).  
 respublica, *state, republic* (res, publicus).  
 bipes, *two-footed* (bis, pes).  
 tridens, *three-pronged, trident* (tres, dens).

## APPENDIX II.

## ROMAN MONEY, WEIGHTS, MEASURES, AND TIME.

## MONEY.

a. The As (Libra), or pound of 12 ounces (unciae), was thus divided :

Uncia	= 1 oz. or $\frac{1}{12}$ of the As.	Septunx	= 7 oz. or $\frac{7}{12}$ of the As.
Sextans	= 2 „ $\frac{1}{6}$ „	Bes	= 8 „ $\frac{2}{3}$ „
Quadrans	= 3 „ $\frac{1}{4}$ „	Dodrans	= 9 „ $\frac{3}{4}$ „
Triens	= 4 „ $\frac{1}{3}$ „	Dextans	= 10 „ $\frac{5}{6}$ „
Quincunx	= 5 „ $\frac{5}{12}$ „	Deunx	= 11 „ $\frac{11}{12}$ „
Semissis	= 6 „ $\frac{1}{2}$ „		

b. Unciae usurae =  $\frac{1}{12}$  per cent. per month = 1 per cent. per annum.

Sextantes	= $\frac{1}{6}$ „ „	= 2 „ „
etc.	etc.	etc.

Asses usurae = 1 per cent. per month = 12 per cent. per annum.

Asses usurae were also called centesimae: binae centesimae = 2 per cent. per month = 24 per cent., probably. Unciarium fenus was 1 uncia yearly per as =  $8\frac{1}{3}$  per cent. per annum for the year of 10 months.

c. Heres ex asse . . . means heir to the whole estate.

Heres ex semisse, or .	}	„ heir to $\frac{1}{2}$ of the estate.
Heres ex dimidia parte		
etc.		etc.

d. The Sestertius (Nummus), or Sesterce, was a silver coin equal to more than 2 asses, being  $\frac{1}{4}$  of the Denarius (coin of 10 asses). Its symbol is HS (for IIS., duo et semis,  $2\frac{1}{2}$  asses).

The Sestertium (= 1,000 sestertii) was not a coin, but a sum, and is only used in the Plural number.

Sestertia, in the Plural (also represented by HS.) joined with the Cardinal or Distributive Numbers, denotes so many 1,000 sestertii.

The Numeral Adverbs, joined with (or understanding) sestertii (Gen. Sing.), sestertium, or HS., denote so many 100,000 sestertii:

Thus HS.X = Sestertii decem, 10 sesterces.

HS.X = Sestertia decem, 10,000 sesterces.

HS.X = Sestertium deciens, 1,000,000 sesterces.

e. Fractions might also be expressed by the Ordinals as Denominators and the Cardinals for Numerators (above 1). Thus,  $\frac{1}{2}$  is *dimidia pars*;  $\frac{1}{3}$  *tertia pars*, etc.;  $\frac{1}{6}$  *sexta* or *dimidia tertia* ( $\frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{3}$ );  $\frac{1}{8}$  *octava pars* or *dimidia quarta* ( $\frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{4}$ ), etc. So  $\frac{1}{21}$  was *tertia septima* ( $\frac{1}{3} \times \frac{1}{7}$ ). Again,  $\frac{2}{3}$  is either *duae tertiae*, or *duae partes*, or *dimidia et sexta* ( $\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{6} = \frac{2}{3}$ ). And  $\frac{3}{4}$  is *tres quartae*, or *tres partes*, or *dimidia et quarta* ( $\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{4} = \frac{3}{4}$ ).

#### WEIGHT.

The unit or 'as' of weight was the 'libra,' or Roman pound (the supposed weight which a man could support on his hand horizontally extended). It was divided duodecimally, the 'uncia' (ounce) being its 12th part; the 'scripulum' (scruple) the 24th part of an uncia. Some authorities rate the libra at 5.044 English grains nearly.

#### LENGTH.

The unit or 'as' of length was 'pes' (foot), also divided duodecimally, the 'uncia' (inch) being its 12th part.

'Cubitus' (cubit) was  $1\frac{1}{2}$  foot. 'Ulna' (ell) was variously measured, sometimes = cubit. Land was measured out by the 'decempeda' (rod of 10 feet). In roads the unit was 'passus,' a pace or double step (5 feet). Mille passus (5,000 feet) were the Roman mile;  $\frac{1}{8}$  of which was called 'stadium' (furlong). The exact measure of the 'pes' is a difficult point. High authorities make it less than the English foot by  $\frac{3}{10}$  of an inch.

#### SURFACE.

The 'as' of surface was 'jugerum' (the Roman acre), about  $\frac{2}{3}$  of an English acre. 'Scripulum,' or 'decempeda quadrata' (ten square feet) was its most important subdivision.

#### CAPACITY.

##### 1. Liquid measure.

The 'as' was 'sextarius' (less than a pint), divided into 12 'cyathi,' one of which (its 'uncia') was not quite half an ordinary wine-glass. 24 sextarii were 1 'urna,' and 2 urnae were an 'amphora,' a vessel of 10 cubic Roman feet.

##### 2. Dry measure.

Here too the 'as' was 'sextarius' and the 'cyathus' its 'uncia;' 16 sextarii made the 'modius,' which approached 2 gallons English ( $\frac{1}{4}$  bushel).

#### TIME.—THE ROMAN CALENDAR.

Every Roman month had three chief days: Kalendae (Calends) Nonae (Nones), Idus (Ides). The Calends were always the 1st day of the month; the Nones were usually on the 5th; the Ides on the 13th; but in four months the Nones were on the 7th, the Ides on the 15th.

March, May, July, October; these are they  
Make Nones the 7th, Ides the 15th day.

These three days, the Calends, Nones, and Ides, were taken as points, from which the other days were counted backwards. That is, the Romans did not say, such and such a day *after*, etc., but such and such a day *before* the Calends, or Nones, or Ides. They reckoned inclusively, counting in the days at both ends; therefore the rules are: (1) For days before the Calends subtract the day of the month from the number of days in the month increased by two. (2) For days before the Nones or Ides subtract from the day on which they fall, increased by one.

*Examples.*—May 31, Pridie Kalendas Junias.

„ 30, Ante diem tertium (a.d. III.) Kal. Jun.

„ 11, „ „ quintum (a.d. V.) Id. Mai.

„ 2, „ „ sextum (a.d. VI.) Non. Mai.

English Month.	MARTIUS, MAIUS, JULIUS, OCTOBER, 31 Days.	JANUARIUS, AUGUSTUS, DECEMBER, 31 Days.	APRILIS, JUNIUS, SEPTEMBER, NOVEMBER, 30 Days.	FEBRUARIUS, 28 Days—in every fourth Year 29.
1	Kalendis	Kalendis	Kalendis	Kalendis
2	a.d. VI.	a.d. IV.	a.d. IV.	a.d. IV.
3	a.d. V.	a.d. III.	a.d. III.	a.d. III.
4	a.d. IV.	Pridie	Pridie	Pridie
5	a.d. III.	Nonis	Nonis	Nonis
6	Pridie	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VIII.
7	Nonis	a.d. VII.	a.d. VII.	a.d. VII.
8	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VI.	a.d. VI.	a.d. VI.
9	a.d. VII.	a.d. V.	a.d. V.	a.d. V.
10	a.d. VI.	a.d. IV.	a.d. IV.	a.d. IV.
11	a.d. V.	a.d. III.	a.d. III.	a.d. III.
12	a.d. IV.	Pridie	Pridie	Pridie
13	a.d. III.	Idibus	Idibus	Idibus
14	Pridie	a.d. XIX.	a.d. XVIII.	a.d. XVI.
15	Idibus	a.d. XVIII.	a.d. XVII.	a.d. XV.
16	a.d. XVII.	a.d. XVII.	a.d. XVI.	a.d. XIV.
17	a.d. XVI.	a.d. XVI.	a.d. XV.	a.d. XIII.
18	a.d. XV.	a.d. XV.	a.d. XIV.	a.d. XII.
19	a.d. XIV.	a.d. XIV.	a.d. XIII.	a.d. XI.
20	a.d. XIII.	a.d. XIII.	a.d. XII.	a.d. X.
21	a.d. XII.	a.d. XII.	a.d. XI.	a.d. IX.
22	a.d. XI.	a.d. XI.	a.d. X.	a.d. VIII.
23	a.d. X.	a.d. X.	a.d. IX.	a.d. VII.
24	a.d. IX.	a.d. IX.	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VI.
25	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VII.	a.d. V.
26	a.d. VII.	a.d. VII.	a.d. VI.	a.d. IV.
27	a.d. VI.	a.d. VI.	a.d. V.	a.d. III.
28	a.d. V.	a.d. V.	a.d. IV.	Pridie.
29	a.d. IV.	a.d. IV.	a.d. III.	
30	a.d. III.	a.d. III.	Pridie	
31	Pridie	Pridie		

[In Leap-year, Feb. 24th (a.d. VI. Kal. Mart.) was twice reckoned,—hence this day was called **DIES BISSEXTUS**, and leap-year itself **ANNUS BISSEXTUS**.]

*Note 1.*—*Ante diem tertium* (a.d. III.) *Kal. Jun.*, means ‘on the third day before the Kalends of June,’ or ‘before the Kalends of June by three days.’ *Diem tertium*, being placed between *ante* and *Kalendas*, is attracted to the Accusative Case. This mode of expression became so purely idiomatic that it was used with Prepositions: *ante diem tertium*, *ante diem sextum*, &c.

*Note 2.*—The names of the months are adjectives used in agreement with *mensis*, *m.* expressed or understood, *Januarius*, *Aprilis*, *September*, &c. The old names of July and August were *Quintilis*, *Sextilis*, but later they were called *Julius* and *Augustus* after the two Caesars.

## ABBREVIATIONS.

(1) *PRAENOMINA.*

A. Aulus	M. Marcus	S. (Sex.) Sextus
C. Gaius	M'. Manius	Ser. Servius
Cn. Gnaeus	Mam. Mamercus	Sp. Spurius
D. Decimus	P. Publius	T. Titus
K. Kaeso	Q. Quintus	Ti. (Tib.) Tiberius
L. Lucius		

*Note.*—A Roman of distinction had at least three names: the Praenomen, individual name; the Nomen, name showing the Gens or clan; and the Cognomen, surname showing the Familia or family. Thus, *Lucius Junius Brutus* expressed *Lucius* of the Gens *Junia* and Familia *Brutorum*. To these were sometimes added one or more Agnomina, titles either of honour (as *Africanus*, *Macedonicus*, *Magnus*, etc.), or expressing that a person had been adopted from another Gens: as *Aemilianus*, applied to the younger *Scipio Africanus*, who was the son of *L. Paulus Aemilius*, but adopted by a *Scipio*. The full name of the emperor *Augustus* (originally an *Octavius*) after he had been adopted by his uncle's will and adorned by the Senate with a title of honour, was *Gaius Julius Caesar Octavianus Augustus*.

(2) *VARIA.*

A. D. Ante diem	F. Filius	P. M. Pontifex Maximus
A. U. C. Anno urbis conditae	HS. Sestertius, Ses- tertium	P. R. Populus Romanus
Aed. Aedilis	Id. Idus	Pl. Plebis
Cal. (Kal.) Calendae	Imp. Imperator	Proc. Proconsul
Cos. Consul	L. Libra	S. Senatus
Coss. Consules	LL. Dupondius	S. P. Q. R. Senatus
D. Divus	Non. Nonae	Populusque Romanus
Des. Designatus	O. M. Optimus Maximus	S. C. Senatusconsultum
Eq. Rom. Eques Ro- manus	P. C. Patres Con- scripti	S. D. P. Salutem dicit plurimam
		Tr. Tribunus



## APPENDIX III.

## FIGURES OF SPEECH;

OR PECULIAR FORMS FOUND IN SYNTAX AND IN RHETORIC.

## FIGURES OF SYNTAX.

**Ellipsis** (*omission*).—Words are left out which can be supplied from the sense. Thus are used :

- (1) An Adjective without its Substantive: *Gelida, calida* (aqua); *dextra, sinistra* (manus).
- (2) A Genitive without the word on which it depends: *Caecilia Metelli* (filia), *Faustus Sullae* (filius).
- (3) A Verb without its Object: *obire* (mortem); *movere* (castra).
- (4) A Sentence without its Verb: *Suus cuique mos. Quid multa?* (dicam).

**Pleonasmus** (*redundance*).—Use of needless words: *Sic ore locuta est.* VERG.

**Zeugma**.—Connexion of a Verb or Adjective with two words or clauses to both of which it does not equally belong; therefore Zeugma is a sort of Ellipsis: *Ex spoliis et torquem et cognomen induit*; *put on the necklace and assumed the surname.* Agreement with one only of two or more Subjects is also called Zeugma.

**Syllêpsis**.—Connexion of a Verb or Adjective with a Composite Subject.

**Synêsis**.—Agreement with meaning not with form :

- 1 Gender. *Capita conjurationis virgis caesi sunt.* LIV. *Capita*, though Neuter in form, is Masculine in meaning, therefore *caesi*.
2. Number. A Collective Noun or a Phrase implying more than one, though Singular in form, may take a Plural Verb: *Cetera classis ... fugerunt.* LIV. *Optimus quisque jussis parvere.* TAC.

**Attraction**.—Words are drawn by the influence of others to take irregular constructions: (1) attraction of Copulative Verb (196); (2) attraction of Relative and of Adjective to Relative Clause (332). Attraction of Case happens after Copulative Verbs, especially the Dative (224), and especially with *licet esse*: *Vobis licet esse beatis.* HOR. *Licuit esse otioso Themistocli.* CIC.



**Asyndēton.**—Omission of Conjunctions: *Abiit, excessit, evasit, erupit.* CIC.

**Polysyndēton.**—Redundance of Conjunctions: *Una Eurusque Notusque ruunt creberque procellis Africus.* VERG.

**Hendiādys.**—Use of two Substantives coupled by a Conjunction for a Substantive and Adjective: *Pateris libamus et auro* (for *pateris aureis*). VERG.

**Hyperbāton.**—Alteration of natural order of words: *Per te deos oro* (for *per deos te oro*). The four following figures belong to Hyperbaton:

- (1) **Anacolūthon.**—Passing from one construction to another before the former is completed: *Si, ut Graeci dicunt, omnes aut Graios esse aut barbaros, vereor ne Romulus barbarorum rex fuerit.* CIC.
- (2) **Hysteron-proteron.**—When, of two things, that which naturally comes first is placed last: *Moriamure et in media arma ruamus.* VERG.
- (3) **Anastrophe.**—Placing a Preposition after its Case: *quos inter* for *inter quos*. HOR.
- (4) **Parenthesis.**—Interpolation of one sentence within another: *At tu (nam divum servat tutela poetas), praemoneo, vati parce, puella, sacro.* TIBULL.

**Tmesis.**—Separation of the parts of a compound word: *Quae me cumque vocant terrae.* VERG. (for *quaecumque*).

**Enallāge.**—Use of one word for another:

- (1) One Part of Speech for another: *aliud cras* (*alius dies crastinus*).
- (2) One Case for another: *Matutine pater, seu Jane libentius audis.* HOR. (for *Janus*.)
- (3) One Number for another: *nos* for *ego*; *miles* for *milites*.

**Hypallāge.**—Interchange of Cases: *Dare classibus Austros.* VERG. (for *dare classes Austris*.) Also attraction of Adjectives to Substantives to which they do not properly belong: *Fontium gelidae perennitates.* CIC. (for *fontium gelidorum perennitates*.)

#### FIGURES OF RHETORIC.

**Metaphōra.**—One expression put for another which has some resemblance to it in a different kind, generally a concrete for an abstract; *portus* for *refugium*; *sentina* (*dregs*) *reipublicae* for *turpissimi cives*; *exulto* for *gaudeo*. A strong metaphor is often qualified by *quasi*, *tamquam*, *quidam*, or *ut ita dicam*: *In una philosophia quasi tabernaculum vitae suae allocarunt.* CIC. *Scopas, ut ita dicam, mihi videntur dissolvere.* CIC.

**Metonymia.**—A related word conveying the same idea is put for another.

Mars for bellum; cedant arma togae (CIC.) for cedat bellum paci; juvenus for juvenes; Graecia for Graeci; aurum for vasa aurea.

**Synecdōche.**—The part stands for the whole: Caput for homo; tectum for domus; carina for navis.

**Allegoria.**—A chain of metaphors:

Claudite jam rivos, pueri, sat prata biberunt. VERG.

*Cease to sing, shepherds, recreation enough has been taken.*

**Hyperbōle.**—Exaggeration.

**Litōtes.**—Less is said than is meant: Non laudo for culpo.

**Ironia.**—One thing is said while the contrary is meant, but so that the real meaning may be understood: Egregiam vero laudem et spolia ampla refertis tuque puerque tuus. VERG. (*ignoble praise and paltry spoils*).

**Climax.**—A high point of effect led up to gradually: Quod libet iis, licet; quod licet, possunt; quod possunt, audent. CIC.

**Polyptōton.**—Cases of the same Noun are brought together: Jam clipeus clipeis, umbone repellitur umbo; ense minax ensis, pede pes et cuspide cuspis. STAT.

**Paronomasia.**—A play upon the sound of words: Tibi parata sunt verba, huic verbera. TER.

**Antithēsis.**—Contrast of opposites: Urbis amatorem Fuscum salvere jubemus ruris amatores. HOR.

**Oxymōron.**—Union of seeming contraries: Temporis angusti mansit concordia discors. LUCAN.

**Periphrāsis.**—Description of a simple fact by various attending circumstances. Instead of 'Now night is approaching,' Vergil says Et jam summa procul villarum culmina fumant, majoresque cadunt altis de montibus umbrae. See the beautiful periphrases of old age and death in Ecclesiastes, ch. xii.

**Simile.**—Illustration of a statement by an apt comparison, as: Per urbes Hannibal Italas ceu flamma per taedas vel Eurus per Siculas equitavit undas. HOR.

**Apostrōphe.**—An appeal to some person or thing: Quid non mortalia pectora cogis, auri sacra fames? VERG.

**Aposiopēsis.**—The conclusion of a thought is suppressed: Quos ego... sed motos praestat componere fluctus. VERG.

**Prosopopoeia.**—Personification. An abstract idea, as faith, hope, youth, memory, fortune, is addressed or spoken of as a person: Te Spes et albo rara Fides colit velata panno. HOR.

## APPENDIX IV.

MEMORIAL LINES ON THE GENDER OF LATIN  
SUBSTANTIVES.

## I. General Rules.

The Gender of a Latin Noun  
by meaning, form, or use is shown.

1. A Man, Month, Mountain, River, Wind.  
and People Masculine we find :  
Rōmūlūs, Octōber, Pindus, Pādūs, Eurūs, Āchivī.
2. A Woman, Island, Country, Tree,  
and City, Feminine we see :  
Pēnēlōpē, Cýprus, Germāniā, laurūs, Āthēnae.
3. To Nouns that cannot be declined  
The Neuter Gender is assigned :  
Examples fās and nēfās give  
And the Verb-Noun Infinitive :  
Ēst summum nēfās fallērē :  
*Deceit is gross impiety.*

Common are : sācerdōs, dux,	<i>priest (priestess), leader</i>
vātēs, pārens ēt conjux,	<i>seer, parent, wife (husband)</i>
cīvīs, cōmēs, custōs, vindex,	<i>citizen, companion, guard, avenger</i>
ādūlescens, infans, index,	<i>youth (maid), infant, informer</i>
jūdex, testīs, artifex	<i>judge, witness, artist</i>
praesūl, exsūl, ōpifex,	<i>director, exile, worker</i>
hērēs, milēs, incōlā,	<i>heir (heiress), soldier, inhabitant</i>
auctōr, augūr, advēnā,	<i>author, augur, new-comer</i>
hostīs, obsēs, praesēs, ālēs,	<i>enemy, hostage, president, bird</i>
pātruēlis ēt sātellēs,	<i>cousin, attendant</i>
municeps et interprēs,	<i>burgess, interpreter</i>
jūvēnīs ēt antistēs,	<i>young person, overseer</i>
aurigā, princeps : add to these	<i>charioteer, chief</i>
bōs, dammā, talpā, serpens, sūs,	<i>ox (cow), deer, mole, serpent, swine</i>
cāmēlūs, cānīs, tigrīs, perdix,	
grūs.	<i>camel, dog, tiger, partridge, crane</i>

(For exceptions see p. 15.)

## II. Special Rules for the Declensions.

## Decl. 1 (A-Stems).

Rule.—Feminine in First *ā*, *ē*,  
 Masculine *ās*, *ēs* will be.

*Exc.* Nouns denoting Males in *ā*  
 are by meaning Masculine:  
 and Masculine is found to be  
*Hādriā, the Adriatic Sea.*

## Decl. 2 (O-Stems).

Rule.—O-nouns in *ūs* and *ēr* become  
 Masculine, but Neuter *um*.

*Exc.* Feminine are found in *us*,  
*alvūs, Arctūs, carbāsūs,* *pnunch, Great Bear, linen*  
*cōlūs, hūmūs, pampīnūs,* *distaff, ground, vine-leaf*  
*vannūs*: also trees, as *pīrūs*; *winnowing-fan, pear-tree*  
 with some jewels, as *sapphīrus*; *sapphire*  
 Neuter *pēlāgūs* and *vīrūs*. *sea, poison*  
*Vulgūs* Neuter commonly, *common people*  
 rarely Masculine we see.

## Decl. 3 (Consonant and I-Stems).

Rule 1.—Third-Nouns Masculine prefer  
 endings *o*, *or*, *os*, and *er*;  
 add to which the ending *es*,  
 if its Cases have increase.

*Exc. (a)* Feminine exceptions show  
 Substantives in *dō* and *gō*.  
 But *ligō, ordō, praedō, cardō,* *spade, order, pirate, hinge*  
 Masculine, and Common *margō.* *margin*

(b) Abstract Nouns in *io* call  
*Fēmīnīnā*, one and all:  
 Masculine will only be  
 things that you may touch or see,  
 (as *curcūliō, vespertilio,* *weevil, bat*  
*pūgiō, scīpio, and pāpiliō*) *dagger, staff, butterfly*  
 with the Nouns that number show,  
 such as *ternio, sēnio.* *3, 6*

(c) *Echō* Feminine we name: *echo*  
*cārō (carnīs)* is the same. *flesh*

- (d) Aequōr, marmōr, cōr decline      *sea, marble, heart*  
Neuter ; arbōr Feminine.      *tree*
- (e) Of the Substantives in *os*,  
Feminine are *cōs* and *dōs* ;      *whetstone, dowry*  
while, of Latin Nouns, alone  
Neuter are *ōs* (*ossīs*), *bone*  
and *ōs* (*ōrīs*), *mouth* : a few  
Greek in *ōs* are Neuter too.\*
- (f) Many Neuters end in *ēr*,  
*sīlēr*, *ācēr*, *verbēr*, *vēr*,      *withy, maple, stripe, spring*  
*tūbēr*, *ūbēr*, and *cādāvēr*,      *hump, udder, carcase*  
*pīpēr*, *ītēr*, and *pāpāvēr*.      *pepper, journey, poppy*
- (g) Feminine are *compēs*, *tēgēs*,      *fetter, mat*  
*mercēs*, *mergēs*, *quiēs*, *sēgēs*,      *fee, sheaf, rest, corn*  
though their Cases have increase :  
with the Neuters reckon *aes*.      *copper*

Rule 2.—Third-Nouns Feminine we class  
ending *is*, *x*, *aus*, and *as*,  
*s* to consonant appended,  
*es* in flexion unextended.

- Exc. (a) Many Nouns in *is* we find  
to the Masculine assigned :  
*amnīs*, *axīs*, *caulīs*, *collīs*,      *river, axle, stalk, hill*  
*clūnīs*, *crīnīs*, *fascīs*, *follīs*,      *hind-leg, hair, bundle, bellows*  
*fustīs*, *ignīs*, *orbīs*, *ensīs*,      *bludgeon, fire, orb, sword*  
*pānīs*, *piscīs*, *postīs*, *mensīs*,      *bread, fish, post, month*  
*torrīs*, *unguīs*, and *cānālīs*,      *stake, nail, canal*  
*vectīs*, *vermīs*, and *nātālīs*,      *lever, worm, birthday*  
*sanguīs*, *pulvīs*, *cūcūmīs*,      *blood, dust, cucumber*  
*lāpīs*, *cassēs*, *Mānēs*, *glīs*.      *stone, nets, ghosts, dormouse*
- (b) Chiefly Masculine we find,  
sometimes Feminine declined,  
*callīs*, *sentīs*, *fūnīs*, *fīnīs*,      *path, thorn, rope, end*  
and in poets *torquīs*, *cīnīs*.      *necklace, cinder*
- (c) Masculine are most in *ex* :  
Feminine are *forfex*, *lex*,      *shears, law*  
*nex*, *sūpellex* : Common, *pūmex*,      *death, furniture, pumice*  
*imbrex*, *ōbex*, *sīlex*, *rūmex*.      *tile, bolt, flint, sorrel*

\* As *mēlōs*. *melody*, *ēpōs*, *epic poem*.

- (d) Add to Masculines in *ix*,  
fornix, phoenix, and cālix. *arch, —, cup*
- (e) Masculine are ādāmās,  
ēlēphās, mās, gīgās, ās : *adamant*  
vās (vādis) Masculine is known, *elephant, male, giant, as*  
vās (vāsīs) is a Neuter Noun. *surety*  
*vessel*
- (f) Masculine are fons and mons, *fountain, mountain*  
chālybs, hydrops, gryps, and pons, *iron, dropsy, griffin, bridge*  
rūdēns, torrens, dens, and cliens, *cable, torrent, tooth, client*  
fractions of the ās, as triens. *four ounces*  
Add to Masculines trīdens, *trident*  
ōriens, and occīdens, *east, west*  
bīdens (*fork*) : but bīdens (*sheep*),  
with the Feminines we keep.
- (g) Masculine are found in *ēs*  
verrēs and ācīnācēs. *boar, scimeter*

Rule 3.—Third-Nouns Neuter end *ā, ē,*  
*ar, ur, us, c, l, n,* and *t.*

- Exc.* (a) Masculine are found in *ur*  
furfūr, turtūr, vultūr, fūr. *bran, turtle-dove, vulture, thief*
- (b) Feminine in *ūs* a few  
keep, as virtūs, the long *ū* : *virtue*  
servītūs, jūventūs, sālūs, *slavery, youth, safety*  
sēnectūs, tellūs, incūs, pālūs. *old-age, earth, anvil, marsh*
- (c) Also pēcūs (pēcūdīs)  
Feminine in Gender is. *beast*
- (d) Masculine appear in *us*  
lēpūs (lēpōrīs) and mūs. *hare, mouse*
- (e) Masculines in *l* are mūgīl,  
consūl, sāl, and sōl, with pūgīl. *mullet*  
*consul, salt, sun, boxer*
- (f) Masculine are rēn and splēn,  
pectēn, delphīn, attāgēn. *kidney, spleen*  
*comb, dolphin, grouse*
- (g) Feminine are found in *ōn*  
Gorgōn, sindōn, halečōn. *Gorgon, muslin, king-fisher*

Decl. 4 (U-Stems).

Rule.—Masculines end in *us* : a few  
are Neuter nouns, that end in *u*.



*Exc.* Women and trees are Feminine,  
with *ăcūs, dōmūs, and mănūs,* *needle, house, hand,*  
*tribūs, Īdūs, porticūs.* *tribe, the Ides, porch*

Decl. 5 (**E-Stems**).

Rule.—Feminine are Fifth in *ēs*,  
Except *meridiēs* and *diēs.* *noon, day*

*Exc.* *Diēs* in the Singular  
Common we define :  
But its Plural cases are  
always Masculine.

### List of Prepositions.

#### With **Accusative** :

*Antē, āpūd, ād, adversūs,*  
*Circum, circā, citrā, cīs,*  
*Contrā, intēr, ergā, extrā,*  
*Infrā, intrā, juxtā, ōb,*  
*Pēnēs, pōpē, post, and praetēr,*

*Prōpē, proptēr, pēr, sēcundum,*  
*Suprā, versūs, ultrā, trans ;*  
Add *sūpēr, subtēr, sūb* and *īn,*  
When '*motion*' 'tis, not '*state*,'  
they mean.

#### With **Ablative** :

*A, āh, absquē, cōram, dē,*  
*Pālam, clam, cum, ex, and ē,*  
*Sīnē, tēnūs, prō, and prae :*

Add *sūpēr, subtēr, sūb* and *īn.*  
When '*state*,' not '*motion*,' 'tis they  
mean.



# INDEX I.

## SUBJECTS.

[*The reference is to Sections.*]

### ABB

Abbreviations, App. II.  
 Ablative Case, definition of, 30; uses of, 228 *sqq.*  
 Absolute, 237  
 of Agent, 239, 296, 300  
 of Association, 233  
 of Cause, 241  
 of Comparison, 231  
 English rendering of, 30 (*n.* 2)  
 in -i and -e (3rd decl.), 45, 46 (*n.* 2); 74, *n.* 2 (*Adj.*); in -ubus (4th decl.), 55 (*n.* 1)  
 of Instrument, 240  
 Locative, 246  
 of Manner, 236  
 of Measure, 244  
 of Origin, 230  
 of Place where, 268; whence, 270, 271, 274  
 of Price, 245  
 of Quality, 234  
 of Respect, 235  
 of the Road by which, 275  
 of Separation, 229  
 of Space, 282  
 of Time, 276, 277, 279, 280  
 with contentus, dignus (indignus), fretus, opus est, usus est, 243  
 with fruor, fungor, potior, utor, vescor, 242; dignor, 243  
 Abstract Substantives, 27  
 Accent, 9  
 Accusative Case, definition of, 30; uses of, 203 *sqq.*  
 Adverbial, 213  
 Cognate, 212  
 double, 206, 208, 298  
 in exclamations, 209 (*n.*)  
 of Extent, 278, 281-3  
 in -im (3rd decl.), 45 (*nn.*); in -is or -es (pl.), 45-47, 49 (*n.* 1)  
 with Infinitive, 207, 414  
 of Nearer Object, 204 *sqq.*, 215  
 of Neuter Adjectives and Pronouns, as Adverbs, 213 (*n.* 2)  
 after Passive Verbs, 210, 296  
 of Place whither, 211, 269, 271, 272

### ANA

Accusative Case—  
 with Prepositions, 285, 287  
 of Respect, 213  
 Active Voice, definition of, 108  
 Adjectival Clauses, 410, 450 *sqq.*  
 Adjectives—  
 used adverbially, 308  
 Agreement of, 193  
 Comparative, 310  
 Comparison of, 76 *sqq.*; irregular, 83  
 Declension of, 70 *sqq.*  
 Definition of, 25  
 taking Genitive or Dative, 218 (*n.*)  
 Numeral, 88 *sqq.*  
 used as Substantives, 304-6  
 Superlative, 307, 309, 310 (*n.*)  
 Adonius (versus), 482  
 Advantage, Dative of, 221  
 Adverbial Clauses, 410, 421 *sqq.*  
 Adverbs—  
 of Affirmation, 170  
 of Cause, 166  
 Comparison of, 85 *sqq.*  
 of Degree, 165  
 of Doubt, 170  
 Formation of, 163  
 of Limitation, 170  
 of Manner, 164  
 of Negation, 170  
 Numeral, 88, 90  
 of Order, 169  
 of Place, 167  
 of Question, 170  
 of Time, 168  
 use of, 395-398  
 Adversative Conjunctions, 177  
 Affirmation, Adverbs of, 170  
 Age: how expressed, 278 (*n.* 2); Genitive of, 256  
 Agent, Ablative of, 239, 296, 300; Dative of, 222, 381  
 Agnomen, App. II.  
 Agreement (the Four Concords), 192 *sqc.*  
 Alcaic Stanza, 483  
 Allegoria, App. III.  
 Alphabet, the Latin, 2  
 Anacolonthon, App. III.  
 Anacrusis, definition of, 481 (*n.*)

## ANA

Analytic languages, meaning of, 24 (*n.* 1)  
 Anapaest, 474, 479  
 Anastrophe, App. III.  
 Answers : Affirmative, 408 ; Negative, 409  
 Antecedent, 195, 330 *sqq.*  
 Antithesis, App. III.  
 Aorist, Greek : no corresponding separate tense in Latin, 105 (*n.*)  
 Apocope, 16  
 Apodosis, 437 ; in Oratio Obliqua, 443  
 Aposiopesis, App. III.  
 Apostrophe, App. III.  
 Apposition, 191, 194, 197  
 Arabic numerals, 90  
 Aryan family of languages, 1  
 Assimilation, vowel change by, 13 ; consonant change by, 20  
 Association, Ablative of, 233  
 Asyndeton, App. III.  
 Attraction, 196, 224 (*n.*), 332, App. III.  
 Attributive Genitive, 249  
 Author, Genitive of, 250

Base (in verse), definition of, 481

Caesura, 476, 477, 479, 482, 483 ; Hephthemimeral, Trihemimeral, Penthemimeral, 477, 478  
 Calendar, Latin, App. II.  
 Capacity (liquid and dry), Roman measures of, App. II.  
 Cardinal Numerals, 88 *sqq.*, 311  
 Case, definition of, 30  
 Case-endings, table of, 32  
 Cases, definition of the, 30  
 Causal Clauses, 424 *sqq.* ; with *qui*, 454  
 Causal Conjunctions, 177, 178  
 Cause, Ablative of, 241 ; Adverbs of, 166  
 Character, definition of, 24 ; of Noun Stem, 32, 33 ; of Verb Stem, 11<sup>1</sup>  
 Climax, App. III.  
 Cognate Accusative, 212  
 Cognomen, App. II.  
 Collective Noun, 27 ; as Subject, 199  
 Common Gender, 31 (*n.* 3), App. IV.  
 Comparative Adjectives, 77, 310 ; Conjunctions, 177, 178  
 Comparative Clauses, 449  
 Comparison, Ablative of, 231  
 Comparison of Adjectives, 76 *sqq.* ; irregular, 80 *sqq.*  
 Comparison of Adverbs, 85 ; irregular, 86, 87  
 Compensation, vowel lengthening due to, 17  
 Complement, 186, 187, 189  
 Composite Subject, 198 ; notes on, 199  
 Compounded Words, App. I.  
 Compound Numbers, order of, 89 ; Pronouns, 100, 322 *sqq.*  
 Compound Sentence, the, 410 *sqq.*  
 Concessive Clauses, 444 *sqq.*  
 Concessive Conjunctions, 178  
 Concessive Conjunctive, 357  
 Conclusive Conjunctions, 177

## DEN

Concords, rules of the four, 192 *sqq.* notes on, 196, 197  
 Conditional Clauses, 437 *sqq.* ; conversion of Apodosis and Protasis in Oratio Obliqua, 443  
 Conditional Conjunctions, 178  
 Conditional Conjunctive, 355  
 Concrete Substantives, 27  
 Conjugations of Verbs : system by which they are arranged, 111, 112 ; Paradigms, 115-124, 133-139  
 Conjunctions, definition of, 25 ; uses of, 399-401 ; Co-ordinative and Subordinative, 176 *sqq.*, 400, 421-449  
 Conjunctive Mood, definition of, 106 ; uses of, 351-363  
 Connective Conjunctions, 177  
 Consecutive Clauses, Adverbial, 421 *sqq.* ; with Relative Pronouns, 452  
 Consecutive Conjunctions, 178  
 Consonant Change, 18-23  
 Consonants, 6, 7 ; table of, 7  
 Consonant Stems : Adjectives, 75 ; Greek Nouns, 69 ; Substantives, 32, 36, 38-43 ; Verbs, 111, 112, 118, 122 (Paradigm), 154, 159 (Table of Perfects)  
 Consonant Substantives, Syllabus of, 37  
 Contraction, vowel change by, 14  
 Contractions in some Verb-forms, 113  
 Co-ordinate Sentences, 402, 403  
 Co-ordinative Conjunctions, 176, 177, 400  
 Copulative Verbs, Syntax of, 187, 188, 201  
 Correlative Pronouns and Adverbs, 102, 333-335 ; Conjunctions, 179  
 Dactyl, 474, 477, 481, 482, 483 ; Dactylic Hexameter, 476, 477 ; Pentameter, 478  
 Dative Case, definition of, 30 ; uses of, 214 *sqq.*  
 with Adjectives, 218  
 of Advantage, 221  
 with Adverbs, 219  
 of the Agent, 222  
 double, 224 (*n.*)  
 English rendering of, 30 (*n.* 1)  
 Ethic, 223  
 after a Personal Passive, 222 (*n.*)  
 of Person interested, 225  
 of Place towards which, 227  
 of the Possessor, 224  
 of Purpose, 226  
 of Remoter Object, 215 *sqq.*  
 with Substantives, 219  
 Declension, definition of, 28 ; of Substantives, 32 *sqq.* ; of Greek nouns, 67-69 ; of Adjectives, 70-75 ; of Numerals, 89 ; of Pronouns, 92 *sqq.*  
 Defective Substantives, 59 *sqq.* ; Verbs, 142 *sqq.*  
 Definition, Genitive of, 248  
 Definitive Pronouns, 95, 320, 321  
 Degree, Adverbs of, 165  
 Deliberative Conjunctive, 358, 407  
 Demonstrative Pronouns, 94, 102, 318, 319  
 Dentals, Dental-Spirant, 6, 36, 37, 39

## DEP

Dependent (Subjunctive) Conjunctive, 353  
 Deponent Verbs, definition of, 109; Paradigms of, 124, 125  
 Derivation of Verbs from the three Teuse-Stems, 147  
 Derived Words, App. I.  
 Desiderative Verbs, 132  
 Dialysis, 476  
 Dimeter, 475; Iambic, 480  
 Diphthongs, 5  
 Dissimilation, vowel change by, 13; consonant change by, 20  
 Distich: Elegiac, 478; Iambic, 480  
 Distributive numerals, 88, 90, 313; Pronouns, 102, 325, 326  
 Doubt, Adverbs of, 170  
 Dry measure, Roman, App. II.

Ecthlipsis, 474  
 Elegiac Distich, 478  
 Elision (Synaloepha), 474, 483  
 Ellipsis, App. III.  
 Enallage, App. III.  
 English language, origin of the, 1  
 Enunthiatio Obliqua, 413  
 Epicene nouns, meaning of, 31 (*n. 3*)  
 Epistolary uses, 343  
 Ethic Dative, 223

Factitive Verbs, Syntax of, 187, 207, 367, 414 (*b*)  
 Figures of Speech (Syntax and Rhetoric), App. III.  
 Final Clauses, 423; with *qui*, 453  
 Final Conjunctions, 178  
 Final syllables, rules for the quantity of, 473  
 Finite Verb, definition of, 103; agreement of, 192  
 Flexion 24, 26  
 Foot, definition of, 474  
 Fractions, Roman methods of expressing, App. II.  
 Frequentative Verbs, definition of, 131  
 Future Perfect Tense, 342; Future Simple, 341; as a courteous Imperative, 350 (*n.*)

Gender, rules of, 31; in 1st decl., 34; 2nd decl., 35; 3rd decl., 37, 51-54; 4th decl., 55; 5th decl., 57; memorial lines on, App. IV.  
 Geners, different, in a Composite Subject, 198 (3, 4)  
 Genitive Case, definition of, 30; uses of, 247 *sqq.*  
   Attributive, 249  
   of Author, 250  
   of Definition, 248  
   of the Gerund, 376, 379 (*n. 1*)  
   of Number and Age, 256  
   Objective, 261 *sqq.*  
   Partitive, 258-260  
   Possessive, 254  
   of Quality, 255

## IND

Genitive Case—  
   Subjective, 261  
   ‘understood’ in a Possessive Pronoun, 264 (*n.*)  
   of (indefinite) Value, 257  
   with Verbs and Adjectives of accusing, condemning, &c., 252; implying want and fulness, 253; of remembering, forgetting, &c., 265; of refraining, &c., 267  
   with Verbs of pitying, 266  
   = ‘it is the part, &c., of,’ 251  
 Gerund, definition of, 107; uses of, 374-378, 381, 382, 394  
 Gerundive, definition of, 107; Periphrastic use of, 114; Syntax, 379-381, 385, 384  
 Greek Nouns, declension of, 67 *sqq.*  
 Gutturals, 6, 36, 37, 38

Hendiadys, App. III.  
 Hephthemimeral, 477  
 Heroic Measure, 475, 477  
 Hexameter, 475; Dactylic, 476, 477  
 Hiatus, 474  
 Historic Conjunctive in Conditional Clauses, 437, 439 (*b*)  
 Historic cum, 435  
 Historic Infinitive, 201 (*n.*), 372; Sequence of, 411 (*n.*)  
 Historic Perfect, use of, 339; Sequence of, 411 (*n.*), 422 (*n. 2*)  
 Historic Present, 337, 338; with dum, 430; with dum in Oratio Obliqua, 467 (*n. 2*); with cum-Clause, 435; Sequence of, 411 (*n.*)  
 Historic Sequence, 411  
 Historic Tenses, definition of, 105; Sequence of, 411, 422 (*n. 2*), 435, 437  
 Hortative Conjunctive, 360  
 Hypallage, App. III.  
 Hyperbaton, App. III.  
 Hyperbole, App. III.  
 Hypermeter, 477, 482, 483  
 Hysteron-proteron, App. III.

Iambus, 474, 481; Iambic Dimeter, 480; Distich, 480; Trimeter (Senarius), 479  
 Imperative Mood, definition of, 106; uses of, 346 *sqq.*  
 Imperfect Indicative Tense, 340; Conjunctive, in Indirect Commands and Questions, in Oratio Obliqua, 461, 462  
 Impersonal Verbs, definition of, 143; list of the principal, 144-146; Syntax of, 288-295  
 Inceptive Verbs, definition of, 130, 149 (*V.*)  
 Indefinite Pronouns, 99, 102; Syntax of, 322-324  
 Independent (Pure) Conjunctive, 352, 354 *sqq.*  
 Indeterminate Verbs, 190, 369  
 Indicative, definition of, 106, 344; uses of, 345, 403, 416, 425-431, 433, 434, 438, 440, 445, 446, 448, 450, 452 (*c*), 455, 469

## IND

- Indirect Command, Request, or Prohibition : with *nt* or *ne* and Conjunctive, 413, 417 *sqq.* ; in *Oratio Obliqua*, 461, 462  
 Indirect Question, 420 ; in *Oratio Obliqua*, 462, 463  
 Indirect Statement : Accus. with Infin., 414, 415 (*n.*) ; ut with Conjunctive, 415 ; quod with Indic., 416 ; in *Oratio Obliqua*, 459  
 Infinite, Verb, definition of, 103, 364  
 Infinitive, definition of, 107 ; Prolative, 190 ; uses of, 183, 365-373, 394 ; Tenses of, 412 ; Accusative with, 207, 414 ; in *Oratio Obliqua*, 459  
 Instrumental Ablative, 238 *sqq.*  
 Instrumental Case, the, 30 (*n.* 3), 238  
 Interjections, definition of, 25, 180 ; uses of, 404  
 Interrogatio Obliqua, 413  
 Interrogative Conjunctions, 177 ; Pronouns, 98, 100, 102, 327  
 Intransitive Verbs, definition of, 110 ; with Accusative, 210 ; with Cognate Accusative, 212 ; with Dative, 217, 220 ; impersonal in Passive, 299-302  
 Inverse cum, 434  
 Ironia, App. III.  
 Irregular comparison of Adjectives, 80 *sqq.* ; of Adverbs, 86, 87  
 Irregular Verbs, 134 *sqq.*  
 Jussive Conjunctive, 361-363  
 Labials, 6, 36, 37, 40 ; Labial-Spirant, Labio-Dental Spirant, 6  
 Latin Alphabet, the, 2  
 Latin language, the, 1  
 Laws of sound, 3 *sqq.*  
 Length, Roman measures of, App. II.  
 Limitation, Adverbs of, 170  
 Liquid measure, Roman, App. II.  
 Liquids (sounds), 6, 36, 37, 42  
 Litotes, App. III.  
 Locative Case, 30 (*n.* 3), 34 (*n.* 2), 35 (*n.* 2), 49 (*n.* 3), 56, 57 (*n.* 2), 246, 271, 272, 274 (*n.*)  
 Manner, Ablative of, 236 ; Adverbs of, 164  
 Measure of difference, Ablative of, 244  
 Measures, Latin, App. II.  
 Metaphora, App. III.  
 Metathesis, consonant change by, 21  
 Metonymia, App. III.  
 Metre, the laws of, 474 ; definition and kinds of metre, 475  
 Mobilia, 31 (*n.* 2)  
 Money, Roman, App. II.  
 Monosyllables, rule for the quantity of, 472  
 Moods, definition of, 106 ; uses of, 344 *sqq.*  
 Mora (in Prosody), 474  
 Multiplicatives (numerals), 90 (*n.* 1)  
 Mutes, 6, 36

## PER

- Nasals, 6, 36, 37, 43  
 Nasalised Verb Stems, 149 (IV.)  
 Nearer Object, Accusative of, 204 *sqq.*, 215, 368  
 Negation, Adverbs of, 170, 396-398  
 Nomen, Cognomen, Agnomen, App. II.  
 Nominative Case, definition of, 30 ; use of, 200, 201  
 Number, Genitive of, 256  
 Numbers, the, 29  
 Numeral Adjectives, 88, 89 ; uses of, 311-313 ; quam omitted before Numerals, 314  
 Numerals, table of, 90  
 Objective Genitive, 92 (*n.*), 261 *sqq.*  
 Old forms in Verbs, 113  
 Optative use of Conjunctive, 359, 438 (*n.* 2)  
 Oratio Obliqua, Tenses of the Infinitive in, 412 ; conversion of Apodosis and Protasis in, 443 ; uses of, 458 ; Statement in, 459 ; Commands in, 461 ; Questions in 2nd person in, 462 ; Questions in 1st or 3rd person in, 463 ; changes of Pronouns in, 464-466 ; Relative Clauses in, 467 (*n.* 1) ; dum (*while*) with Indicative in, 467 (*n.* 2) ; Suboblique construction, 467 ; Virtual Oratio Obliqua, 469 ; Narrative in Oratio Obliqua, 470  
 Order, Adverbs of, 169  
 Ordinal Numerals, 88, 90 ; use of, 312  
 Origin, Ablative of, 230  
 Oxymoron, App. III.  
 Paradigms of Verbs, 115-124, 133-141  
 Parenthesis, App. III.  
 Paronomasia, App. III.  
 Participles, definition of, 107 ; of Deponent Verbs used passively, 126 ; Perfect, with Active meaning, 129 ; Dative of Agent with, 222 ; Genitive after, 262 ; uses of, 389-394 ; compared like Adjectives, 79, 390  
 Particles, 25, 162 *sqq.*  
 Partitive Genitive, 92 (*n.*), 258-260  
 Parts of Speech, 25  
 Passive Construction, 296 *sqq.*  
 Passive Voice, definition of, 108  
 Patronymics, Greek, 67  
 Pentameter, 475 ; Dactylic, 478  
 Penthemimer, Penthemimeral, 477, 478  
 Perfects and Spines, table of, 152 *sqq.*  
 Perfect Stem, Tenses derived from, 147 (II.)  
 Perfect Tense, 105 ; formation of the, 150 ; use of Perfect Indicative, 339 ; Perfect Conjunctive, 347, 356, 396, 422 (*n.* 2) ; Sequence of, 411, 422 (*n.* 2)  
 Periphrasis, App. III.  
 Periphrastic Conjugation, 114  
 Person and Number in Verbs, 104  
 Personal Passives with Dative, 222 (*n.*) ; with Infinitive, 370  
 Personal suffixes of Verbs, 104, 148



## PER

- Personal Pronouns, 92; use of, 264, 315  
 Petitio Obliqua, 413  
 Place, Adverbs of, 167  
 Place to which (Accus.), 211; (Dative), 227; where, whither, whence, 268-275  
 Pleonasmus, App. III.  
 Polypotton, App. III.  
 Polysyndeton, App. III.  
 Possessive Genitive, 254  
 Possessive Pronouns, 93; use of, 264, 317, 318  
 Possessor, Dative of, 224  
 Potential Conjunctive, 356  
 Predicate, 182, 184 *sqq.*  
 Prefix, definition of, 24 (n. 2)  
 Prepositions, definition of, 25, 171; with Ablative, 173, 286; with Ablative or Accusative, 174, 287; with Accusative, 172; with Genitive (*tenus*), 286; used only in Verb compounds, 175  
 Present-Stem formation, 149; Tenses derived from, 147 (I.)  
 Present Tense, 105, 336; Historic, 337, 338, 430, 435; Sequence of, 411  
 Price, Ablative of, 245  
 Primary Perfect, 105, 339, 411, 422 (n. 2)  
 Primary Sequence, 411  
 Primary Tenses, 105, 411  
 Prohibition in the 2nd person, 347, 348, 350  
 Prolative Infinitive, definition of, 190; use of, 369-370, 373  
 Pronouns, 25, 91 *sqq.*, 315 *sqq.*, 464-466  
 Pronominal Adjectives, 101, 328, 329; suffixes, 96, 100 (n.), 101 (n.)  
 Proper names, 27  
 Proportionals (numerals), 90 (n. 2)  
 Prosody, 471 *sqq.*  
 Prosepopoeia, App. III.  
 Protasis, 437; in Oratio Obliqua, 443  
 Pure Ablative, 229 *sqq.*  
 Purpose, Dative of, 226  
  
 Quality, Ablative of, 234; Genitive of, 255  
 Quantity, 8, 17; general rules of, 471; of monosyllables, 472; of final syllables, 473  
 Quasi-Passive Verbs, 128, 303  
 Question, Adverbs of, 170  
 Questions: Alternative, 406; Deliberative, 358, 407; Indirect, 420; Indignant, 415 (n.); Single, 405; Indirect in Oratio Obliqua, 462, 463  
  
 Reduplication in Verb-Stems, 149 (II.), 150  
 Reflexive Pronoun, 92; use of, 316; how used for a Reciprocal, 316 (n. 1); in Oratio Obliqua, 465  
 Relative Particles, 410, 455  
 Relative Pronoun, declension of, 97; Agreement of, 195; uses of, 330-362; in Co-ordinate Sentences, 403; in Adjectival Clauses, 410, 450 *sqq.*; limiting use, 456; connecting use, 457  
 Remoter Object, Dative of, 216-220

## TEN

- Respect, Ablative of, 235; Accusative of, 213  
 Rhythm, definition of, 476; of the Alcaic Stanza, 483  
 Roman Numerals, 90  
 Root, definition of, 24  
  
 Sapphic Stanza, 482  
 Scansion, 476  
 Semi-Consonants, 6  
 Semi-Deponent Verbs, 127  
 Senarius (versus), 479  
 Sentence, Compound, 410 *sqq.*; Simple, 182 *sqq.*; Co-ordinate, 402, 403  
 Separation, Ablative of, 229  
 Separative Conjunctions, 177  
 Sequence of Tenses, 411; of Infinitive in Oratio Obliqua, 412; in Consecutive Clauses, 422 (n. 2)  
 Sibilant, 6  
 Simile, App. III.  
 Simple Sentence, the, 182 *sqq.*  
 Sociative Case, the old, 232  
 Space of measurement, 283; over which, 281; which lies between, 282  
 Spirants, 6, 36, 37, 41  
 Spondee, 474, 477, 478, 479  
 Stem, definition of, 24  
 Stem formation in Verbs, 148-151  
 Strong Formation of the Perfect, 150  
 Strophic Metres, 481 *sqq.*  
 Subject, 182 *sqq.*, 192, 200; composite, 198, 199  
 Subjective Genitive, 261  
 Subjunctive use of Conjunctive, 353  
 Suboblique Construction, 467  
 Subordinate Clauses, 410; in Oratio Obliqua, 467 *sqq.*  
 Subordinative Conjunctions, 178, 401, 421 *sqq.*  
 Substantival Clauses, 410, 413-420  
 Substantives, Declension of, 32 *sqq.*; Defective and Variable, 59 *sqq.*; in Apposition, 194, 197; as Composite Subject, 198  
 Suffix, definition of, 24 (n. 2)  
 Superficial measures, Roman, App. II.  
 Superlative Adjectives, 78 *sqq.*, 307, 309, 310  
 Supine Stem, formation of, 151  
 Supines, definition of, 107; uses of, 385; table of, 152; in -um, 386, 387, 394; in -u, 388  
 Syllables, 8, 23; Quantity of, 472, 473  
 Syllepsis, App. III.  
 Synaloepha (Elision), 474, 483  
 Synecdoche, App. III.  
 Synesis, App. III.  
 Syntax, definition of, 181  
 Syntactic languages, meaning of, 24 (n. 1)  
  
 Temporal Clauses, 427-436  
 Temporal Conjunctions, 178  
 Tense-Stems, derivation from the three, 147; formation of, 148 *sqq.*

## TEN

Tenses, 105 ; uses of, 336 *sqq.* ; Sequence of, 411 ; of Infinitive in Oratio Obliqua, 412  
 Tetrameter, 475  
 Thematic Verbs, 148, 149  
 Time, Adverbs of, 168  
 Time at which, 276 ; during which, 278 ; how long after, 280 ; ago, 279 ; before, 280 ; within which, 277  
 Time, Roman, App. II.  
 Tmesis, App. III.  
 Transitive Verbs, definition of, 110 ; Syntax of, 204, 215, 220  
 Tribach, 474, 479, 481  
 Tribemimeral, 477  
 Trimeter, 475 ; Iambic, 479  
 Trochee, 474, 477, 481, 482, 483

Universal Relatives, 102, 450 (*n*)  
 Unthematic Verbs, 148

Value (indefinite), Genitive of, 257  
 Variable Substantives, 59 *sqq.*  
 Variant Verb-forms, 113, 118 (*n.*)  
 Verbal Substantives, Objective Genitive with, 262  
 Verbs (Accidence), 103 *sqq.*  
 Verbs (Syntax)—  
   with Ablative, 229, 230, 233, 241-245  
   with Accusative, 204-210, 212, 213  
   Agreement of, 192

## ZEU

Verbs (Syntax)—  
   with Composite Subject, 198, 199  
   Copulative, 187, 188, 196, 201, 251, 297, 369 (*n.*)  
   with Dative, 215-217, 219 (*n.*)  
   esse with Dative, 224  
   Factitive, 187, 206 ; Passive Construction, 297  
   Finite, 184, 200  
   with Genitive, 250, 252, 253, 257, 265-267  
   Impersonal, Case Construction of, 288 *sqq.*  
   Indeterminate, 190, 369  
   Infinite, 364, 394  
   Infinitive, the, 365-373, 394  
   Intransitive, 205, 209, 212, 216, 220 ; Passive Construction, 299 *sqq.*  
   Passives with Accusative, 210  
   as Predicate, 184 *sqq.*  
 Verse, definition of, 473  
 Vocative Case, definition of, 30 ; uses of, 202  
 Voices of Verbs, 108  
 Vowels, 3 ; quantity of, 4  
 Vowel Change, 10-17

Weak Formation of the Perfect, 150  
 Weights, Roman, App. II.

Zeugma, App. III.

# INDEX II.

## LATIN WORDS.

[The reference is to Sections.]

### A, AB

a, ab, abs, absque, 173, 270,  
286; ab in compounds, 220  
abdo, 154  
aboleo, 153  
abolesco, 154  
absum, 115  
abundo, 233  
accedit (impers.), 146  
accidit (impers.), 146  
accipiter, 49  
acer, 73  
Achilleus (Achilles), 69  
acies, 57  
acinaces, 54  
acuo, acui, 150, 154  
acus, 55  
ad, 172, 285; in compounds,  
220  
addo, 154, 416  
adeo (Adv.), 164, 421  
adnuo, 154  
adulesco, 154  
adsum, 115  
adultus (Adj.), 154 (n.)  
adversus, adversum, 172, 285  
aedes, 61  
aeger, 71; aegre, 165  
Aeneas, 67  
aequalis, 73  
aequor, 37, 42, 51  
aequus, 82 (n. 1); aequae, 164,  
449; aequum est, 345  
aer, 69  
aes, 37, 53  
aetas, 37, 39  
aether, 69  
Aetna, 31  
affinis, 218 (n.)  
affligo, 154  
ager, 35  
ago, 24, 149, 150, 154; age,  
agite, 142 (n.)  
agricola, 34 (n. 3)  
aio, 142  
alacer, 73  
ales, 31 (n. 3)  
algeo, 153  
alias (Adv.), 168  
alibi, 167  
alicubi, alicunde, aliquā,  
aliquando, aliquantus,  
aliquis, aliquo, aliquot,  
aliquotiens, alteruter,  
102; aliquanto, 244  
alienus, 218 (n.)  
aliter, 164  
alius, 101, 329  
Alia, 31  
alo, 149, 154

### ALP

Alpes, 31  
alter, 101, 102, 312 (n.), 328;  
altero, 244  
alteruter, 101 (n.), 102  
alvus, 35  
amans (amantior, amautis-  
simus), 74, 79  
amarier (=amari), 113  
ambi, 175  
ambio, 138, 175  
ambo, 89  
amicio, amixi (amicui), 155  
amicus, 35; (Noun), 305  
amnis, 45, 54  
amo, amavi, 116, 120, 150,  
152; amasti, 113  
amor, 42  
amphora, 34 (n. 3)  
amplector, 159  
amplius, 314  
an, 177, 405, 406  
anas, 37  
ango, 154  
animal, 48  
animi (pendere animi,  
anxius animi), 246 (n.)  
annus, 35  
anser, 37  
ante (Adv.), 168, 280;  
Prep., 172, 280, 285, 395;  
in compounds, 220  
antequam, 178, 395, 431  
antiquus, 82 (n.)  
apage, 142  
aperio, 155  
apex, 37  
apis, 49  
apiscor, aptus sum, 159  
appareo, 187  
apparet (impers.), 146  
appellor, 187  
aptus, 218 (n.)  
apud, 172, 285  
aquila, 31 (n. 3), 34  
Arbela, 31  
arbitrator, arbitra, 31 (n. 2)  
arbor, 31 (n. 1), 51; arbos,  
arbores, 41 (n. 2)  
arceo, 153  
arcesso, 154  
arctus, 35  
arcus, 55 (n. 1)  
ardeo, arsurus, 153  
argentum, 59  
arguo, 154  
arma, 60  
armiger, 35  
ars, 47  
artus, 55 (n. 1), 60

### CAN

arx, 46  
as (assis), 41 (n. 1), 52  
asper, 71  
assentior, 161  
at (ast), at enim, atqui,  
attamen, 177  
ater, 71  
Athos, 68  
atque, 177  
Atrides, 67, 69  
attinet (impers.), 146, 293  
auceps, 37, 40  
audax, 74, 76; audacter, 85  
audeo, 127, 158  
audio, 119, 123; audibo, 113;  
=am called, 187  
augeo, 153  
aut, autem, 177, 400 (nn. 2,  
3); aut...ant, 400 (n. 1)  
auxilium (auxilia), 61  
ave (have), avete, 142  
avis, 44  
axis, 54  
baccar, 47 (n.)  
Bacchanalia, 60  
baculus (baculum), 63  
bellum, 35; belli (Loc.),  
35 (n. 2)  
bene, 86; in compounds, 220  
benefic-us, -entior, -entissi-  
mus, 81  
benevol-us, -entior, -entis-  
simus, 81  
bibo, 149 (II.), 154  
bidens, 54  
bini (pl.), 313 (n. 2)  
blandior, 161  
bonus, 71, 80; boni (Noun),  
304  
Boeotia, 67  
bos, 50  
brevis, 73  
Bucolicōn (Gen.), 68  
cadaver, 51  
cado (cecidī), 150, 154  
caedo, 154  
caelebs, 75  
calcar, 48  
caleo, calesco, 149  
calix, 52  
callis, 54  
campester, 73  
canalis, 45, 54  
cancer, 35  
Canephore, 68  
canis, 31 (n. 3), 37, 49

## CAN

cano, 154  
 canto, 131  
 capesso, 154  
 capio, 133, 149, 154  
 caput, 37, 39, 53  
 carbasus (carbasa), 35, 61  
 carcer, 42  
 cardo, 52  
 carmen, 43  
 caro (carnis), 37, 51  
 carpo, 154  
 Carthagina (Loc.), 50 (n.)  
 carus, 71  
 casses, 54  
 castrum (castra), 61  
 caulis, 54  
 causā, 263, 379 (n. 1)  
 cautes, 45  
 caveo, 150, 153; cave with  
 Conjunctive, 350; cave  
 ne, cave ut, 417 (n. 3)  
 cedo, cessi, 149 (I.), 154  
 cedo, cedit (cette), 142  
 celeber, 73  
 celer, 73 (n.), 78; celeriter,  
 164  
 celo, 208  
 -cendo, 154  
 ceno, 129  
 censeo, 153  
 cera (cerae), 61  
 Ceres, 37  
 cerno, 149 (IV. a), 154  
 certe, 170  
 certo, 219 (n.)  
 ceterum (Conj.), 177; cetera  
 (Adv. Acc.), 213 (n.);  
 with partitive force, 307  
 (n.)  
 ceu, 177, 178  
 cieo, 153  
 Cimon, 69  
 cingo, 154; cingor, 210  
 cinis, 37  
 circa, circiter, circum, 172,  
 285  
 cis, citra, 172, 285  
 citerior, citimus (citra), 84  
 civis, 31 (n. 3), 44  
 civitas, 49  
 clam, 173, 286  
 clango, 154  
 claudo, 149 (I.), 154  
 clavis, 44 (n. 1)  
 clunis, 54  
 coactu, 65  
 coepi, coaptus, 142, 369;  
 coepit (impers.), 295  
 cognosco, 154  
 collis, 54  
 colo, cultum, 151, 154  
 color (colos), 41 (n. 2)  
 colus, 35, 55 (n. 2)  
 comes, 31 (n. 3)  
 commiseror, 266 (n.)  
 communis, 218 (n.)  
 como, 154

## COM

comperio, 155  
 compes, 51  
 compesco, 154  
 compingo, 150 (II.)  
 compos, 75  
 concessu, 65  
 conclave, 47  
 concors, 74  
 concutio, 154  
 condo, 154  
 confiteor, 126  
 congelasco, 149  
 congruo, 154  
 coniveo, 153  
 conjunx, 37  
 conor, 190, 369  
 consors, 74 (n. 1)  
 constanter, 85  
 constat (impers.), 146  
 consul, 37, 42  
 consulo, 154  
 contentus, 243  
 contingit (impers.), 146  
 contra, 172, 285  
 convenit (impers.), 146, 290  
 copia (copiae), 61  
 coquo, 154  
 cor, 37, 51  
 coram, 173, 286  
 Corcyrae (Loc.) 246  
 Corlioli, 31  
 cornu, 55  
 corpus, 41  
 cos, 51  
 crebro, 168  
 credo, 154, 219 (n.)  
 creor, 187  
 crepo, 152  
 cresco, 149 (V.), 154  
 crimine (on the charge of),  
 252 (n.)  
 criuis, 54  
 crus, 37, 41  
 cubile, 47  
 cubo, 152  
 cudo, 150, 154  
 cum (when), 102, 178, 433  
 sqq.; (since), 426; con-  
 cessive, 448 (n. 2)  
 cum (with), 173, 286  
 cunae, 60  
 cupio, 133, 369, 417 (n. 2)  
 cupressus, 55 (n. 2)  
 cur, 170  
 curo (with Gerundive),  
 384; eura ut, 350  
 curro, 154  
 custos, 37  
 Cybele, 67  
 dapis, 37, 64  
 de, 173, 270, 286; in com-  
 pounds, 220  
 debeo, 190, 345, 369; debet  
 (impers.), 295  
 December, 73  
 decemvir, 35 (n. 1)

## DUR

decet, dedecet (impers.),  
 144, 289, 345  
 declaror, 187  
 dedo, 154  
 degener, 75  
 deinceps, deinde, 169  
 delecto, 217; delectat (im-  
 pers.), 146  
 deleo, 153  
 Delos, 68  
 Delphi, 31, 60  
 demo, 154  
 demum, 168  
 denique, 169  
 dens, 46, 54  
 deses, 75  
 desina, 369; desinit (im-  
 pers.), 295  
 desum, 115  
 deterior, deterrimus, 84 (n.)  
 deus, dea, 31 (n. 2), 34 (n. 4),  
 35  
 dexter, 71 (n.); dexterior,  
 dextrerrimus, 84 (n.);  
 dextra (Noun), 305  
 dico, 149, 154; dic (dice), 118  
 Dido, 69  
 dies, 57; die (Loc.), 246  
 difficilis, 78  
 digne, 85; dignus, 243  
 dignor, 243  
 diligo, 154  
 dimidio, 244  
 dirigo, 175  
 disco (didici), 149 (V. a.)  
 150, 154, 369  
 dissimilis, 78  
 dissolvo, 175  
 diu, jam diu, quam diu,  
 tam diu, 65, 87, 168  
 dives (dis), divitior (di-  
 tior), divitissimus (ditis-  
 simus), 75, 80 (n. 2)  
 divido, 154  
 divitiae, 60  
 do (dare), 148, 152; with  
 Gerundive, 384  
 doceo, 153, 208, 369  
 dominus, 35  
 domo, domui (Verb), 150,  
 152  
 domus, 56, 271; domi  
 (Loc.), 246, 274 (n.)  
 donec, 178, 429, 431, 432  
 dono, 233 (n.)  
 dos, 49, 61  
 drachma, 34 (n. 3)  
 dubius, 71, 82  
 duco, 149 (I.), 150, 154; duc,  
 118  
 dulcis, 388  
 dum, dummodo, 178, 429-  
 432, 442; with Hist.  
 Pres., 338, 430, 467 (n. 2)  
 duo, 89  
 duplex, 74; duplo, 244  
 duresco, 149 (V. b)

## DUR

durus, 71, 76  
 dux, 31 (n. 3), 37, 38, 52  
 e, ex, 173, 270, 286  
 eā (Adv.), 102, 167  
 ebur, 37, 42  
 ecce, 180, 404  
 echo, 51  
 equis, 100  
 ēdo (edidi), 154  
 ēdo (esse), 140, 148, 150  
 egenus, 81  
 egeo (with Gen.), 253  
 ego, 92  
 egregius, 82 (n.)  
 cheu, heu, ei, 180, 404  
 Eleates, 67  
 elephas (elephantus), 69  
 emo, emi, emptum, 150, 151, 154  
 en, 180, 404  
 enim, enimvero, etenim, 177, 400 (n. 3)  
 ensis, 54  
 eo, ire, 137, 148, 211  
 eo, eodem, 102, 167, 259 (n.)  
 Epirotes (-ota), 67  
 equester, 73  
 equidem, 170  
 erga, 172, 285  
 ergo, 177  
 esurio, 132  
 et, et . . . et, 179; etiam, 170, 177; etiamsi, etsi, 178, 444, 445  
 evado (= *turn out*), 187  
 Evander (-dros), 68  
 evenit (impers.), 146, 290  
 eventum (eventus), 62  
 excello, 154  
 exemplar, 47  
 existo (= *turn out*), 187  
 expedit (impers.), 146, 290  
 expergiscor, 159  
 experior, 161  
 exstinguo, 154  
 exterior, extremus, extimus (extra), 34  
 extra, 172, 285  
 exulo, 128  
 exuo, 154; exuor, 210  
 faber, 35 (n. 3)  
 facies, 57  
 facilis, facile, 73, 78, 388; (Adv.), 85, 164  
 facio, 133, 141, 149 (VI.), 154; fac, 118; fac ut, fac ne, 350  
 fallit (impers.), 146  
 fallo, 149 (IV.), 154  
 falso, 164  
 familia, familias, 34 (n. 1), 50  
 far, 37, 47 (n.)

## FAR

fari, 142  
 fas, 52, 66, 388  
 fascis, 54  
 fasti, 60  
 fateor, 157  
 fatiscor, 159  
 faveo, favi, 150, 153  
 fax, 37  
 febris, 44 (n. 1)  
 felix, 74  
 fendo, 149 (I.), 154  
 fere, ferme, 165  
 feriae, 60  
 fero, 136, 148; feror, 187  
 ferveo, ferbui (fervi), 153  
 fides, 57  
 fido, fisis sum, 127, 149 (I.), 160, 219 (n.)  
 figo, 154  
 filius, filia, 31 (n. 2), 34 (n. 4), 35  
 findo, 149 (IV. b.), 154  
 fingo, 154  
 finis, 54; fines, 61  
 fio, 128, 141, 187  
 flagito, 208  
 flecto, 149 (III.), 150, 154  
 fleo, 153  
 focci, 257  
 fios, 41  
 fluo, 154  
 fodio, 133, 154  
 follis, 54  
 fons, 54  
 forceps, 40  
 fore (futurum esse) ut, 412 (n.)  
 forfex, 52  
 fornix, 37, 52  
 forsan, forsitan, 170  
 fortasse, forte, 170  
 fortiter, 85  
 foveo, fovi, 150, 153  
 frango, 149 (IV. b.), 154  
 frater, 42, 49  
 fraus, 53  
 fremo, 154  
 frenum (pl. freni, frena), 63  
 fretus, 243  
 frico, frictum (fricatum), 152  
 frigeo, 153  
 frigo, 154  
 frons (frondis), 46; (frontis), 46  
 fructus, 55  
 frugi, 80; frugis, 37, 64  
 frugifer, 71  
 fruor, 159, 242  
 fugio, 133, 150, 154; fuge (with Inf.), 350  
 fugit (impers.), 146  
 fulcio, fultum, 155  
 fulgeo, fulsi, 150, 153  
 fulgurat (impers.), 145

## IMB

fundo, fudi, 150, 154  
 fungor, 159, 242  
 funis, 54  
 fur, 37  
 furfur, 53  
 fustis, 54  
 Gadibus (Loc.), 50 (n.)  
 gaudeo, 127, 158  
 gemo, 154; gemisco, 149  
 gener, 35  
 genius, 35 (n. 1)  
 genus, 41  
 genu, 55  
 gero, gessi, 150, 154  
 gigno, 149 (II.), 154  
 glacies, 57  
 glis, 49  
 gracilis, 78  
 gradior, 133, 159  
 gradus, 55  
 gratia (gratiae), 61; gratiā, 263, 379 (n. 1)  
 gratulor, 219 (n.); gratulor . . . cum, 426 (n. 1)  
 grex, 37, 38  
 grus, 50, 53  
 gubernio, 217  
 hac (Adv.), hic, hinc, huc, 167  
 haereo, 150, 153  
 haud, haudquaquam, 170, 396  
 haurio, hausi, 150, 155  
 Helene, 67  
 heres, 31 (n. 3)  
 heros, 69  
 heu, 180, 404  
 hic (Pron.), 94; hic, ille (in contrast), 319; hoc, 244  
 hicmps, 37, 43  
 homo, 37, 43  
 honor (honos), 37, 41  
 hostilis, 73  
 humilis, 78  
 humus, 35, 59; humi (Loc.), 35 (n. 2)  
 ibi, ibidem, 102, 167  
 ico, 150, 154  
 idem, 95, 321  
 identidem, 168  
 ideo, idcirco, 166, 423, 425 (n.)  
 Idus, 55; Idibus (Loc.), 246  
 igitur, 177  
 ignis, 44, 54  
 Ilion, 31, 68  
 illac, illic, illinc, illuc, 167  
 ille, 94, 319  
 illustris, 73  
 imber, 44  
 imbuo, 154



## IMI

imitor, 126  
 immemor, 265  
 immo, 409 (*n*)  
 impedimentum (*impedi-  
 menta*), 61  
 impingo, 150  
 impleo (*with Gen.*), 253  
 iu, 174, 287; in compounds,  
 220  
 iucesso, 154  
 incus, 37  
 inde, 102, 167; *indidem*,  
 167  
 indigeo (*with Gen.*), 253  
 indignus, 243  
 indulgeo, 153  
 induo, 154; *induor*, 210  
 indutiae, 60  
 infans, 54  
 inferior, *infimus*, *imus* (*in-  
 fra*), 84  
 infitias ire, 211 (*n*)  
 infra, 84, 172, 235  
 ingens, 74  
 injuria (*=wrongfully*), 336  
 (*n*)  
 injussu, 65  
 inquam, 142; *inquit*, 460  
 insidiae, 60  
 instar, 66  
 insum, 115  
 insuper, 169  
 intellego, 154  
 inter, 172, 285; in com-  
 pounds, 220; *interdiu*, 65;  
*interdum*, 168  
 interest (*impers.*), 146, 291  
 interior, *intimus* (*intra*), 84  
 intersum, 115  
 intra, 84, 172, 285  
 intus, 87  
 ipse, 95, 320  
 irascor, 159, 219 (*n*)  
 iri (*Impers. with Supine*),  
 387, 412  
 Iris, 69  
 is, 94, 102, 319 (*n*), 334; *id*  
 (*Adv. Accus.*), 213 (*n*);  
*ejus* (*Possessive*), 318;  
*eo*, 244  
 iste, 94, 319 (*n*)  
 istic, 96 (*n*)  
 ita, 164; *itaque*, 177  
 item, 177  
 iter, 50, 51  
 iterum, 168  
 itidem, 164

jacio, 133, 154  
 jam, *jamdiu*, 168, 338  
 jecur, 50  
 jocus (*pl. joci, joca*), 63  
 jubar, 37, 47 (*n*)  
 jubeo, 153, 217, 417 (*n. 1*)  
 judex, 31 (*n. 3*), 37, 38  
 iugerum (*[juger]is*), 62

## JUN

jungo, 149 (*IV. b*), 154  
 Juppiter, 50  
 juro, 129  
 jus, 41; *jusjurandum*, 50;  
*jure* (*=by right*), 236 (*n*)  
 jussu, 65  
 justitia, 59  
 juvat (*impers.*), 146  
 juvenis, 37, 49; *junior*, 80  
 juvo, *juvi*, *juvatum*, 150,  
 152, 217  
 juxta, 172, 285

Kalendae, 60; *Kaleudis*  
 (*Loc.*), 246

labor, *lapsus sum*, 159  
 lac, 37, 53  
 lacer, 71  
 laccessio, 154  
 lacio (*obsol.*), 133  
 lacus, 55 (*n. 1*)  
 laedo, 154, 217  
 lampas, 69  
 lapis, 37, 39  
 lar, 53  
 largior, 161  
 Latium, 31  
 latro, 43  
 laus, 37, 53; *laudi vertere*  
*alicui*, 226 (*n*)  
 lavo, *lavatum* (*lautum*,  
*lotum*), *lavaturus*, 150,  
 151, 152  
 lego, *legi*, 150, 154; *legor*,  
 187  
 lente, 164  
 leo, 37, 43  
 lepus, 31 (*n. 3*), 53  
 Lethe, 31  
 lex, 52  
 liber, 71, 229; *liberi* (*Noun*),  
 35, 60  
 liber, 35  
 libet (*impers.*), 144, 290  
 liceo, 128; *liceor*, 157  
 licet (*impers.*), 144, 290,  
 345, 417 (*n. 1*), 444, 447  
 ligo (*Noun*), 52  
 liuo, *levi* (*livi*), 149 (*IV. a*),  
 154  
 linquo, 154  
 linter, 44  
 liquet, 144, 290  
 liquor (*Verb*), 159  
 lis, 49  
 littera (*litterae*), 61  
 locus (*pl. loci, loca*), 63  
 longum est, 345  
 loquor, 159  
 lotos, 68  
 luceo, 153  
 lucescit, 145  
 lucifer, 35  
 ludo, 154  
 ludus (*ludi*), 61

## MIS

lugeo, 153  
 lugubris, 73  
 luna, 34  
 luo, *-lutum*, 154  
 lux, 37  
 lynx, 69  
 magister, 35  
 magnopere, 86, 165; *magis*,  
*maxime*, 86  
 magnus, 71; *major*, *maxi-  
 mus*, 80; *maiores* (*Noun*),  
 305; *magni*, 257  
 male, 86; in compounds,  
 220; *maledic-us*, *-entior*,  
*-entissimus*, 81  
 mâlo, 139, 148, 369  
 malus, 71, 80  
 manceps, 52  
 mando, 154  
 manco, *mansi*, 150, 152, 187  
 mânes, 54, 60  
 manus, 55  
 mare, 47 (*n*)  
 margo, 52  
 marmor, 51  
 mas, 49  
 mater, 37, 49; *mater-*  
*familias*, 34 (*n. 1*), 50  
 materia (*and materies*), 57  
 (*n. 1*)  
 me (*Reflexive with ipse*),  
 316 (*n. 2*)  
 medeor, 157  
 mel, 37; *mella* (*pl.*), 59 (*n*)  
 melior, 80; *melius*, 86;  
*melius est*, 345  
 meminui, 142, 265; *memento*  
 (*with Infin. or Conjunc.*),  
 350  
 memor, 74 (*n. 1*), 265  
 mensa, 34  
 mensis, 49, 54  
 merces, 37, 51  
 mereor, 126, 157  
 merges, 51  
 mergo, *mersi*, 150, 154  
 merdies, 57  
 metior, 161  
 meto, 154  
 metuo, 154  
 meus, 93, 244  
 mico, *micui* (*micavi*), 152  
 mille, *milia*, 89, 311  
 miles, 37, 39  
 Miletî (*Loc.*), 35 (*n. 2*)  
 -miniscor, 159  
 minor (*Verb*), 219  
 minor, *minimus*, 80; *mi-  
 nime*, 86; *minoris*, *mi-  
 nimi*, 257; *minus*, 314  
 minuo, 154  
 misceo, 153  
 miser, 71  
 misereor, *miseretur*, *miseri-*  
*tum est*, 144 (*n*), 266;



## MIS

miseritus (misertus) sum, 157; miseresco, 266; miseror, 266 (*n.*)  
 miseret (impers.), 1<sup>c</sup> 4, 288  
 mitto, misi, 150, 154, 416;  
 mitte (with Infin.) 350  
 moderor, 217  
 modo (Adv.), 168, 170, 442;  
 (Conj.), 178  
 moenia, 60  
 moles, 45  
 molior, 161  
 molo, 154  
 moneo, 117, 121  
 mons, 46, 54  
 mordeo, momordi, 150, 153  
 more majorum, 236 (*n.*)  
 morior, moriturus, 133, 159  
 moveo, 153  
 mox, 168  
 mugil, 37, 53  
 mulceo, 153  
 mulgeo, 153  
 multus, 80; multum, 86,  
 165, 213 (*n.*); multo, 244  
 municeps, 52  
 mus, 49, 53  
 myrtus, 55 (*n.* 2)

nam, namque, 177  
 nanciscor, nactus (nactus)  
 sum, 159  
 narror (as impers.), 370 (*n.*)  
 nascor, 159  
 natus, 65; natu major (mi-  
 nor), natu maximus (mi-  
 nimus), 80, 235 (*n.*)  
 natus (of age), 278 (*n.* 2)  
 nauci, 257  
 nauta, 67  
 navis, 44 (*n.* 1)  
 Neapolis, 44 (*n.* 1)  
 ne (Adv.), 170, 396; (Conj.),  
 178; (in prohibitions),  
 347, 348, 396  
 ne . . . quidem, 398  
 ne (in dependant clauses),  
 417 *sqq.*, 423 *sqq.*, 448 (*n.* 2)  
 -nē (Interrog.), necne,  
 nonne, 177, 406  
 neque, nec, neve, neu, 177-  
 179, 397 (*n.*)  
 nec quisquam, nec quid-  
 quam, nec ullus, nec un-  
 quam, nec usquam, 397  
 (*n.* 1)  
 necesse est, 345  
 nectar, 47 (*n.*)  
 necto, 150 (III.), 154  
 nedum, 423 (*n.* 2)  
 nefas, 66, 388  
 neglego, 154  
 nemo, 101 (*n.* 2); nemo non,  
 non nemo, 397  
 neo, 153  
 nepos, neptis, 31 (*n.* 2), 37

## NEQ

nequam, nequior, nequissi-  
 mus, 80  
 nequeo, 138, 369  
 nescio quis, 322  
 neuter, 101  
 neutiquam, 170  
 nex, 37, 52  
 niger, 71, 78  
 nigresco, 130  
 nihil, nihilum, nil, 66;  
 nihili, 257; nihilo, 244;  
 nihil non, non nihil, 297  
 nimis, nimium, 165; nimio,  
 244  
 ningit (ninguit), 145, 154  
 nisi, ni, 178, 437 *sqq.*; nisi  
 forte, nisi vero, 441  
 (*n.* 2)  
 nitor, nisis (nixus) sum,  
 159  
 nix, 37, 59 (*n.*)  
 noctu, 65  
 nolo, 139, 148, 417 (*n.* 1),  
 369  
 nomen, 37, 43; nomine (= *on the ground of*), 252 (*n.*)  
 non, 170, 396, 409; nonne,  
 177, 405; nondum, 168;  
 non modo, non modo non,  
 398; non quod, non quia,  
 426 (*n.* 2)  
 nosco, 449 (*V.*), 154  
 nos, noster, 92, 93; nostri  
 (Obj. Gen.), nostrum  
 (Partit. Gen.), 92 (*n.*),  
 nos, noster (= ego, meus),  
 315 (*n.*)  
 November, 73  
 novi, 142  
 nox, 49  
 nubes, 45  
 nubo, nupsi, 150, 154, 219  
 (*n.*)  
 nugae, 60  
 nullus, 101  
 num, 177, 405, 406  
 nummus, 35 (*n.* 3)  
 numquam, 168  
 nunc, 168  
 nuntior (as impers.), 370  
 (*n.*)  
 nuper, 87, 168  
 nusquam, 167  
 ob, 172, 285; in compounds,  
 220; ob eam rem ut, 423  
 obliviscor, 265  
 obses, 37  
 obsolesco, 154  
 obsum, 115  
 occidens, 54  
 occulo, 154  
 ocior, ocissimus, 83; ocius,  
 ocissime, 86  
 October, 73  
 odi, osus sum, 142

## PEC

olim, 168  
 omnis, 73  
 omnino, 170  
 opem, 61, 64; opes, 61;  
 opis, 37  
 opera (pl. operae), 61  
 operio, 155  
 opperior, 161  
 oportet, 144, 294, 345, 417  
 (*n.* 1)  
 opto, 369  
 optimus, 80; optime, 86  
 opus, 37, 41, 66; opus est,  
 243 (*n.*)  
 orator, 42  
 orbis, 54  
 ordior, 161  
 ordo, 52  
 oriens, 54  
 orior, 161  
 oro, 208  
 Orpheus, 69  
 os (oris), 51; os (ossis), 41  
 (*n.* 1), 51  
 paciscor, 159  
 paenitet, 144, 268; paeni-  
 tendus, 144 (*n.*)  
 palam, 173, 286  
 pallesco, 130  
 paluster, 73  
 pando, pausum (passum),  
 154  
 pango, pānxi (pegi), 150,  
 154  
 panis, 54  
 papaver, 51  
 papilio, 52  
 par, 74, 218 (*n.*)  
 paratus (paratior, paratissi-  
 mus), 79  
 parco, 154; parce (with  
 Infin.), 350  
 parens, 31 (*n.* 3), 49, 54  
 paries, 37  
 pario, 133, 154  
 Paris, 69  
 pariter, 170  
 partim, 170  
 partior, 125  
 partus, 55 (*n.* 1)  
 parum, 165  
 parvus, 71, 80; parvi,  
 257  
 pasco, 149 (*V.*), 154  
 passer, 31 (*n.* 3)  
 pater, 42, 49; paterfamilias,  
 34 (*n.* 1), 50  
 patior, 133, 159  
 paulum, 86, 165; paullo,  
 244  
 pauper, 75  
 paveo, 153  
 pax, 37; pace tua, 236  
 (*n.*)  
 pecten, 53

PEC	POS	REC
pecto, 154	postis, 54	446, 447, 448 (n. 1);
pecus (pecoris), 62; (pecu- dis), 37, 53, 62	potens, 135	quamobrem (Adv.), 170, (Conj.), 177
pedester, 73	potior, 133, 161, 242; with Gen., 253	quando, 102, 168, 178, 425, 428; quandocumque, 102;
pejor, pessimus, 80; pes- sime, 86	potius, potissimum, 165	quandoquidem, 178, 425
pelagus, 35	prae, 173, 286; in com- pounds, 220	quantus, quantuscumque, 102, 335, 450 (n.); quanti, 257; quanto, 244; quan- tum (Adv.), 165
Pelion, 31, 68	praeditus, 233	quapropter, 177
pello, 149 (IV.), 154	prae, 37, 53	quare, 170, 177, 455
penates, 60	praesum, 115	quasi (quam si), 177, 178, 449
pendeo, 153; pendere animi, 246 (n.)	praeter, 172, 285	quatenus, 178, 425
pendo, 150, 154	praeterea, 169	quatio, 133, 154
penes, 172, 285	praetereo, 416	-que, 177
per, 172, 285	prandeo, 129, 150, 153	quemadmodum, 170, 177
percello, 149 (IV.), 154	precem, 64	queo, 138, 190, 369
perdo, 154	prehendo, 154	queror, 159
pergo, 154, 369	premo, 154	quia, 178, 425
perinde, 164, 449 (n.)	primo, primum (Adv.), 169	qui, 97-99, 102, 195, 330 sqg., 403, 410; quo, 244; quicumque, 100, 102, 450 (n.); quidam, quilibet, quivis, 100, 322, 324; quid (Adv. Accus.), 213 (n.); qui in Adjectival Clauses, 450 sqg.
Persa, 67	princeps, 37, 40, 52	quidem, 170, 398, 400 (n. 3)
Perseus, 69	prior, primus (prae), 84; prius, 87	quies, 37, 51, 62
pertaesum est, 144 (n. 2)	priusquam, 178, 431, 432	quiesco, 154
pertinet (impers.), 146, 293	pro (Prep.), 173, 286; pro, proh (Interj.), 180, 404	quin, 178, 419, 422, 452 (n.)
pes, 37, 39	procul, 229	quippe, 178, 454 (n. 1)
pessum ire, 211 (n.)	prodo, 154	quis, 98, 99, 102, 322; quis- nam, quispiam, 100; quisquam, 100, 323; quis- que, 100, 325; quisquis, 100, 450 (n.)
peto, 149 (I.), 208 (n.)	profecto (Adv.), 170	quo, 102, 167, 244, 453, 454 (n. 2), 455; quaecirca, 177; quomodo, 170, 177, 455; quoque, 177; quominus, 178, 418; quo terrarum, 259 (n.)
Philippis (Loc.), 35 (n. 2)	proficiscor, 159	quoad, 178, 429, 431, 432
piget, pigitum est, 144, 288	prohibeo, with quominus or ne, 419 (n. 2)	quod, 99, 178, 416, 425, 426 (n. 2)
pileus (pileum), 63	proinde, 164, 449 (n.)	quondam, 168
pingo, 149, 150, 154	promo, 154	quoniam, 178, 425
pinso, pinsui (pinsi), 154	prope, 87, 172, 285; propior, proximus, 84	quot, quotcumque, 102, 335; quotiens, quotienscum- que, 102, 168, 178, 428
piscis, 54	proprius, 218 (n.)	quum (see cum)
placet (impers.), 146	proprius, 172, 285	
plane, 170	propterea, 166; propterea ut, 423; propterea quod (quia, quoniam), 425 (n.)	radix, 37, 38
Plato, 69	prosper, 71	rado, 154
plaudo, 150, 154	prosum, 115	rapio, 133, 154
plebs, plebis (or plebes, plebei), 45 (n.), 57 (n. 2), 62	provid-us, -entior, -entissi- mus, 81	raro, 168
pecto, 149 (III.)	psallo, 154	rastrum (pl. rastri, rastra), 63
plenus (with Gen.), 253	pudet, 144, 288; pudtum est, pudendus, 144 (n.)	ratio, 37, 42, 52; ratione (=on principle), 236 (n.)
-pleo, 153	puer, 35	recens, 74 (n. 1)
plerumque, 170	pugio, 52	receptui canere, 226 (n.)
plico, -plicavi (-plicui), -pli- catum (-plicitum), 152	pugno, 219 (n.)	recordor, 265
pluit, 145	pulcher, 71	
plumiger, 71	pungo, pupugi, 150, 154	
plus, 80, 86, 314; pluris, 257; plurimus, 80; plurimum, 86; plurimi, 257	punior (punio), 125 (n.), 161	
poema, poesis, 69; poeta, 67	puppis, 44 (n. 1)	
pollicor, 126	puter, 73	
polluceo, 153	putor, 187	
pone, 172, 285		
pono, 154	quâ, 102; (Adv.), 167	
Pontus, 31	quâcumque, 102	
porticus, 55	quaero, 154, 208	
portus, 55 (n. 1)	quaeso, quaesumus, 142	
posco, 154	qualis, qualiscumque, 102, 335, 450 (n.)	
possum, 135, 190, 345, 369; potest (impers.), 295	quam, 102, 164, 170, 177, 231 (n.), 310, 335; quam- quam, quamvis, 178, 444,	
post, 84, 87, 168, 172, 280, 285, 395; in compounds, 220; postquam, 178, 395, 428		
posterior, postremus (post), 84; postremo, 87, 169		

## RED

reddo, 154  
 redeo, 137, 175  
 refero, 175  
 refert (impers.), 146, 292  
 regina, 31 (n. 2), 34  
 regio, 52  
 regnum, 35  
 rego, 118, 122, 154, 217  
 remex, 37  
 reminiscor, 265  
 ren, 49, 53  
 reor, 157  
 repo, 154  
 reperio, 155  
 requies, 51, 62  
 res, 57; *res publica*, 58  
 restat (impers.), 146  
 restis, 44 (n. 1)  
 rete, 47  
 rettuli, 150  
 retundo, 154  
 rex, 31 (n. 2), 37, 38  
 rideo, 153  
 Rhodope, 31  
 rodo, 154  
 rogatu, 65  
 rogito, 131  
 rogo, 208  
 Roma, Romae (Loc.), 34  
 (n. 2), 246  
 ruber, 71  
 rudens, 54  
 rudo, 149 (I.)  
 rumpo, 149 (IV. b), 154  
 ruo, rutum (ruitum), 154  
 rupes, 45  
 rus, 59 (n.), 271; ruri, rure  
 (Loc.), 50 (n.)  
 sacer, 71, 218 (n.)  
 sacerdos, 31 (n. 3)  
 saepe, 87, 168  
 saepio, 155  
 sal, 37, 53; sales, 61  
 salio, 155  
 saluber, 73  
 salve, salvete, 142  
 Samos, 68  
 sancio, 155  
 sane, 170  
 sapiens, 74, 304; sapienter,  
 164  
 sapio, 133, 154  
 sarcio, 155  
 satis, 165; in compounds,  
 220; *satius est*, 345  
 satur, 71  
 scalpo, 154  
 scando, scandi, 150, 154  
 scindo, 149 (IV. b), 154  
 scio, 155, 369  
 scorpius, 68  
 scribo, scripsi, 150, 154  
 sculpo, sculpsi, 150, 154  
 se, 92, 316, 464, 465  
 secedo, 175  
 seco, 152

## SEC

secundum (Prep.), 172, 285  
 securis, 44 (n. 1)  
 secus, 164  
 sed, 177, 400 (n. 2)  
 sedeo, sedi, 150, 153  
 sedes, 49  
 sedile, 47  
 seges, 37, 39, 51  
 semel, 168  
 sementis, 44 (n. 1)  
 semper, 168  
 senatus, 55  
 senex, 49, 50; senior, 80, 310  
 sentio, 155  
 sentis, 54  
 sepeilo, 155  
 September, 73  
 sequor, 159  
 series, 57  
 sero, serui, 154  
 serpens, 31 (n. 3)  
 servus, 35  
 seu, 177, 178; seu . . . seu,  
 179, 441 (n. 3)  
 si, si modo, sin (si ne), si  
 non, siquidem, si tan-  
 tum, 178; si (in Condi-  
 tional Clauses), 437 *sqq.*;  
 si non, 441 (n. 2); sive,  
 177; sive . . . sive, 179,  
 441 (n. 3)  
 sic, 164, 179, 421, 449 (n.);  
 sicut, sicuti, 177  
 sicubi, sicunde, si quā, si  
 quando, si quis, si quo, 102  
 sido, 150, 154  
 silentia (pl.), 59 (n.)  
 similis, 78, 218 (n.); simili-  
 ter, 164, 449 (n.)  
 simplex, 74  
 simul, 168, 170, 428; simul  
 ac, 178  
 sine, 173, 286  
 singuli, 313 (n. 1)  
 sinister, sinisterior, 84 (n.)  
 sino, 149 (IV. a), 154  
 sisto, 149 (II.), 154  
 sitis, 44 (n. 1)  
 socer, socrus, 31 (n. 2), 35  
 socius, 35 (n. 3)  
 sol, 37, 42, 53  
 soleo, 127, 158, 190, 369;  
 solet (impers.), 295  
 solus, 101; solum, 170  
 solutus, 229  
 solvo, 154  
 sono, 152  
 Soracte, 31  
 sorbeo, 153  
 soror, 37  
 sortior, 161  
 sospes, 75  
 spargo, 154  
 species, 57  
 specio (obsol.), 133  
 sperno, 149 (IV. a), 154  
 spes, 57

## TEN

splen, 53  
 spondeo, spocondi, 150, 153  
 sponte, 65  
 spuo, 154  
 statuo, 154, 369  
 stella, 34  
 sterno, 18, 149 (IV. a), 154  
 sternuo, 154  
 (stips), 37  
 stirps, 46  
 sto, steti, 148, 150, 152  
 strenuus, 82 (n.)  
 strepo, 154  
 strideo, stridi, 150, 153  
 stringo, 154  
 strix, 37  
 struo, struxi, 150, 154  
 suadeo, 153, 219 (n.)  
 sub, 174, 287; in com-  
 pounds, 220  
 subdo, 154  
 subsum, 115  
 subter, 174, 287  
 suesco, 154  
 sugo, 154  
 sum, 104, 114, 115, 186, 196,  
 224  
 suo (Verb), 154  
 super, 174, 287; in com-  
 pounds, 220  
 supplex, 50, 52  
 superi, 35 (n. 3)  
 superior, supremus, summus  
 (supra), 84  
 superstes, 75, 218 (n.)  
 supersum, 115  
 suppetias ire, 211 (n.)  
 supra, 172, 285  
 surgo, 154  
 sus, 50, 53  
 suus, 93, 317  
 taedet, 144, 288  
 talentum, 35 (n. 3)  
 talis, 102; talis qualis, 335  
 tam, 102, 164, 421; tam . . .  
 quam, 335  
 tamen, 177, 444 *sqq.*  
 tametsi, 178, 444, 445  
 tamquam, 177, 178, 449  
 taugo, 154  
 tantus, 102; tantum, 165,  
 170, 178; tanti, 257; tan-  
 to, 244; tantus quantus,  
 335; tantum abest ut, 422  
 Tarentum, 31  
 te (Reflexive with ipse),  
 316 (n. 2)  
 teges, 51  
 tego, 154  
 temno, tempesi, 149 (IV. u),  
 150, 154  
 tempero, 217  
 tempus, 37, 41  
 tendo, tentum (tensum), 154  
 tenebrae, 60  
 teneo, 153

## TEN

tener, 71, 78  
 tenus, 173, 286  
 tergeo, 153  
 tergum (tergus), 62  
 tero, 154  
 tertio (Adv.), 169; *tertius*, 312 (n.)  
 texe, 154  
 Thales, 69  
 Tiberis, 44 (n. 1)  
 tibiceu, 53  
 tigris, 31 (n. 3), 69 (n.)  
 tingo, 154  
 tonat (impers.), 145  
 tondeo, 153  
 touo, 152  
 torqueo, tortum, 151, 153  
 torquis, 54  
 torrens, 54  
 torreo, 153  
 torris, 54  
 tot, 102, 421; *tot quot*, 335;  
*totiens*, 102, 168  
 totus, 101  
 trabs (*or traves*), 45 (n.)  
 trado, 154; with *Gerundive*, 384; *trador* (*as impers.*), 370 (n.)  
 traho, 154  
 trans, 172, 285  
 tremo, 154  
 tres, 89  
 tribunal, 47  
 tribuo, 154  
 tribus, 55  
 tristis, 73, 76; *tristior*, 77  
 triumph, 35 (n. 1)  
 trudo, 154  
 tu, 92  
 tuber, 51  
 tueor, 157  
 tum, tunc, 102, 168, 433  
 tundo, tusum (*tunsum*), 154  
 turgeo, 153  
 turpis, 388  
 turris, 44 (n. 1)  
 turtur, 53  
 tussis, 44 (n. 1)  
 tuto, 85  
 tuus, 93

ūber (Noun), 51  
 ubi, 102, 167, 168, 178, 410, 428, 455; *ubique*, *ubicumque*, 102; *ubi gentium*, 259 (n.)  
 ulciscor, 159

## ULI

Ulixes (Ulixes), 69  
 ullus, 101, 323  
 ultra, 172, 285; *ultra*, 164  
 ulterior, ultimus (*ultra*), 84  
 umquam, 168  
 unde, 102, 167, 410, 455;  
*undecumque*, *undique*, 102  
 unguis, 54  
 unguo (*ungo*), 149, 154  
 unus, 89, 311; (*for primus*), 312; *uni* (pl.), 313 (n. 1);  
*unusquisque*, 100  
 urbs, 46  
 urgeo, 153  
 uro, ussi, 150, 154  
 usquam, 167  
 usque, 167, 168  
 usus est, 243 (n.)  
 ut (Adv.), 170; (*Conj.*), 177-9, 415, 417, 421, 423, 428, 448 (n. 2); *adeo* . . .  
*ut*, *ita* . . . *ut*, *sic* . . .  
*ut*, *ut* . . . *ita*, 179  
 ut ne, 178, 417, 423  
 ut non, 178, 421  
 utpote, 454 (n. 1)  
 utsi, 178, 449  
 utut, 178, 444, 446  
 ūter (Noun), 44  
 uter, 101, 102, 327; *uterque*, 100, 326; *utercumque*, 102  
 utor, 124, 125, 242  
 utrum . . . *an*, 177, 406

vaco, 219 (n.)  
 vado, (*in*)vasi, (*in*)vasum, 154  
 vae, 180, 404  
 valde, 165  
 valeo, vale, valet, 142 (n.)  
 valles (*or -is*), 45 (n. 1)  
 vannus, 35  
 vapulo, 128  
 vas (vadis), 37, 52; (*vasis*), 37, 41 (n. 1), 52  
 vates, 31 (n. 3), 49  
 -ve, 177  
 vectis, 54  
 veho, vexo, 149, 150, 154  
 vel, 177; *vel* . . . *vel*, 179, 400 (n. 1)  
 vello, velli (*vulsum*), 154  
 velox, 74  
 velut, veluti, velut si, 177, 178, 449  
 vementer, 164  
 veneo, 128

## VUL

vendo, 154  
 venio, veni, 150, 155  
 venor, venatus sum, 125  
 venum ire, 211 (n.)  
 ver, 37, 51, 59  
 verber, 51  
 verbum, 35  
 vereor, 125  
 vermis, 54  
 verres, 54  
 verro, verri, 150, 154  
 vero, 170, 177, 400 (n. 3);  
*verum*, 177; *verumtamen*, 177  
 versus, versum, 172, 285  
 verto, verti, 150, 154  
 veru, 55  
 verum, vera (Noun), 306  
 vervex, 37  
 vescor, 159, 242  
 vesperascit (*impers.*), 145  
 vesper, -i, 59, 62; *vespera*, -ae, 62; *vesperi*, *vespere* (Loc.), 50 (n.)  
 vester, 93; *vestri* (Obj. Gen.), *vestrum* (Partit. Gen.), 92 (n.)  
 veto, vetui (*vetavi*), 152;  
 with *quominus* *or* *ne*, 419 (n. 2)  
 vetus, 75, 80  
 vicem, 64  
 victor, victrix, 31 (n. 2)  
 video, 150, 153; *videor*, 187  
 vincio, 155  
 vinco, 150, 154  
 vir, 35  
 virgo, 43  
 virtus, 37, 39  
 virus, 35  
 vis (Noun), 44 (n. 2)  
 viso (Verb), 150, 154  
 vitio *vertere* *alicui*, 226 (n.)  
 vivo, vixi, 150, 154  
 vix, 165  
 vocor, 187  
 volo, volui, 139, 148, 369, 417 (n. 1)  
 volucer, 73  
 volucris, 49  
 volvo, 154  
 vomo, 154  
 vos, 92  
 voveo, 153  
 vox, 37, 38  
 vulgus, 35  
 vulpes (*or -is*), 45 (n.)  
 vultur, 37, 53



11008 LIBRARY

X-22340

University of California  
SOUTHERN REGIONAL LIBRARY FACILITY  
405 Hilgard Avenue, Los Angeles, CA 90024-1388  
Return this material to the library  
from which it was borrowed.

---

DATE DUE

OCT 19 1998

SHLR

QUARTER LOAN



UC SOUTHERN REGIONAL LIBRARY FACILITY



**A** 000 475 882 7



Uni